

Thanks for choosing the vehicle manufactured by GAC Motor Co., Ltd. (hereinafter referred to as "GAC Motor"). For a better driving pleasure, please read the *Owner's Manual* carefully. This manual allows you to fully understand the operation methods and precautions of the vehicle. Proper operation of the vehicle can improve driving safety and prolong the service life of the vehicle.

The *Warranty and Maintenance Manual* supplied with the vehicle clearly describes the warranty services provided by GAC Motor and the regular maintenance instructions of the vehicle. Please read this manual carefully to know your rights and responsibilities.

After reading this manual, please store it with the vehicle for future reference.

In case of any doubts about this manual, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for detailed explanation.

If you have any suggestions or opinions, please contact GAC Motor Co., Ltd. or GAC Motor authorized shop.

We are grateful for your support and love for GAC Motor. Have a nice drive!

GAC International Co., Ltd.

## Safety Instructions

---

The safety of you and the passengers is crucial, so driving safely is an important responsibility of the driver.

In order to make clear the safety precautions, we provide operation steps and precautions through various signs on the vehicle and in this manual, reminding you to pay attention to potential dangers that will hurt you or the passengers.

It is impossible to list all the precautions for dangers related to operation and maintenance of the vehicle in the manual, so it is up to you to make the correct judgment in time.

Safety instructions are available in many forms, including:

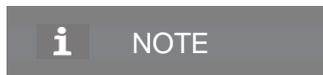
- **Safety signs** - pasted on the vehicle.
- **Safety notes** - the texts marked with the symbols  ,  ,  and one of the three words "WARNING", "CAUTION", or "NOTE" in front.



Very important instructions of which nonobservance can cause casualties.



Important instructions of which nonobservance can cause damage to the vehicle.



General instructions of which nonobservance could not cause injuries.

- Some paragraphs of this manual do not apply to all vehicle models. For the description of options, the title of them is followed by the symbol "\*" .
- Unless otherwise specified, the directions of the vehicle (front, rear, left and right) referred to in this manual are based on the traveling direction of the vehicle.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Important safety precautions..... 1</li> <li>2. Picture index.....3               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2.1 Exterior .....3</li> <li>2.2 Interior .....6</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Instructions for safe operation..... 10               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.1 Safe driving .....10                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.1.1 General description..... 10</li> <li>3.1.2 Correct sitting posture of the driver and passengers..... 11</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.2 Seat belt .....12                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.2.1 Why must you fasten the seat belt ..... 12</li> <li>3.2.2 Seat belt ..... 13</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.3 Supplemental restraint system (SRS).....19                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.3.1 Cases where the airbags may deploy .....24</li> <li>3.3.2 Cases where the airbags might not deploy .....25</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.4 Safe ride of children .....26                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.4.1 General description.....26</li> <li>3.4.2 Child safety seat .....27</li> <li>3.4.3 Smart Bluetooth child seat* .....28</li> <li>3.4.4 Information about child safety seats .....29</li> <li>3.4.5 Correctly installing the child safety seat .....30</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.5 Safety labels.....34</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Operation of systems and equipment ..... 35               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4.1 Plug-in hybrid powertrain..... 35                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4.1.1 Hybrid powertrain ..... 35</li> <li>4.1.2 Hybrid powertrain characteristics..... 38</li> <li>4.1.3 Charging guide ..... 40</li> <li>4.1.4 External discharging functions ..... 43</li> </ul> </li> <li>4.2 Cab ..... 45                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4.2.1 Steering wheel..... 45</li> <li>4.2.2 Instrument cluster module/ICM ..... 48</li> <li>4.2.3 Indicator lamps ..... 49</li> </ul> </li> <li>4.3 Vehicle locking and unlocking ..... 53                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4.3.1 Remote control key ..... 53</li> <li>4.3.2 Emergency mechanical key ..... 58</li> <li>4.3.3 Door lock system..... 58</li> <li>4.3.4 Door..... 64</li> <li>4.3.5 Liftgate..... 70</li> <li>4.3.6 Engine hood ..... 74</li> <li>4.3.7 Power window ..... 75</li> <li>4.3.8 Electric sunroof..... 78</li> <li>4.3.9 Basic operation of body anti-theft system ..... 82</li> </ul> </li> <li>4.4 Lamps and vision ..... 83                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4.4.1 Exterior lamps ..... 83</li> <li>4.4.2 Interior lamps..... 89</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
---	---

## Table of contents

---

4.4.3 Wiper combination switch .....	92	4.8 Microwave window .....	138
4.4.4 Windshield.....	94	5. Driving guide.....	139
4.4.5 Rearview mirror.....	94	5.1 Starting and drivings.....	139
4.4.6 Sun visor/sunshade* .....	98	5.1.1 START/STOP button.....	139
4.5 Seats and storage facilities .....	99	5.1.2 Vehicle start.....	140
4.5.1 Headrest.....	99	5.1.3 Vehicle locking .....	140
4.5.2 Front seats .....	101	5.1.4 Gear description .....	141
4.5.3 2nd/rear seats .....	104	5.2 Brake system.....	145
4.5.4 Storage facilities.....	112	5.2.1 Service brake .....	145
4.5.5 Hot and cold cup holder.....	118	5.2.2 Electric park brake system/EPB system .....	147
4.5.6 Power outlet/USB port .....	118	5.3 Electronic service brake system.....	152
4.5.7 Mobile phone wireless charging system.....	122	5.3.1 Electronic stability program (ESP) .....	152
4.5.8 Trunk .....	124	5.3.2 Anti-lock brake system (ABS) .....	154
4.5.9 Accessories and modifications .....	125	5.3.3 Hill-start hold control (HHC) .....	155
4.6 A/C system .....	127	5.3.4 Hill descent control (HDC) .....	156
4.6.1 General description.....	127	5.3.5 Cooperative regenerative brake system (CRBS) .....	156
4.6.2 A/C system.....	128	5.3.6 Comfort stop (CST) .....	157
4.6.3 A/C air outlet .....	133	5.4 Driver assistance system .....	157
4.7 In-vehicle multimedia .....	134	5.4.1 Adaptive cruise control (ACC) .....	157
4.7.1 Basic operation .....	134	5.4.2 Integrated cruise assist (ICA) system .....	166
4.7.2 Radio.....	135	5.4.3 Forward collision mitigation (FCM) system.....	172
4.7.3 Local music .....	136	5.4.4 Traffic sign recognition (TSR) .....	177
4.7.4 Bluetooth function .....	137		

5.4.5 Lane departure system .....	179	6. In-service maintenance .....	230
5.4.6 Intelligent headlight control .....	184	6.1 Maintenance instructions .....	230
5.4.7 Blind spot detection (BSD) system .....	186	6.2 Interior maintenance .....	230
5.4.8 Rear crossing traffic alert (RCTA) system .....	189	6.3 Exterior maintenance .....	232
5.4.9 Door opening warning (DOW) system .....	191	6.4 Inspecting and adding of fluids .....	236
5.4.10 Rear approach alert system.....	193	6.4.1 Fuel .....	236
5.4.11 Emergency lane keeping alert system.....	194	6.4.2 Engine oil .....	239
5.4.12 Rear collision mitigation system* .....	197	6.4.3 Coolant.....	242
5.4.13 MMW radar and intelligent front camera .....	198	6.4.4 Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades.....	245
5.4.14 Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	200	6.4.5 Brake fluid .....	247
5.4.15 Seat vibration note*.....	201	6.4.6 Battery.....	249
5.5 Parking assist system (PAS).....	203	6.5 A/C filter.....	251
5.5.1 Reversing parking aid (RPA) .....	203	6.6 Replacing of bulbs.....	251
5.5.2 Around view parking system (AVPS)* .....	207	6.7 Wheels .....	252
5.5.3 Reversing trajectory*.....	211	6.8 Tire chains.....	256
5.5.4 Fusion parking system* .....	214	7. Technical data .....	258
5.6 Electric power steering (EPS) .....	220	7.1 Vehicle identification number (VIN) .....	258
5.7 Driving skills .....	221	7.2 Dimensions & parameters of vehicle .....	261
5.7.1 Pre-driving safety inspection.....	221	7.3 Vehicle mass & parameters of engine and fluids .....	262
5.7.2 Driving during running-in period.....	221	7.4 Transmission and chassis parameters .....	265
5.7.3 Driving essentials.....	223	8. Accident handling .....	267
5.7.4 Efficient operation of vehicle.....	228		
5.7.5 Fire prevention .....	228		

## Table of contents

---

8.1 Driver's tools.....	267
8.2 Use of warning triangle .....	267
8.3 Use of reflective vest.....	268
8.4 Inflator pump and tire sealer .....	268
8.5 Checking of the fuse .....	273
8.6 Hybrid powertrain fault .....	273
8.7 Emergency start .....	276
8.8 Vehicle towing .....	280
8.9 Getting out of a trap .....	283
8.10 Troubleshooting in emergency situations .....	283

### ◆ **Fasten the seat belt correctly**

The seat belt is the best protection device in the event of a collision. Airbags are only designed as auxiliaries, rather than replacements, of the seat belts, so even if the vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure that you and the passengers always fasten the seat belts correctly.

### ◆ **Child safety**

When children ride in a car, they should use the child safety seat correctly.

Never leave a child alone in the vehicle to avoid injury or death due to misoperation or high temperature inside the vehicle.

### ◆ **Beware of the danger of airbags**

Airbags can save lives, but they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to passenger who are too close to the airbags or improperly restrained.

Airbags pose the greatest risk to infants, toddlers and short adults, so please follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ◆ **Beware of the danger of high voltage**

Do not touch, disassemble, remove or replace high voltage parts, cables and their connectors.

Please strictly follow the notes on the warning signs.

It is strictly prohibited to artificially squeeze, puncture or damage the power battery.

### ◆ **Abide by traffic regulations**

Limit vehicle speed, avoid speeding or overloading, and pay attention to yielding to pedestrians.

### ◆ **Traffic accident warning**

When a traffic accident occurs, if the vehicle needs to be towed, it must be towed by professionals.

When a traffic accident occurs, do not touch exposed cables to avoid electric shock and serious injury.

If a leakage is found in the vehicle's power battery or fuel system, please stay away from the vehicle as soon as possible.

### ◆ **Perform regular maintenance**

Please perform regular maintenance according to the cycle specified in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual* to avoid damage to the vehicle caused by long-term lack of maintenance.

### ◆ **Exhaust gas hazard**

The exhaust gas emitted by the engine contains the toxic carbon monoxide gas. Please use the vehicle correctly to prevent the carbon monoxide gas from entering the vehicle.

When the engine is started for a long time in a confined space (such as a garage), carbon monoxide will quickly accumulate, resulting in excessive carbon monoxide in the vehicle. Therefore, after starting the vehicle, drive it away from the confined space immediately.

# 1. Important safety precautions

---

## Event data recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main function of EDR is to record data in the event of certain collisions (such as airbag deployment or colliding with a barrier), so as to help the understanding of operation of the vehicle system. EDR is specially used to record data related to vehicle dynamic control and safety systems in a short period of time.

### **i** NOTE

The EDR will record data only when a certain degree of collision occurs to the vehicle; EDR will not record data during normal driving.

## Potential usage of the EDR data

The data recorded by the EDR conduces to a better understanding of the situation in the event of a collision and personal injury, and are used to assist accident analysis.

GAC Motor Co., Ltd. will not disclose the data recorded in the EDR to third parties except:

- Reaching an agreement with the owner (or the lessee when the vehicle is rent).
- At the official request of the police, courts or government agencies.
- If necessary, the data will be used for research on vehicle safety performance.

## How to obtain an EDR data reading tool

Special technical equipment is required to read EDR data. For more information, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop.

## How to extract data from the EDR control unit

Special technical equipment is required to read EDR data. For more information, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop.

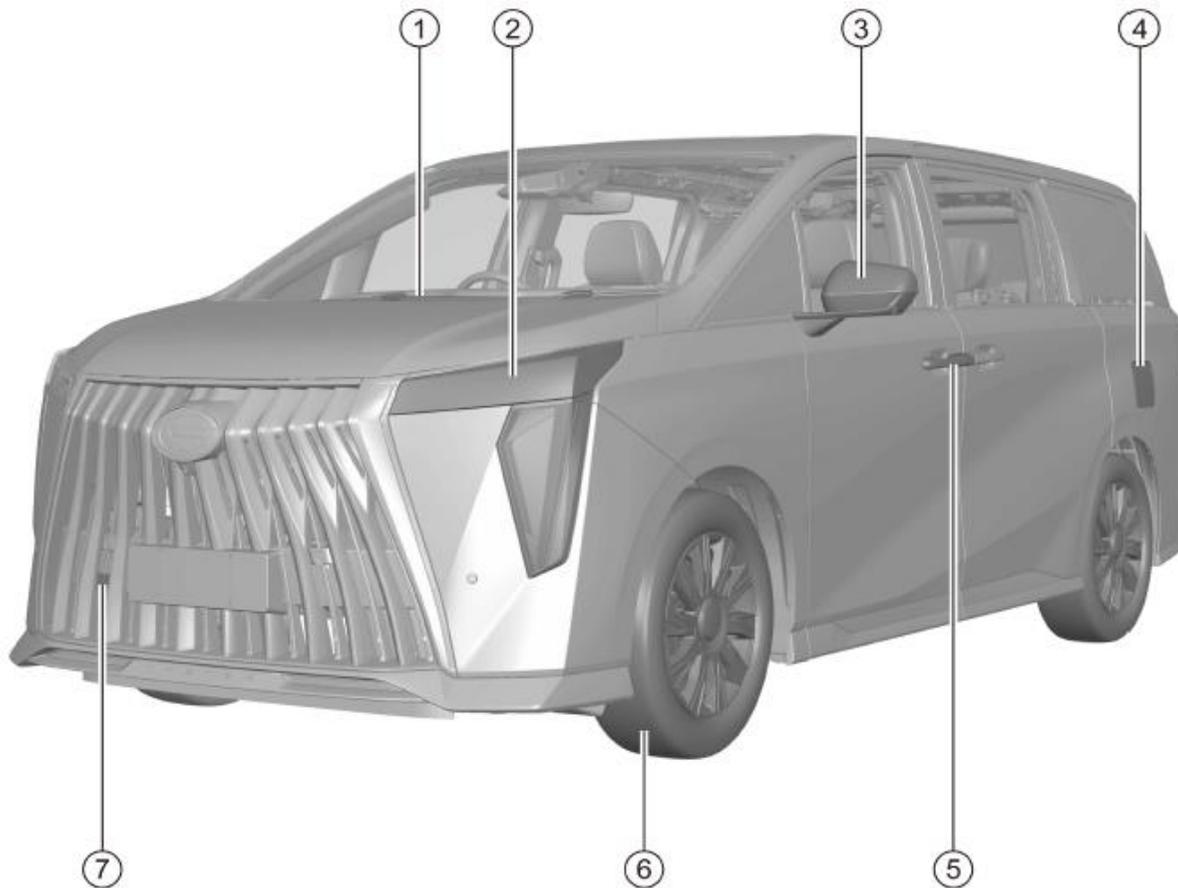
## Unlocked event storage overwriting mechanism and over-writable event types

The current event data can overwrite the preceding unlocked event data. For locked event data, it cannot be overwritten by data from subsequent events;

Over-writable events (unlocked events) include:

- Non-deployment of the irreversible restraint device;
- The vehicle speed change in the direction of the X axis within 150 ms is less than 25 km/h.

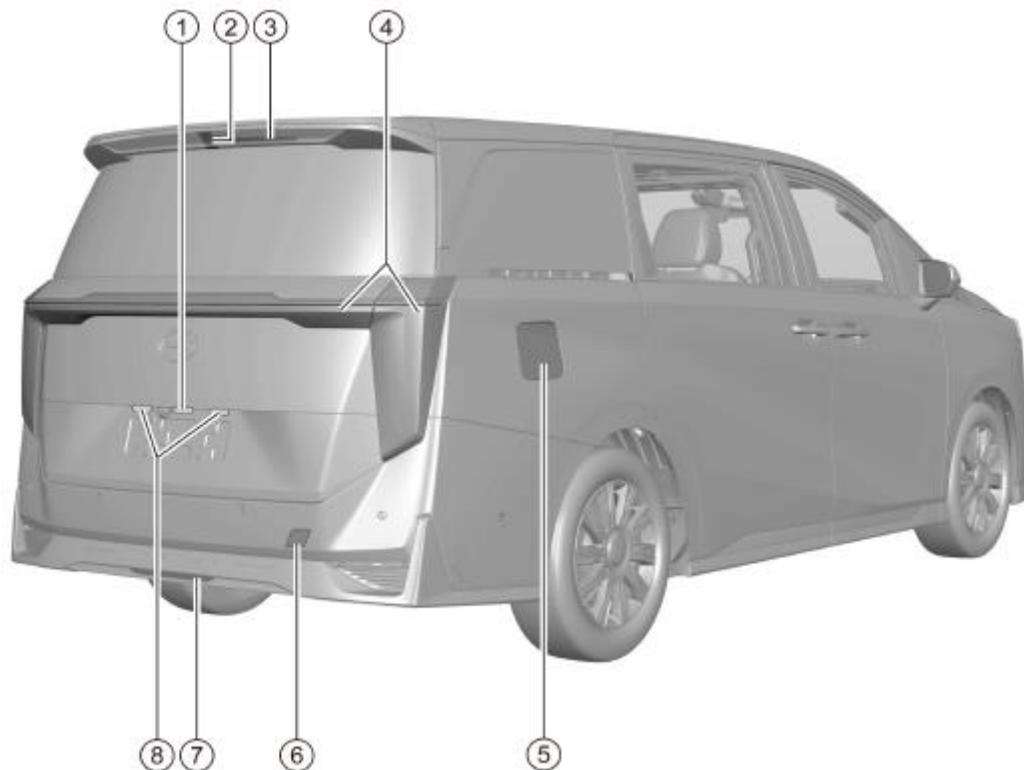
### 2.1 Exterior



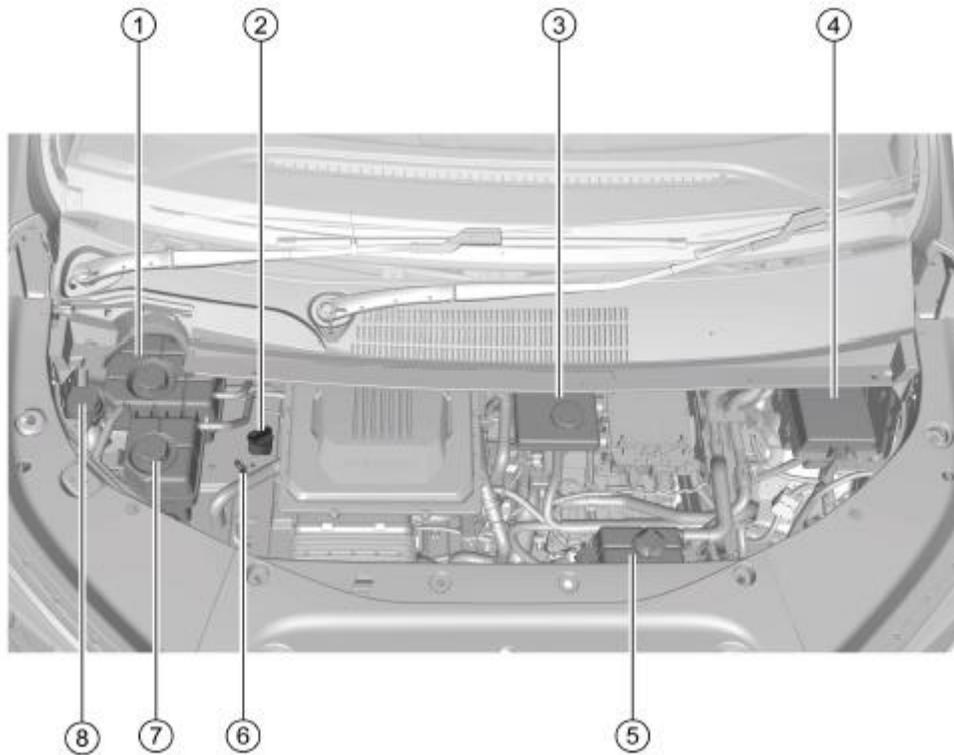
- ① Front wiper
  - Replacing front windshield wiper blades => See page 245
- ② Front combination lamp
  - Turning on the lamp => See page 83
- ③ Exterior rearview mirror => See page 95
  - Side turn signal lamp => See page 84
- ④ Charging inlet cap => See page 40
- ⑤ Door lock hole => See page 59
- ⑥ Wheel => See page 252
- ⑦ Front towing hook => See page 281

## 2. Picture index

---



- ① Liftgate opening button => [See page 70](#)
- ② High-mounted stop lamp
- ③ Rear wiper
  - Replacing rear windshield wiper blades=>[See page 246](#)
- ④ Rear combination lamp
- ⑤ Fuel tank flap=> [See page 236](#)
- ⑥ Rear towing hook => [See page 281](#)
- ⑦ Rear fog lamp (left side) and reverse lamp (right side)
- ⑧ License plate lamp



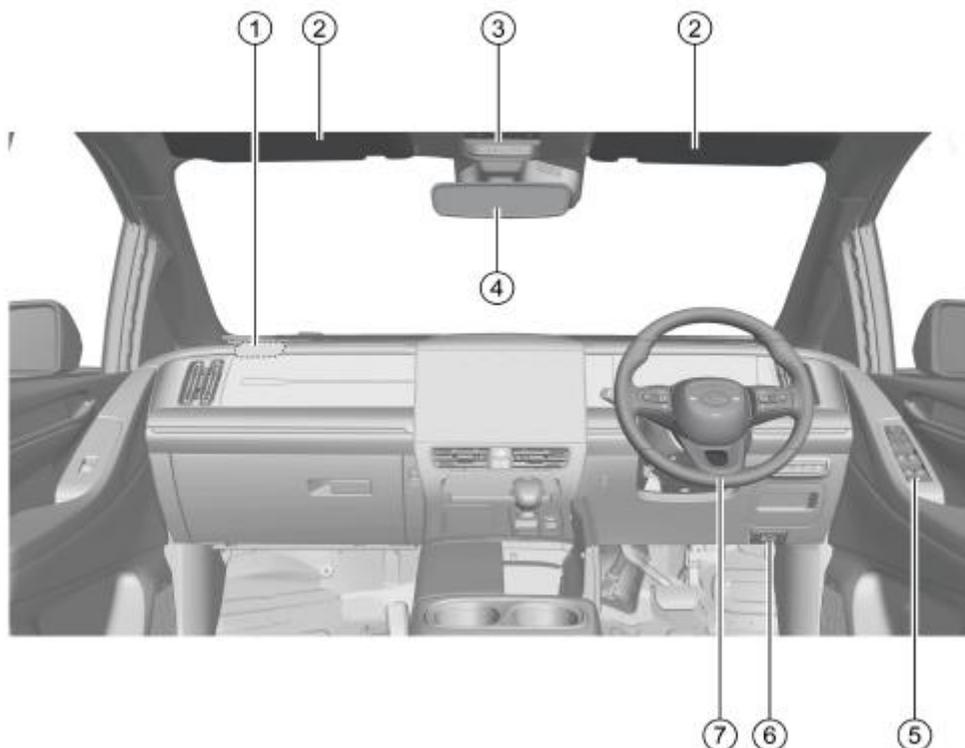
### Engine compartment

- ① Coolant expansion tank for the engine => [See page 243](#)
- ② Oil filler cap => [See page 241](#)
- ③ Brake fluid reservoir => [See page 247](#)
- ④ Engine compartment electrical box => [See page 273](#)
- ⑤ Coolant expansion tank for the power battery => [See page 243](#)
- ⑥ Oil dipstick => [See page 240](#)
- ⑦ Coolant expansion tank for the intercooler and the integrated motor control unit => [See page 243](#)
- ⑧ Windshield washer fluid reservoir => [See page 245](#)

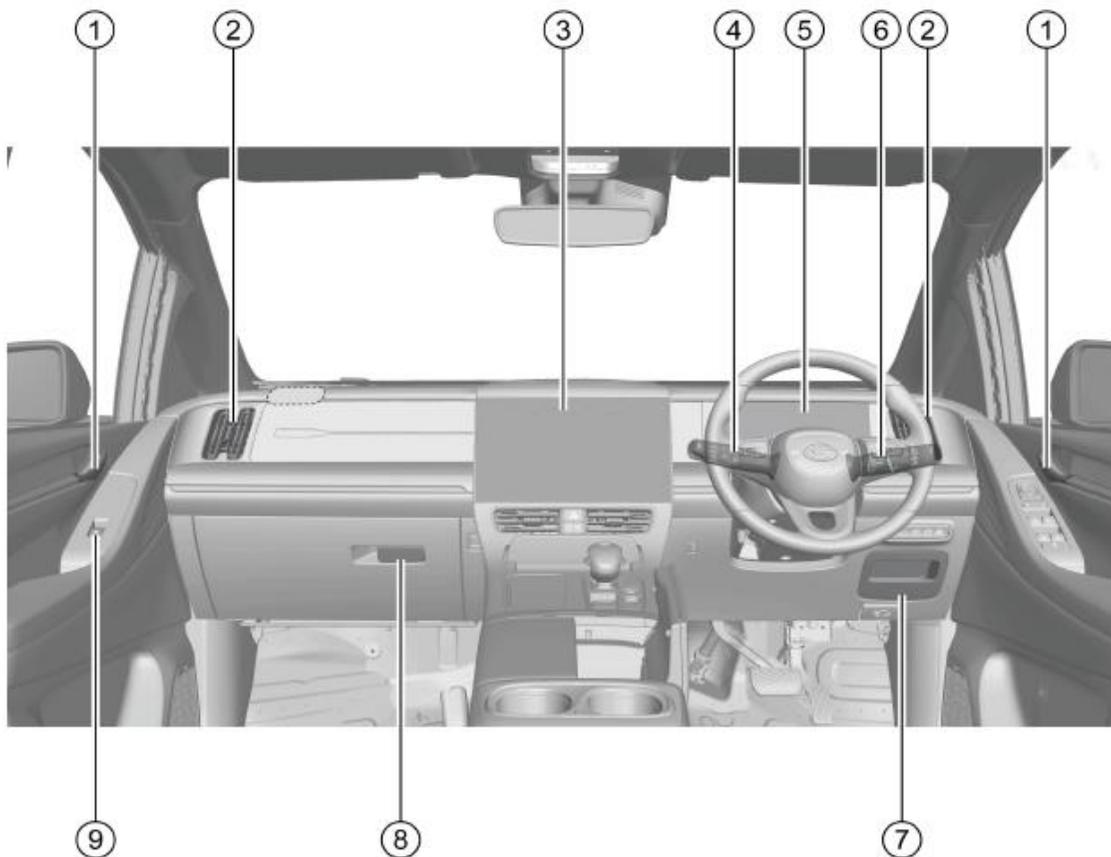
## 2. Picture index

---

### 2.2 Interior



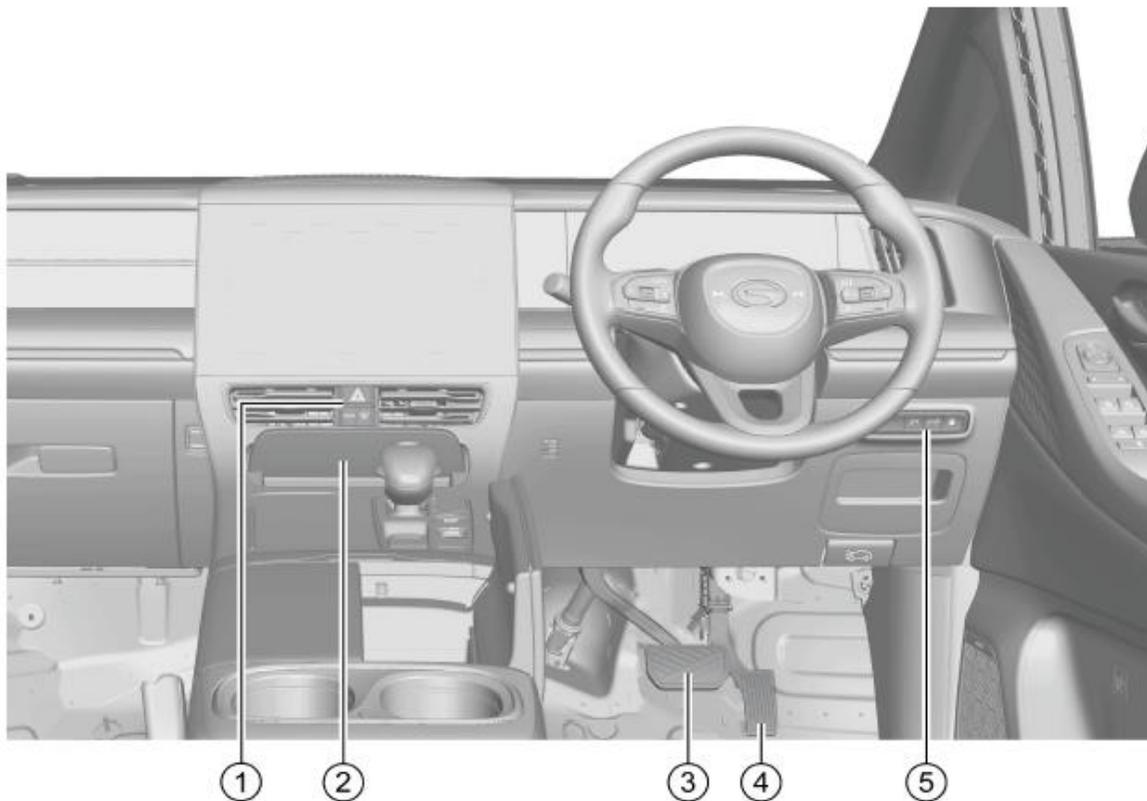
- ① Front passenger's frontal airbag => See page 20
- ② Sun visor => See page 98
- ③ Front dome lamp => See page 89
  - Electric sunroof control button => See page 78
  - Motorized sliding door keypad => See page 66
- ④ Interior rearview mirror => See page 94
- ⑤ Driver's side power window control button => See page 75
  - Central locking button => See page 58
  - Exterior rearview mirror adjusting button => See page 95
  - Exterior rearview mirror folding button => See page 96
  - Window lock button => See page 75
- ⑥ Engine hood release handle => See page 74
- ⑦ Steering wheel => See page 45
  - Steering wheel buttons => See page 46
  - Driver's frontal airbag => See page 20



- ① Handle inside the door => See page 58
- ② A/C air outlet => See page 133
- ③ AV system display => See page 134
- ④ Lamplight combination switch => See page 83
- ⑤ Instrument cluster module => See page 48
- Indicator lamp => See page 49
- ⑥ Wiper combination switch => See page 92
- ⑦ Storage box of the cab's lower guard => See page 113
- ⑧ Glove box opening handle => See page 116
- ⑨ Passenger's side power window control button => See page 76

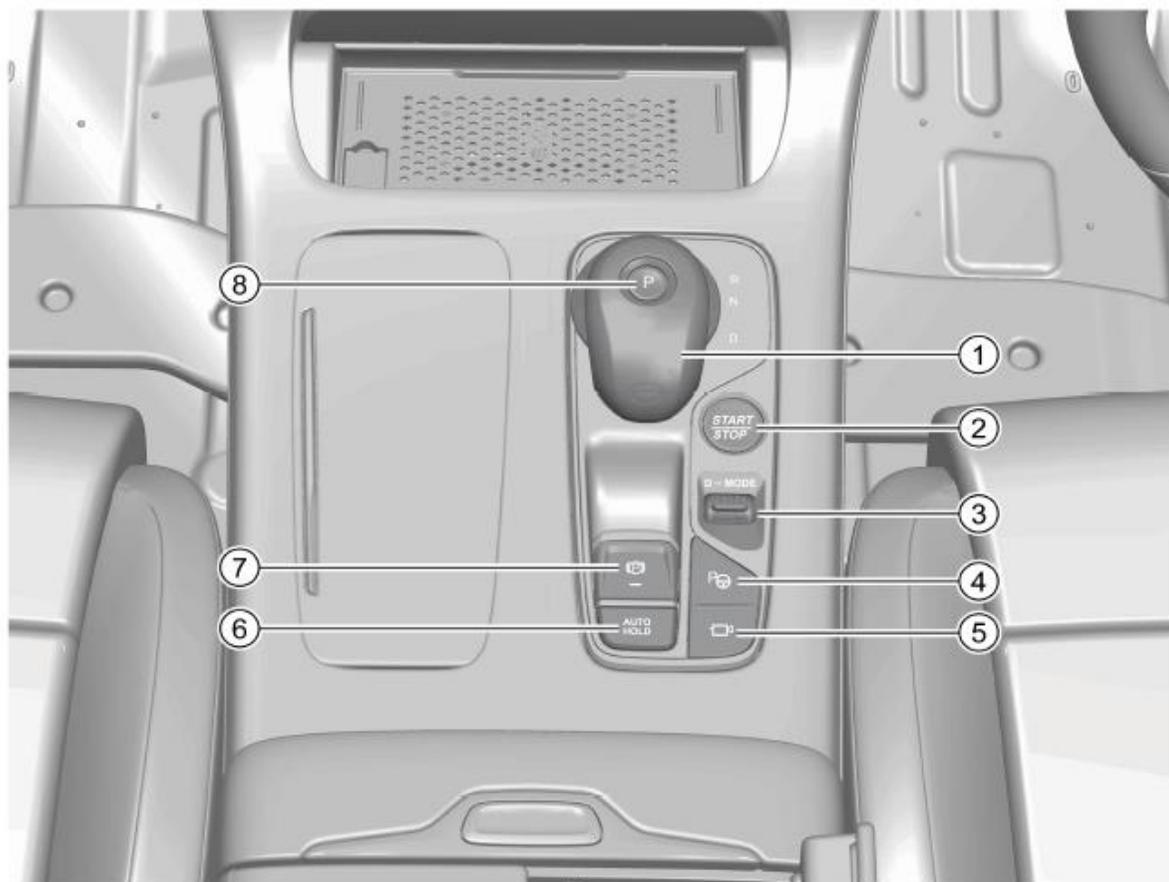
## 2. Picture index

---



- ① Air conditioning control button => [See page 131](#)
  - Hazard warning lamp switch button => [See page 88](#)
- ② Instrument panel storage box
  - Cell phone wireless charging area => [See page 122](#)
- ③ Brake pedal
- ④ Accelerator pedal
- ⑤ Instrument left switch group:
  - Charging inlet cap opening button => [See page 40](#)
  - Liftgate unlocking button => [See page 70](#)
  - Fuel tank flap opening button => [See page 236](#)

## 2. Picture index



- ① Gearshift lever => See page 141
- ② START/STOP button => See page 139
- ③ Driving mode toggle switch => See page 143
- ④ Fusion parking system button\* => See page 216
- ⑤ AVPS button => See page 207
- ⑥ AUTO HOLD button => See page 151
- ⑦ Electric park brake system button => See page 148
- ⑧ "P" gear button => See page 141

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.1 Safe driving

##### 3.1.1 General description

This section introduces important information, operating essentials, recommendations and safety precautions for safe driving. For the safety of you and the passengers, please read carefully and follow the relevant regulations.

##### NOTE

Please always keep the *Owner's Manual* in the vehicle. If you lend or resell the vehicle to someone else, be sure to hand the complete set of the accompanying documents over to the new owner.

##### The following inspections must be carried out before driving:

- Check that all lamps are working properly.
- Check that the fuel level is normal.
- Check that the coolant level is normal.
- Check that the brake fluid level is normal.
- Check that the engine oil level is normal.
- Check that the windshield glass washer fluid level is normal.
- Check that the tire pressure is normal.
- Check that the engine hood is securely closed and locked.
- Check that all windows are clear and have a good view.
- Check that no objects obstruct the movement of the driver's foot pedals.
- Adjust the seat, headrest and rearview mirror according to your height and shape.
- Use appropriate child safety seats to protect children and help them fasten the seat belts correctly.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly and remind all passengers in the vehicle to fasten the seat belts correctly.
- Check that the surrounding environment is safe.

##### WARNING

**When installing the driver's floor mat, please observe the following precautions:**

- **Do not overlap two or more floor mats.**
- **Do not make the bottom surface of the floor mat upward or back-to-front.**
- **Do not use floor mats that are incompatible with this model.**

##### CAUTION

- Do not distract yourself from external factors during driving.
- Do not drive the vehicle when your response capability reduces, such as due to medicines.
- Strictly abide by traffic laws and regulations.

#### 3.1.2 Correct sitting posture of the driver and passengers

##### Correct sitting posture of the driver

The driver's sitting posture directly affects his/her fatigue level and driving safety. Before driving, the driver shall carry out the following operations:

1. Sit up straight and adjust the seat back to a suitable position so that your back fits completely the seat back.
2. Adjust the seat position so that all pedals can be operated effectively with slightly-bent legs.
3. Correctly adjust the seat headrest. => See page 99
4. Fasten the seat belt correctly. => See page 15
5. Adjust the position of the steering wheel. => See page 45

##### Correct sitting posture of the passengers

To guarantee the safety of the passengers and reduce the risk of casualties, the passengers should:

1. Sit up straightly and adjust the headrest of the seat correctly. => See page 99
2. Adjust the distance between the seat and the instrument panel as demanded (for front passenger).
3. Adjust the seat back until the back fits completely the seat back (for front passenger).
4. Fasten the seat belt correctly. => See page 15
5. Place both feet on the floor (for every passenger).
6. Use appropriate child safety seat in accordance with applicable regulations for children. => See page 27

#### ⚠ WARNING

- It is forbidden to install a child safety seat in the front passenger's seat.
- If the front passenger is too close to the instrument panel, the SRS will not provide effective protection.
- When the vehicle is running, be sure to maintain a correct sitting posture and fasten the seat belt correctly, so as to avoid unexpected injuries in case of emergency braking or accidents.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the seat, headrest or steering wheel during driving; otherwise the vehicle may be out of control, leading to an accident.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.2 Seat belt

##### 3.2.1 Why must you fasten the seat belt

Protection for the driver and passengers from seat belts



In the event of a vehicle collision, the seat belt, if fastened correctly, can restrain the driver and passengers in a proper position and slow down the inertia of their forward movement, thus preventing them from being thrown forward, and at the same time allow airbags to give them the best protection, thus reducing their impact injury as much as possible.

In the event of a collision, the seat belt will assist other safety systems in simultaneously absorbing the energy generated by the collision, further reducing the injuries suffered by the driver and passengers.

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Airbags cannot replace seat belts. Regardless of the availability of airbags, the seat belts should be fastened correctly.**

#### Consequences of not fastening the seat belt



OMT8G-0244

In the event of a vehicle collision, the driver and passengers who does not fasten the seat belt will be thrown forward due to inertia and thereby injured.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation



#### 3.2.2 Seat belt

##### Seat belt indicator lamp

: Driver's seat belt indicator lamp

: Front passenger's seat belt indicator lamp

The following alarms will be triggered when the ENGINE START/STOP button is set to the "ON" gear:

- If the driver or front passenger does not fasten the seat belt at a speed lower than 20 km/h, the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument cluster module will flash for several seconds and stay on, accompanied by an alarm message.
- If the driver or front passenger does not fasten the seat belt at a speed higher than or equal to 20 km/h, the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument cluster module will flash for a period of time and stay on, accompanied by an alarm message and a continuous audible alarm.

Even if the vehicle speed is very low, the force acting on the human body in the event of a collision is so great that the driver and passengers cannot control their bodies with hands at all. In that case, the driver and passengers who do not fasten the seat belt will be thrown forward, and injured if colliding with any interior objects.

Rear passengers must also fasten the seat belts correctly, otherwise they will be thrown forward when an accident occurs. The passenger who does not fasten the seat belt will not only hurt himself or herself, but also endanger other passengers in the vehicle.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### CAUTION

- Before driving, please check whether there are any heavy objects on the front passenger's seat to avoid the system mistakenly determining that the seat is occupied and issuing a false alarm.
- If the alarm remains on after the seat belt is fastened correctly, it means that the seat belt doesn't work properly. In that case, please go to a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

#### WARNING

**It is strictly prohibited to use seat belt lock tongue substitutes to insert the buckle to eliminate the alarm of not fastening the seat belt.**

#### : 2nd-row seat belt indicator lamp

If a 2nd-row seat belt indicator lamp comes on in white, it indicates that the seat belt is fastened, and if the indicator lamp comes on in red, it indicates that the seat belt is not fastened or the seat belt system doesn't work properly. If the indicator lamp still comes on in red after the seat belt is fastened correctly, it is possible that the seat belt doesn't work properly. In that case, please go to a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

The 2nd-row seat belt indicator lamp will be turned on for a while and then turned off. However, it will light up again under the following conditions:

- The 2nd-row passenger does not fasten the seat belt when the vehicle starts.
- The 2nd-row passenger does not fasten the seat belt when the rear door is opened/closed.
- The 2nd-row passenger fastens or unfastens the seat belt.

#### Seat belt pretensioner and load limiter\*



The seat belt pretensioner and load limiter can reduce the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the driver and passengers and improve the protection performance.

- Before the collision, the seat belt pretensioner and load limiter can restrain the driver and passengers and enable them to maintain a correct sitting posture to prevent the body from leaning forward.
- In the event of a severe collision where the triggering condition is reached, the seat belt pretensioner and load limiter will be triggered, driving the seat belt webbing to be quickly retracted and tensioned.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

- When a vehicle collision occurs, the bodies of driver and passengers will move forward, and the seat belt load limiter will be activated at this time, so that the restraint force of the seat belt on the bodies will be within a certain range, preventing the driver and passengers from being further injured due to excessive force. And at the same time, the seat belt pretensioner and load limiter will work with the airbag to achieve a better safety protection performance.

#### **i** NOTE

- When the seat belt pretensioner and load limiter is activated, a little harmless smoke together with a sound will be produced, which is normal.
- The seat belt pretensioner and load limiter cannot be used any more if deployed, and in this case, the SRS  indicator lamp stays on, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for replacement.

#### **Adjusting the height of the shoulder seat belt (only the front seat) Fastening the front seat belt**



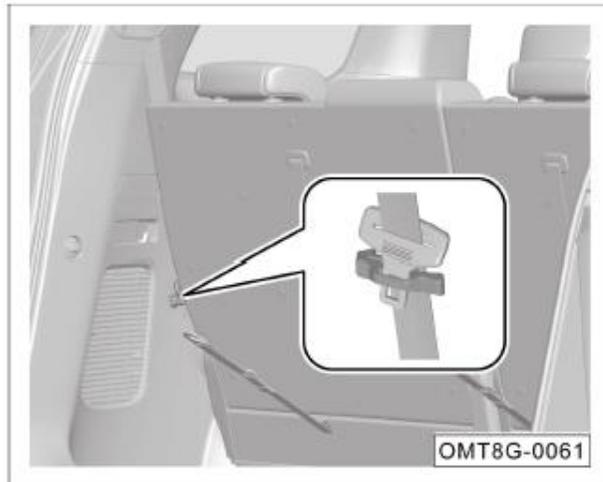
- Moving up: Grasp the guide and move it up to adjust the shoulder seat belt to the appropriate height.
- Moving down: Press the guide to unlock the switch ① and move it down to adjust the shoulder seat belt to the appropriate height.
- After the adjustment, check whether the guide is firmly locked.

1. Keep a correct sitting posture. => See page 11
2. Pull out the seat belt slowly at a uniform speed, insert the lock tongue into the corresponding buckle until a click sound is heard.
3. Pull the seat belt and confirm that the lock tongue is properly locked.

#### **i** NOTE

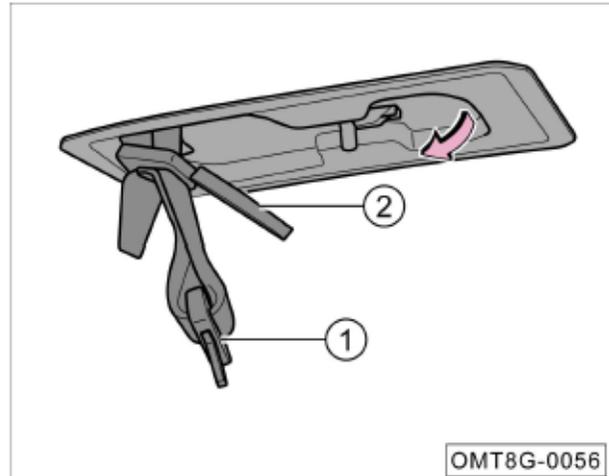
The fastening methods for the 2nd-row and 3rd-row rear seat belts are the same, and the driver is responsible for reminding passengers to fasten the seat belts correctly.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation



When fastening the rear seat belt, pull out the clip from the holder in the trim panel before moving out the webbing to slide out of the holder, and then pulling the seat belt for fastening, so as to avoid damaging the holder when pulling the seat belt.

#### Fastening the middle rear seat belt



1. Pull out seat belt lock tongue ① and lock tongue ② from the dome slot.



2. Align lock tongue ① with the triangle mark on the fixed buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Insert the seat belt lock tongue ① into the fixed buckle.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation



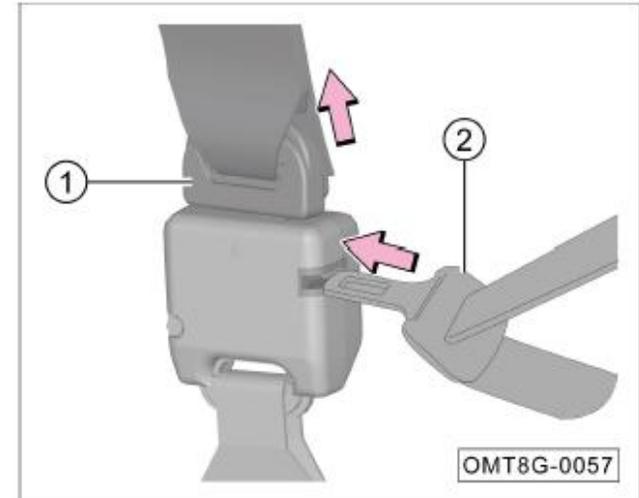
3. Insert the seat belt lock tongue ② into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
4. Pull the seat belt lock tongue and confirm that the seat belt lock tongue is properly locked.

#### Unfastening the seat belt



1. Press the red button of the buckle. Then the lock tongue will pop out automatically.
2. Grasp the seat belt to allow it to retract slowly.

#### Unfasten the middle rear seat belt



1. Press the red button of the buckle. Then the lock tongue ② will pop out automatically.
2. Insert the seat belt lock tongue ② into the slot on the side of the fixed buckle. The lock tongue ① will pop out automatically.
3. Grasp the seat belt to allow it to retract slowly.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

Pregnant women must fasten the seat belts correctly



How does a pregnant woman correctly fasten the seat belt?

1. Adjust the seat and the headrest to the proper position.
2. Grasp the lock tongue, slowly pull the seat belt over the shoulder, and ensure that the lap belt is as low as possible and not pressed against the abdomen.
3. Insert the lock tongue into the corresponding buckle till a buckling sound is heard.
4. Pull the shoulder seat belt upward parallel to the upper body, tension the lap seat belt, and make sure that the lock tongue is properly locked.

#### ⚠WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury during emergency braking or accidents, please observe the following precautions:

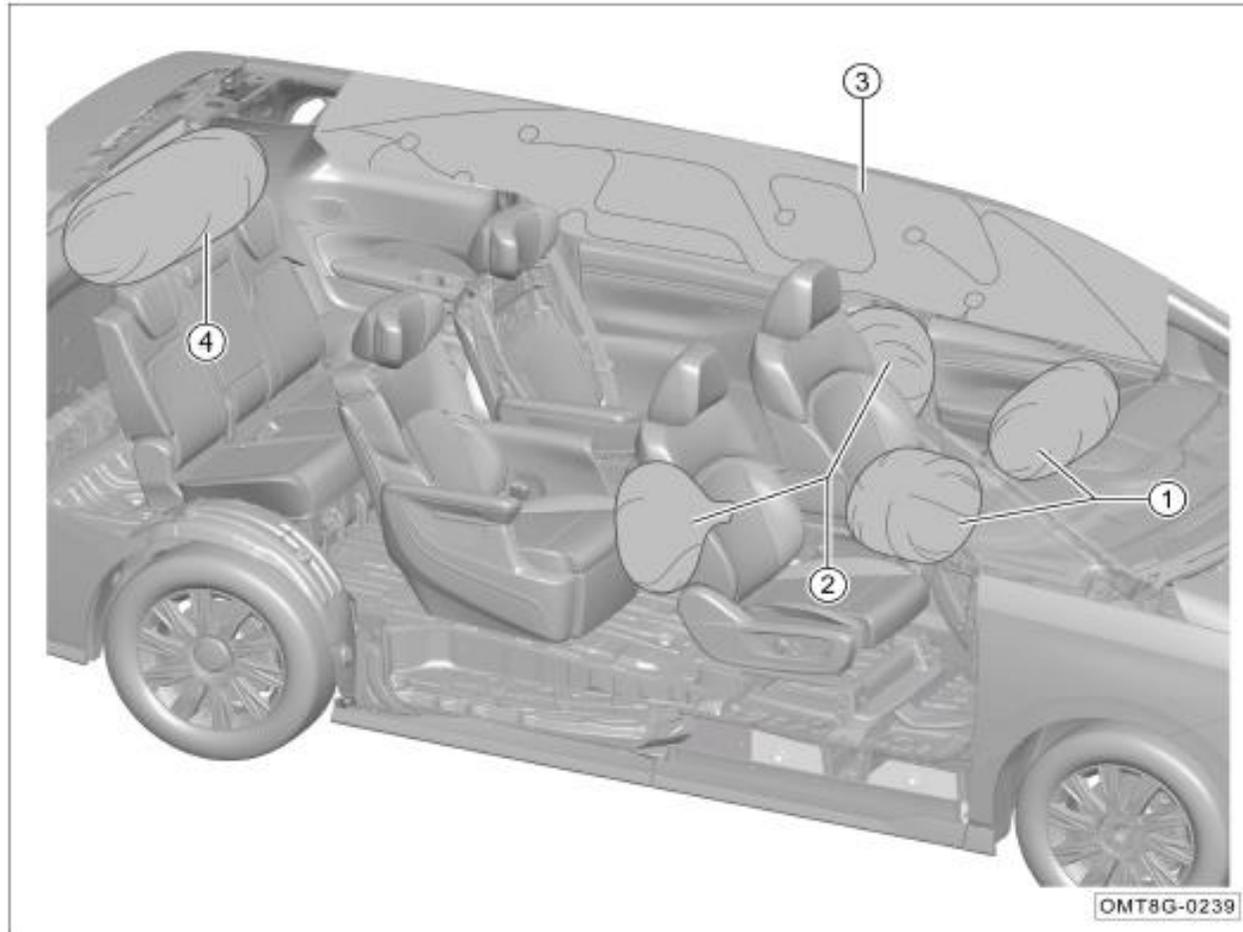
- Before driving, make sure that all occupants have properly fastened the seat belts.
- Each seat belt is for one person only. Do not share a seat belt with other persons (including children).
- Do not recline the front seat back excessively for comfort.
- Do not put the shoulder seat belt under or behind your arm.
- Be sure to insert the lock tongue into the buckle of corresponding side instead of the buckle of other sides.
- **Never unfasten the seat belt before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.**

#### ⚠WARNING

- Please do not change or disassemble the seat belt without authorization, otherwise it may affect the protective effect of the seat belt on you.
- If the seat belt has burrs, contamination, or damage, it must be replaced in a timely manner.
- A sponge dipped in neutral soapy water can be used to wipe the seat belt. After wiping, place the seat belt in a cool and dry place before use. But the seat belt can only be cleaned in the car and cannot be disassembled at will.
- When not in use, the seat belt should be fully retracted and should not be left in a loose hanging state.

## 3. Instructions for safe operation

### 3.3 Supplemental restraint system (SRS)



Depending on vehicle configurations, the deployment positions of the SRS are as shown below:

- ① Front seat frontal airbag.
- ② Front seat side airbag.
- ③ Side curtain airbag (symmetrical on both sides).
- ④ Rear windshield airbag.

#### ⚠WARNING

- **Never attempt to repair, adjust or modify the airbags.**
- **The airbag can be deployed once only, and thus, if it is deployed in the event of an accident, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for replacement.**
- **When the SRS is faulty, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair; otherwise, the system will not trigger or abnormally trigger the airbag in the event of a collision.**

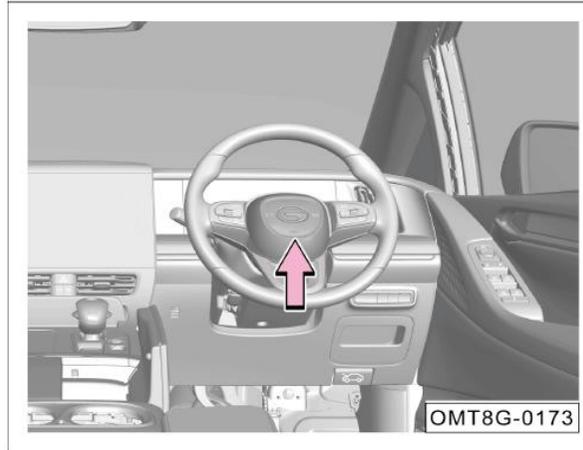
### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### Supplemental restraint system (SRS) indicator lamp Front seat frontal airbag

With the ENGINE START/STOP button set to the "ON" gear, the indicator lamp  will come on for a few seconds and turned off after the system completes self-test.

A system fault is indicated when the indicator lamp  is in the following conditions:

1. The indicator lamp is not come on after the ENGINE START/STOP button is set to the "ON" gear.
2. With the ENGINE START/STOP button set to the "ON" gear, the indicator lamp fails to be turned off after the system completes self-test.
3. With the ENGINE START/STOP button set to the "ON" gear, the indicator lamp comes on again after the system completes self-test and the indicator lamp is turned off.
4. The indicator lamp comes on or flashes while the vehicle is running.



The driver's frontal airbag is installed inside the steering wheel (the shaded area). The steering wheel is marked with "AIRBAG".



The front passenger's frontal airbag is installed inside the instrument panel (as indicated by the dotted dash). The instrument panel is marked with "AIRBAG".

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

In the event of a severe frontal collision where the triggering condition is met, the frontal airbags will be triggered by the system and deploy rapidly to assist the seat belts in protecting the driver and passengers.

In certain collision accidents, the system may simultaneously trigger other airbags.

#### ⚠WARNING

**Do not attach or place any decorative objects on the surface of instrument panel, because when the vehicle is running or the airbag deploys, these objects will fall, be knocked over and roll around in the vehicle, affecting the driver and hurting the passengers in the vehicle.**

Front seat frontal airbags might not be triggered in the following cases:

- The ENGINE START/STOP button is set to "ACC" or "OFF" gear.
- A minor frontal collision occurs.
- A side collision occurs.
- A rear collision occurs.
- A rollover occurs.
- Other special circumstances occur.

#### iNOTE

The word "minor" implies the severity of a collision sensed by the SRS control unit and has nothing to do with the damage of the vehicle.

#### Front seat side airbag



Front seat side airbags are installed at the outboard side of the driver's seat back and that of the front passenger's seat back (as indicated by the dotted dash). The outer side of the front seats is marked with "AIRBAG".

In the event of a severe side collision where the triggering condition is met, the side airbags on the side where the vehicle collides will be triggered by the system and deploy rapidly to assist the seat belts in protecting the front driver and passengers.

In certain collision accidents, the system may simultaneously trigger other airbags.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

The front seat side airbags might not be triggered in the following cases:

- The ENGINE START/STOP button is set to "ACC" or "OFF" gear.
- A 100% frontal collision occurs.
- A minor side collision occurs.
- A rear collision occurs.
- Other special circumstances occur.

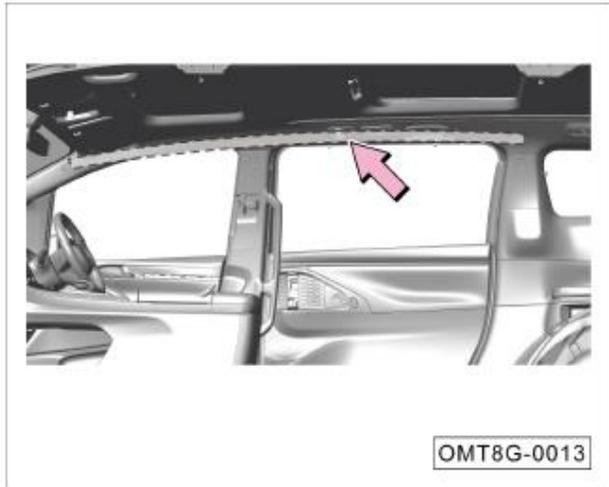
#### **i**NOTE

The word "minor" implies the severity of a collision sensed by the SRS control unit and has nothing to do with the damage of the vehicle.

#### **⚠**WARNING

- **Do not lean your body against the door side equipped with side airbags during driving.**
- **Do not cover the side airbags with seat covers or other objects; otherwise, the side airbags will not be fully triggered to protect the occupants when an accident occurs.**

#### Side curtain airbag



Side curtain airbags are installed at the left and right sides of the roof respectively (as indicated by the dotted dash). The trim panels on both sides of the roof are marked with "AIRBAG".

In the event of a severe side collision, the side curtain airbags on the side where the vehicle collides will be triggered by the system and deploy rapidly to assist the seat belts in protecting the driver and passengers.

In certain collision accidents, the system may simultaneously trigger other airbags.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

The side curtain airbags might not be triggered in the following cases:

- The ENGINE START/STOP button is set to "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- A 100% frontal collision occurs.
- A minor side collision occurs.
- A rear collision occurs.
- Other special circumstances occur.

#### NOTE

The word "minor" implies the severity of a collision sensed by the SRS control unit and has nothing to do with the damage of the vehicle.

#### Rear windshield airbag



The rear windshield airbag is installed inside the rear of the roof (as indicated by the dotted dash). The trim panel at the rear of the roof is marked with "AIRBAG".

In the event of a severe rear collision, the rear windshield airbag will be triggered by the system and deploy rapidly to assist the seat belts in protecting the driver and passengers. In certain collision accidents, the system may simultaneously trigger other airbags.

The rear windshield airbags might not be triggered in the following cases:

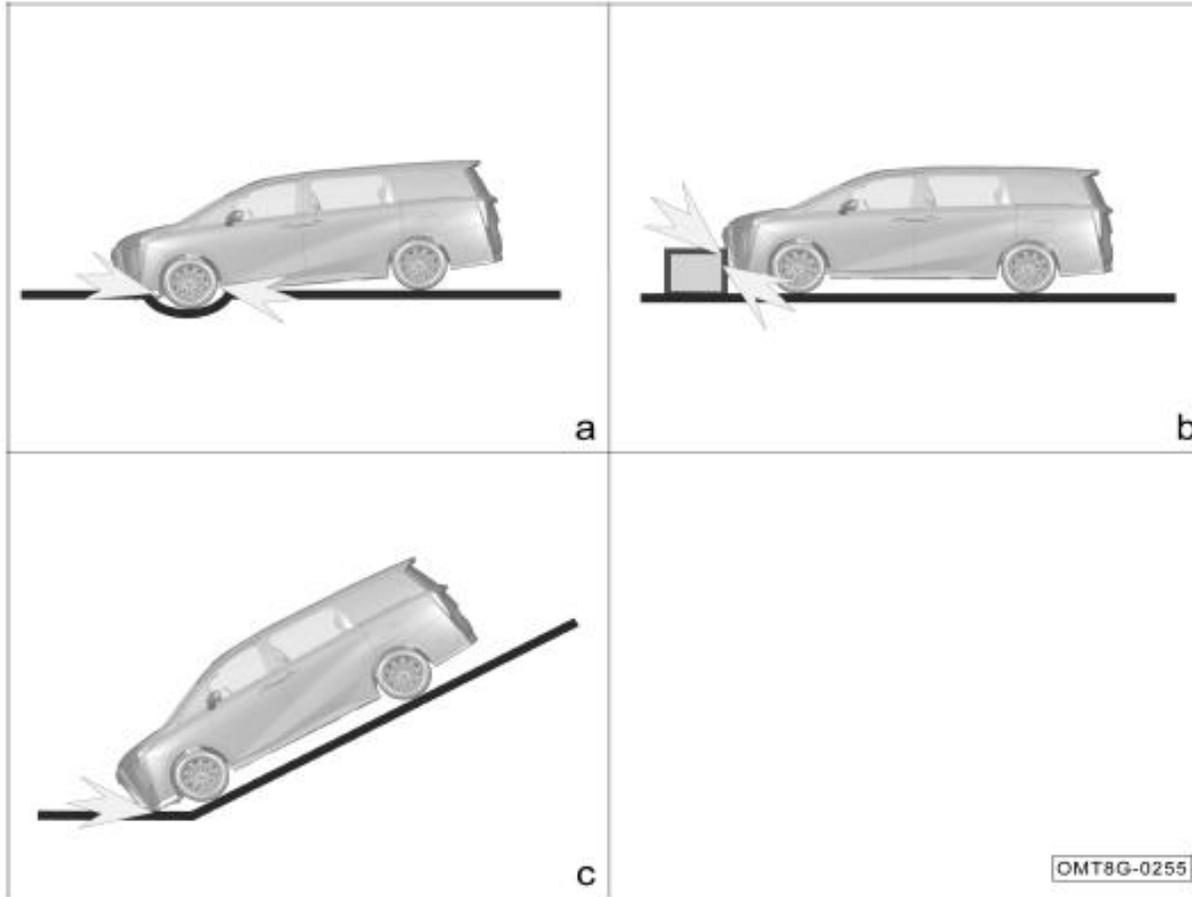
- The vehicle power supply is set to "ACC" or "OFF" gear.
- A 100% frontal collision occurs.
- A side collision occurs.
- A minor rear collision occurs.
- Other special circumstances occur.

#### NOTE

The word "minor" implies the severity of a collision sensed by the SRS control unit and has nothing to do with the damage of the vehicle.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

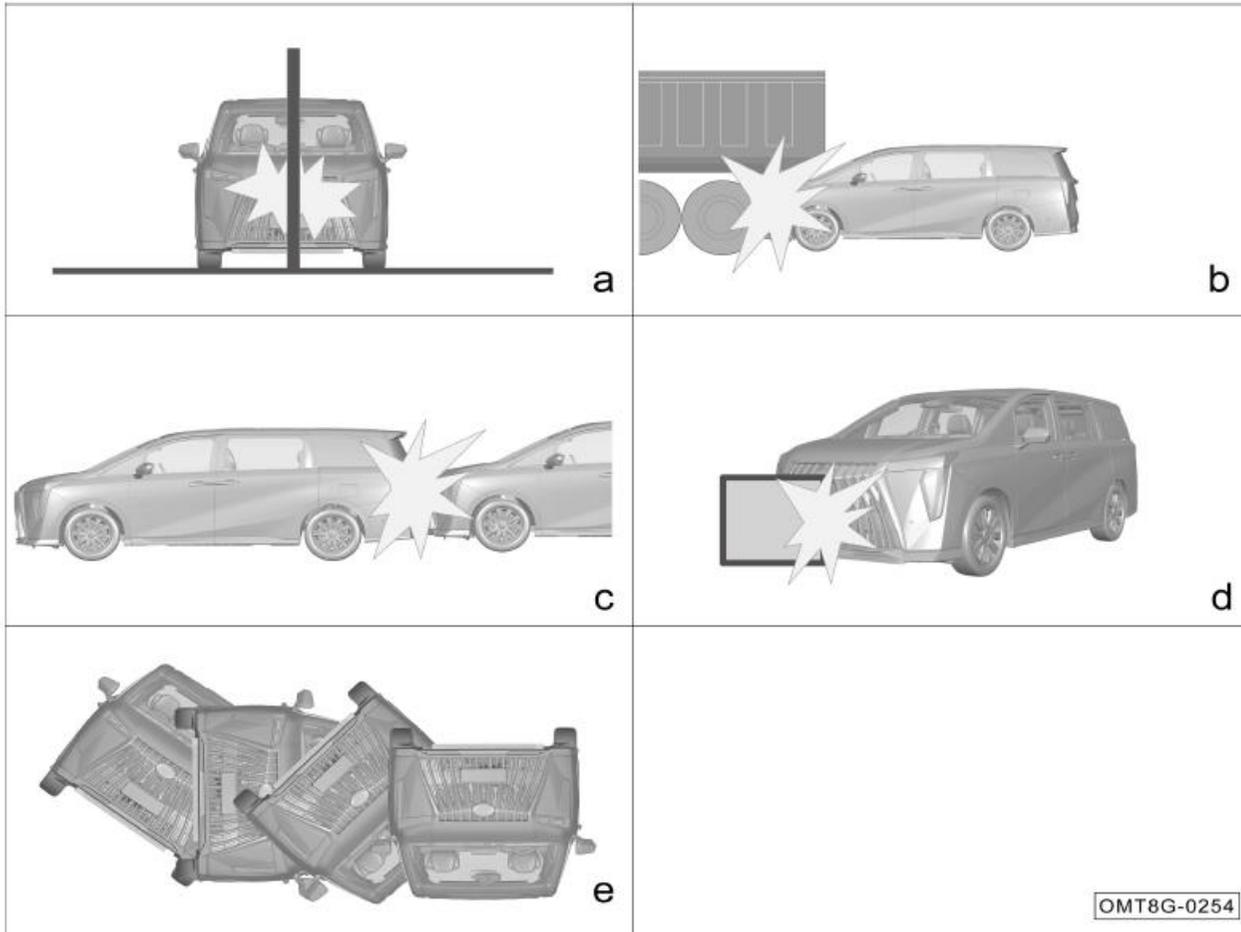
#### 3.3.1 Cases where the airbags may deploy



- a. Nose-down to the ground when the vehicle crosses a deep groove.
- b. Collision with roadside protrusions, curbs, etc.
- c. Nose-down to the ground when the vehicle runs down a steep slope.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.3.2 Cases where the airbags might not deploy



- a. Collision with concrete pillars, trees or other elongated objects.
- b. Rear-end collision with the lower rear end of large truck.
- c. Rear-end collision by other vehicles.
- d. Collision with a wall or another vehicle, other than frontal collision.
- e. Rollover or tilting.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.4 Safe ride of children

##### 3.4.1 General description

A child must take a 2nd-row or rear left side seat, and a suitable child safety seat should be selected for protection according to the body size of the child.



Warning labels are pasted on the front, and at the back, of the left sun visor to remind the front passenger of the danger of the frontal airbag. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the labels.

#### ⚠WARNING

- Do not install any rear-facing child safety seats on seats with frontal airbags!
- Even if a child has been put in a child safety seat, do not let any part of his/her head or body rest on the door area (the deployment area of the front seat side airbag or side curtain airbag), otherwise the impact force of the deployed front seat side airbag or side curtain airbag can cause serious injury or even death of the child.
- Do not let a child stand or kneel on the seat.
- Do not allow children to operate devices that may cause pinch to themselves (such as power window, sunroof, etc.).

#### ⚠WARNING

- Never leave a child alone in the vehicle!
- Never hold an infant or toddler on your knees!
- Seat belts are not suitable for infants and toddlers as they can cause injuries in the event of an accident.
- Ensure that in the event of a collision or emergency braking, children are less likely to be injured by hitting any hard objects in the vehicle.
- Lock the child safety lock of the door on the side where the child sits.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.4.2 Child safety seat



a. Group 0/0 + child safety seat



b. Group I child safety seat



c. Group II child safety seat



d. Group III child safety seat

Classification of child safety seats (for reference only):

- a. **Group 0/0 + child safety seat:**
  - Suitable for infants weighing less than 13 kg.
- b. **Group I child safety seat:**
  - Suitable for toddlers weighing between 9 kg and 18 kg. For children weighing no more than 18 kg (reference age 3 years old), the child seat must be installed in a rearward direction.
- c. **Group II child safety seat:**
  - Suitable for children weighing between 15 kg and 25 kg.
- d. **Group III child safety seat:**
  - Suitable for children weighing between 22 kg and 36 kg.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

Weldon Angela 2nd Generation is recommended for Group I child safety seat, and the product model is: WD002–ZJC.

Installation precautions are as follows:

- The 2nd-row seat adjustment: They should be adjusted longitudinally to the final position.
- The seat body adjustment: The seat must be installed in a rear-facing position, and the seat body should be adjusted to the most upright (near vertical) position.
- Headrest adjustment: It is recommended that the seat headrest be adjusted to align with the child's shoulder height.
- It is recommended that the top tether hook be fixed to the 2nd-row seat back of the vehicle.
- It is recommended to take the path of top tether around both sides of the child safety seat headrest.
- It is recommended to use clip pad and shoulder protective cover.

#### **i**NOTE

During the actual installation of the child safety seat, be sure to refer to the user guide for the child safety seat for correct installation.

#### 3.4.3 Smart Bluetooth child seat\*

##### Connect the Bluetooth seat

Fasten the Bluetooth seat belt, turn on the Bluetooth switch in the Bluetooth settings interface, and look for available Bluetooth devices. The Bluetooth device "Weldon\_xxxxxx" will appear.

- Click on the Bluetooth device "Weldon\_xxxxxx" to connect. Once connected successfully, it will display as connected.
- Click "Disconnect" to deactivate the Bluetooth child seat function.
- Click "Ignore Device" to open a confirmation window for ignoring the Bluetooth device; click "Cancel" to keep the Bluetooth device connected; click "Confirm" to disconnect the Bluetooth device, and the device "Weldon\_xxxxxx" will be removed from the list.

After the child leaves the seat for a while, the Bluetooth will enter sleep mode. To wake up the Bluetooth again:

- Manually trigger the seat cushion switch.
- Restart the device.

#### **i**NOTE

- The smart Bluetooth child seat communication function is only compatible with the Weldon Smart Series - GAC custom edition.
- After the Bluetooth device "Weldon\_xxxxxx" is successfully connected for the first time, it will automatically connect the next time it is used.

##### Bluetooth seat alarm

During normal use of the Bluetooth seat, if the seat belt is unfastened, the AV system interface will display an alarm message stating, "The child seat belt is not fastened. To ensure the safety of the child, please fasten the seat belt," and this alert will persist until the seat belt is securely fastened. Once the seat belt is fastened, the alarm pop-up will disappear.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.4.4 Information about child safety seats

Information about the applicability of different seating positions for child restraint systems:

Seat number	Front left	Front right	Second row left	Second row right	Third row left	Third row center	Third row right
Seat position suitable for universal seat belts (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for i-Size (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Seat position suitable for lateral mounting module (L1/L2) (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Seat position suitable for the largest rear-facing restraint module (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	No	No	R1,R2X,R2,R3	R1.R2X.R2.R3	R1,R2X,R2,R3	No	No
Seat position suitable for the largest front-facing restraint module (F2X/F2/F3)	No	No	F2X.F2.F3	F2X.F2.F3	F2X.F2.F3	No	No
Seat position suitable for the largest booster seat restraint module (B2/B3)	No	No	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	No	No

Please install according to the instructions in the child safety seat manual. When using the seatbelt to install the child restraint system, ensure that the seat belt webbing is correctly routed through the child safety seat and that it is securely installed.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.4.5 Correctly installing the child safety seat

To ensure a better protection effect and prevent the seat headrest from affecting the performance of the child safety seat during use, it is recommended to remove the seat headrest on which the child safety seat is installed.

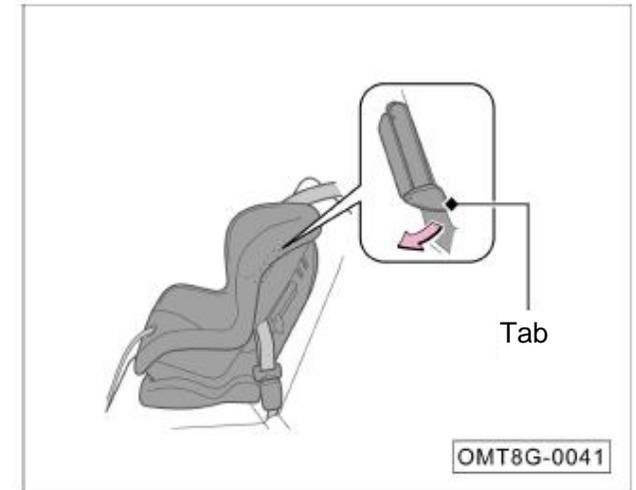
##### **i**NOTE

During the actual installation of the child safety seat, be sure to refer to the user guide for the child safety seat for correct installation.

#### Installation of child safety seat by three-point seat belt

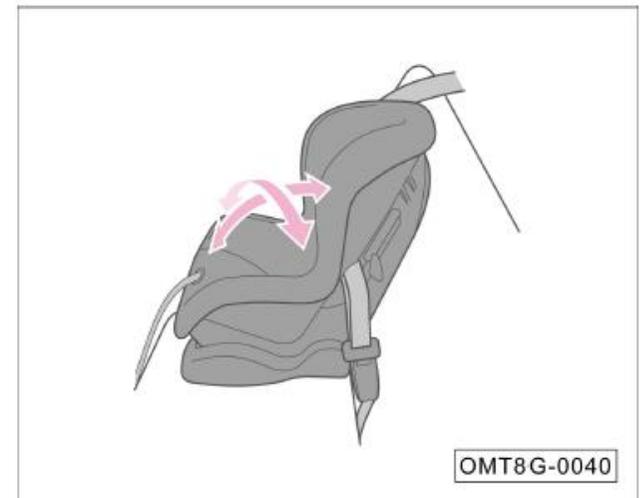
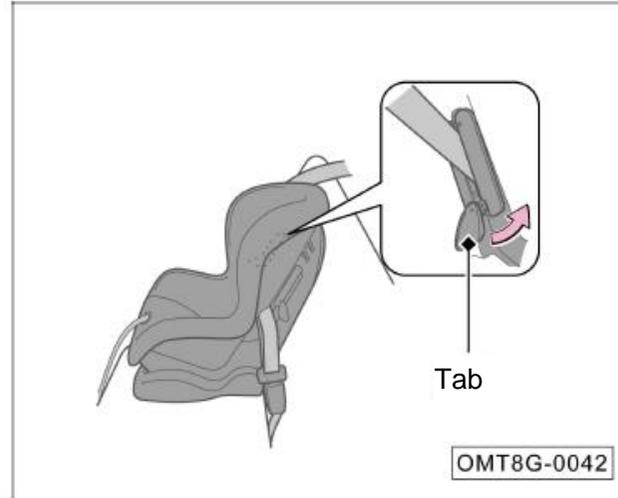
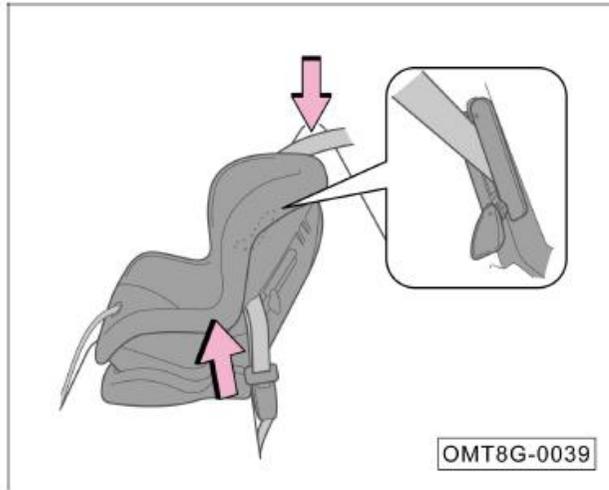


1. Place the child safety seat on the rear seat.
2. Pass the seat belt through the child safety seat and fully insert the lock tongue into the buckle until a click sound is heard.



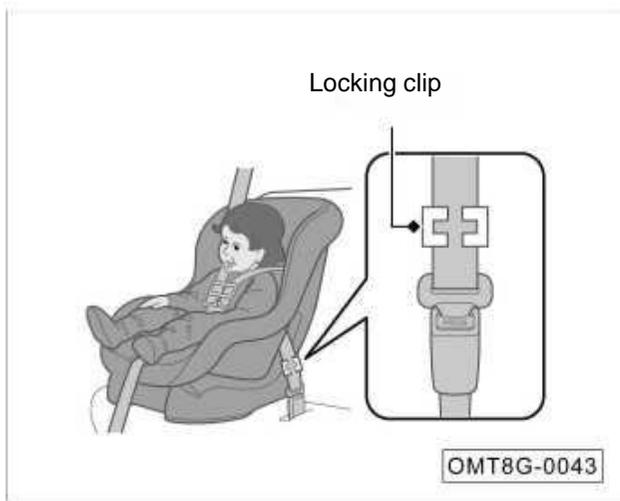
3. Push the tab down and pass the shoulder seat belt through the slit on the side of the child safety seat.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation



4. Grasp the shoulder seat belt near the buckle and pull it up to tension the lap belt. At this time, press the child safety seat with your own weight and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Place the seat belt correctly and push the tab up. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. When pushing the tab up, pull upward the upper part of the shoulder seat belt to tension the belt.
6. Shake the child safety seat back and forth, left and right to make sure it is firmly fixed.
7. Make sure that all unused seat belts in the reach of the children are locked.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation



If no means are provided on the child safety seat for securing the seat belt, please install a locking clip on the seat belt.

- After step 1 and step 2, pull the shoulder seat belt upward to make sure the lap seat belt is tensioned.
- Firmly grasp the seat belt near the locking tab. Pinch the two parts of the seat belt together so that they do not slip out of the locking tab. Unbuckle the seat belt.

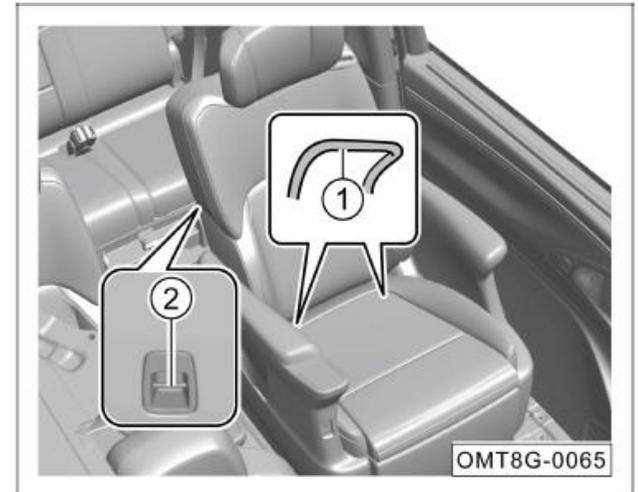
Install the locking clip as shown. Place the clip as close as possible to the locking tab and insert the locking tab into the buckle. Go to steps 6 and 7.

#### Install the I-SIZE system

The 2nd-row and rear seats of this vehicle are equipped with the I-SIZE system. The installation instructions of the I-SIZE child safety seat are as follows.

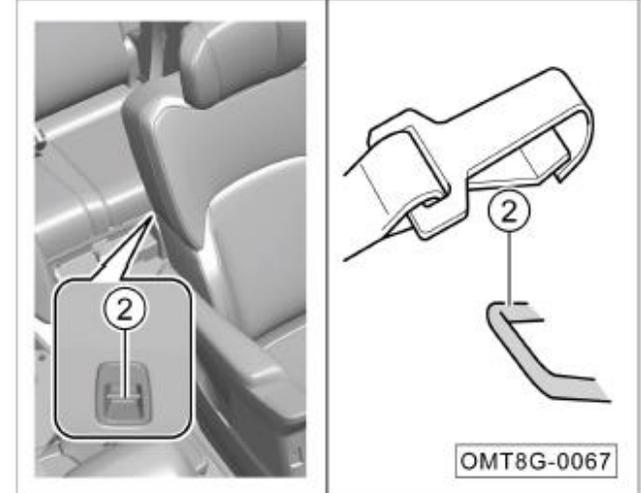
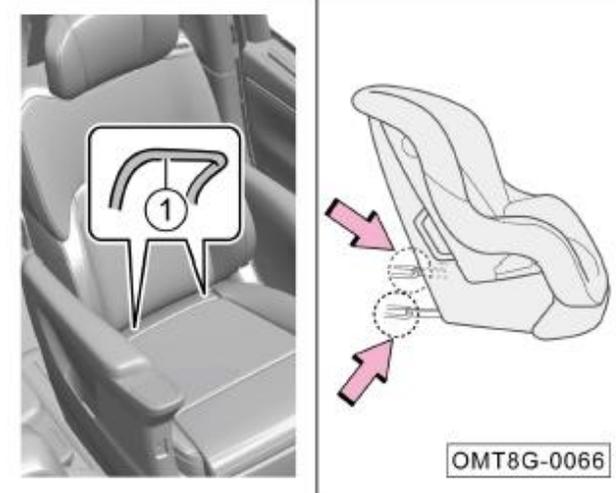
#### ⚠WARNING

- **The child safety seat anchorages installed in this vehicle can be used to fix the child safety seats only.**
- **Do not connect straps, hard and sharp objects or any objects other than child safety seats to the anchorages, otherwise children may face life-threatening dangers in the event of an accident.**



For a 2nd-row seat, the lower anchorage ① is hidden in the gap between the seat back and the cushion, and the upper anchorage ② is at the rear of the seat back.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation



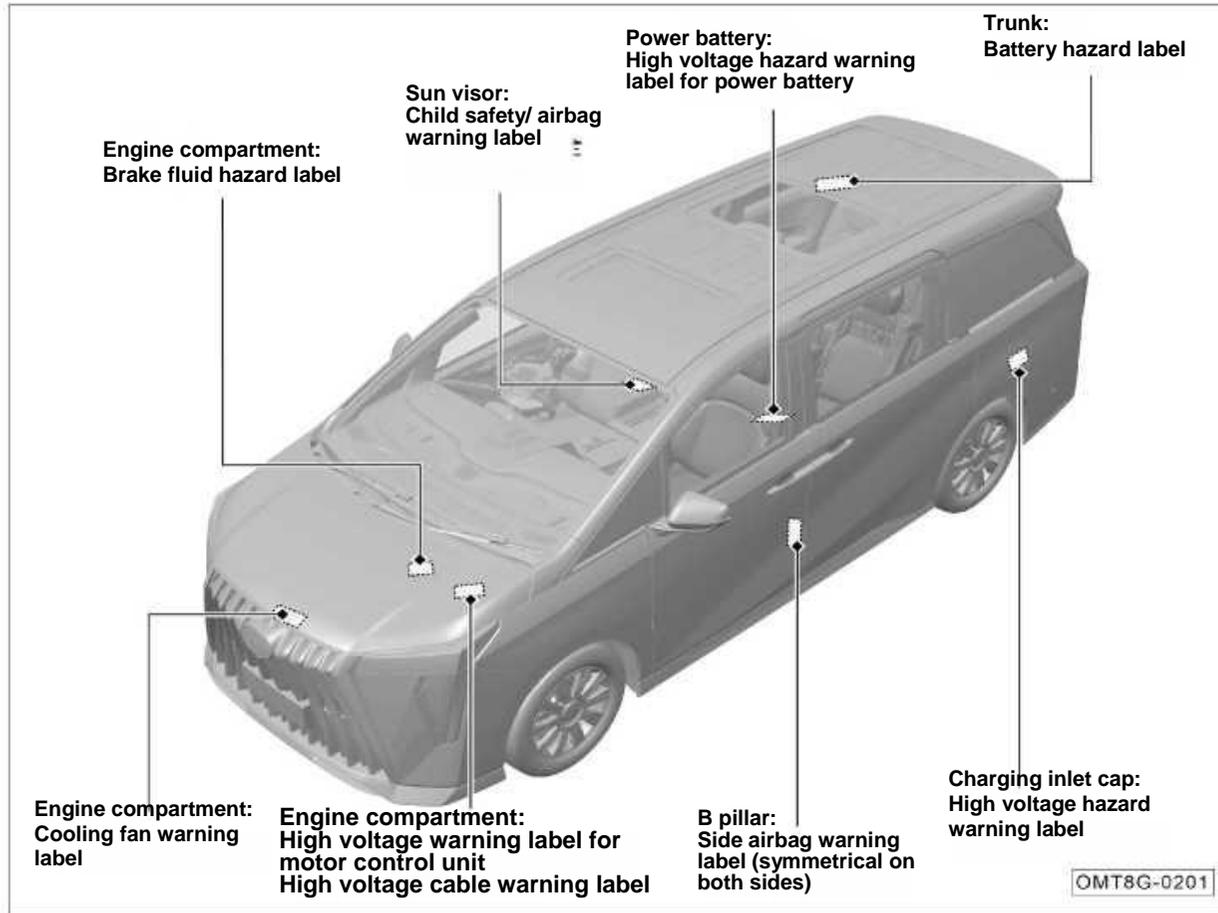
The anchorage ① of the rear seat is hidden in the gap between the seat back and cushion.

1. Put the child safety seat on the seat, find the lower anchorage ①, and insert the lower guide groove of the child safety seat as arrowed into the lower anchorage ① until a click sound is heard.

2. Thread the strap through the top of seat back and attach the strap hook to the upper anchorage ② with the strap not twisted. Tension the strap and shake the child safety seat to ensure it is firmly fixed.

### 3. Instructions for safe operation

#### 3.5 Safety labels



The labels are located as shown to remind you of the potential danger that can cause serious injury or death. Please read these labels carefully.

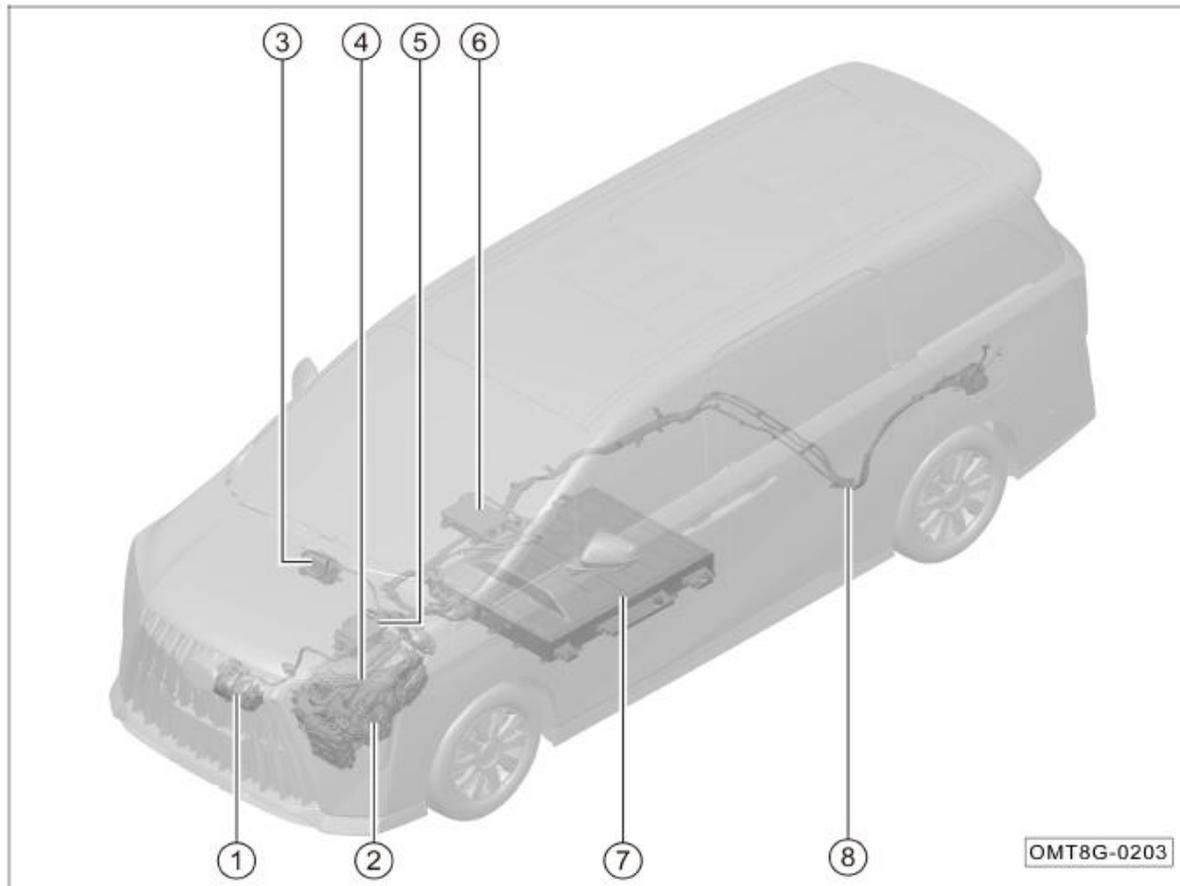
If the label comes off or is difficult to read, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop in time for replacement.

#### **i**NOTE

In case of any discrepancy in the illustrated location or quantity of the labels, the actual vehicle shall prevail.

### 4.1 Plug-in hybrid powertrain

#### 4.1.1 Hybrid powertrain



Be careful when operating the hybrid powertrain, as it is a high-voltage system and its internal components have high temperatures during operation. Please follow the warning on the vehicle warning label.

#### Components of the high-voltage system

- ① A/C compressor
- ② Electromechanical coupling integrated transmission
- ③ Water heater
- ④ Integrated motor control unit
- ⑤ Power distribution unit
- ⑥ Integrated power system
- ⑦ traction battery
- ⑧ High voltage cable (orange)

#### **i** NOTE

The orange harness arranged for the entire vehicle is a high-voltage cable.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Traction battery

The lifespan of power batteries is limited. The lifespan of power batteries may vary depending on the driving style and conditions.

#### Precautions for the power battery

##### ⓘ CAUTION

- The power battery is installed at the lower end of the vehicle body. If any problems are found, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop as soon as possible to inspect the vehicle.
- When storing the vehicle for a long time without using it, it is necessary to regularly maintain the vehicle by connecting the charger for charging or starting the engine to idle for charging.
- If there may be extreme cold weather with temperatures below  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$  in the place of use, please replace the coolant with a lower freezing point in advance to prevent the coolant from freezing and causing damage to the battery cooling system.

##### ⚠ WARNING

- **Never sell, transfer or modify the power battery. The power battery removed from scrapped vehicles should be recycled by a GAC Motor authorized shop to prevent accidents. Please do not scrap the power battery by yourself.**  
If the power battery is not properly recycled, the following situations may occur, leading to serious injury or even death:
  - **Illegal scrapping or disposal of the power battery may occur, causing harm to the environment, or someone may experience electric shock due to touching high-voltage parts.**
  - **The power battery is specifically designed for your hybrid vehicle. If the power battery is used or modified in any way outside the vehicle, accidents such as electric shock, heating, smoking, explosion, and electrolyte leakage may occur.**

##### ⚠ WARNING

- **If the power battery is not removed when scrapping the vehicle, there is a risk of severe electric shock when touching high-voltage parts, cables, and their connectors.**
- **If the vehicle must be scrapped, the power battery must be scrapped by a GAC Motor authorized shop or a qualified repair shop. If the power battery is scrapped improperly, it may cause electric shock, leading to serious injury or even death.**

### Precautions for high voltage

#### WARNING

The vehicle is equipped with high-voltage direct current and alternating current systems. High-voltage DC and AC power is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shocks that can lead to serious injury or even death.

- Do not touch, disassemble, remove or replace high-voltage parts, cables and their connectors.
- The hybrid powertrain uses high voltage, so the system temperature is very high after starting. Be careful of high voltage and high temperature and follow the warning on the vehicle warning label.

### Precautions for traffic accidents

#### WARNING

Please follow the following precautions to reduce the risk of serious injury or even death.

- Park the vehicle on the roadside, shift the gearshift lever to the "P" position, apply the parking brake, and turn off the engine.
- Do not touch high-voltage parts, cables, and connectors.
- If there are exposed wires inside or outside the car, electric shock may occur. Do not touch exposed wires.
- If there is a liquid leak, do not touch it as it may be a strong alkaline electrolyte leaking from the power battery. If the skin or eyes come into contact with the electrolyte, immediately rinse with plenty of water, and if possible, use a boric acid solution. Then call a doctor immediately.

#### WARNING

- If a hybrid power vehicle catches fire, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not use fire extinguishers that are ineffective against electrical fires. Even using a small amount of water can be dangerous.
- If towing the vehicle, it should be done with the front wheels off the ground. If the wheels connected to the drive motor land during traction, the motor may continue to generate electricity. It may cause a fire. => See page 280
- Carefully inspect the ground beneath the vehicle. If any liquid is found leaking onto the ground, it may indicate damage to the fuel system. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Hybrid powertrain warning information

When the hybrid powertrain malfunctions or the user operates improperly, a warning message will be displayed on the instrument cluster display. Please read the information and follow its instructions. => [See page 273](#)

If the system fault indicator lamp come on, displays warning information, or the battery is disconnected, the vehicle may not be able to start. In this situation, please try starting the vehicle again. If the "READY" indicator lamp is not on, it is recommended to contact a GAC Motor authorized shop.

If the vehicle has been parked for more than three months, make sure that there is no warning information on the instrument cluster module before using it.

### 4.1.2 Hybrid powertrain characteristics

The vehicle is a plug-in hybrid power vehicle, and its characteristics are different from conventional vehicles. Please be familiar with the characteristics of the vehicle and operate it with caution.

#### System components

The hybrid powertrain mainly consists of components such as the engine, power battery, integrated motor control unit, vehicle control unit and electromechanically coupled transmission.

### EV indicator lamp



The EV indicator lamp of the instrument cluster module comes on when only using the drive motor to drive the vehicle.

### Cases where the engine may not be able to stop

The engine can automatically start and stop. However, the engine may not automatically stop in the following situations:

- During the engine warm-up process.
- During the charging process of the power battery.
- When the temperature of the power battery is high or low.
- When the heating function of the A/C system is turned on.

#### NOTE

- If the external temperature is low and the vehicle's air conditioning is set to heating, the engine may start in Electric First mode.
- In other cases, depending on the situation, the engine may also not automatically stop.

### The unique sound and vibration of the hybrid power vehicle

Even if the vehicle can move when the "READY" indicator lamp is on, there may be no engine sound or vibration. For safety reasons, please apply the parking brake and make sure to shift the gearshift lever to the "P" position when parking the vehicle.

The following sounds or vibrations may occur during the operation of the hybrid powertrain, but they are not faults:

- The sound of the drive motor working in the engine compartment may be heard.
- When the hybrid powertrain starts or stops, the working sound of the power battery may be heard.
- When the hybrid powertrain starts or stops, the power battery relay will make a working sound, such as a rapid or gentle clanking sound.
- During engine start or stop, low-speed driving or idling of the vehicle, the sound of the drive motor working may be heard.
- During rapid acceleration, the sound of the engine working may be heard.
- When stepping on the brake pedal or releasing the accelerator pedal, the sound caused by regenerative braking may be heard.

- When the engine starts or stops, vibration may be felt.

### Maintenance, repair, recycling, and scrapping

For matters related to maintenance, repair, recycling, and scrapping, it is recommended to contact a GAC Motor authorized shop. Please do not scrap the vehicle.

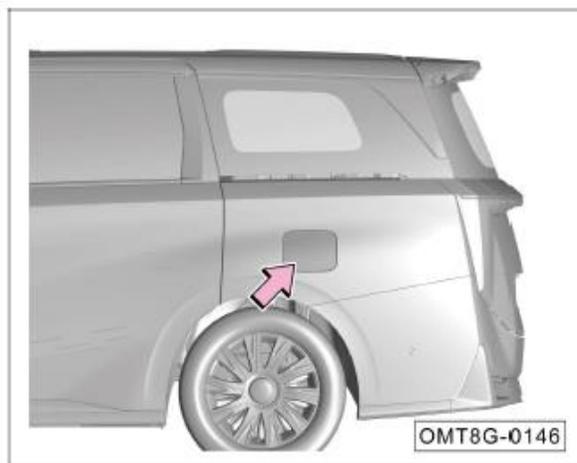
### Pedestrian warning sound system

- When the vehicle is running purely on electric power, a warning sound will be emitted to alert nearby personnel that the vehicle is approaching. When the speed exceeds about 25 km/h, the sound will stop.
- In addition, due to the installation of the pedestrian warning sound system at the front of the vehicle, it may be difficult to hear the sound behind the vehicle.
- If the pedestrian warning sound system malfunctions, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop to inspect the vehicle.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.1.3 Charging guide

#### Charging inlet position



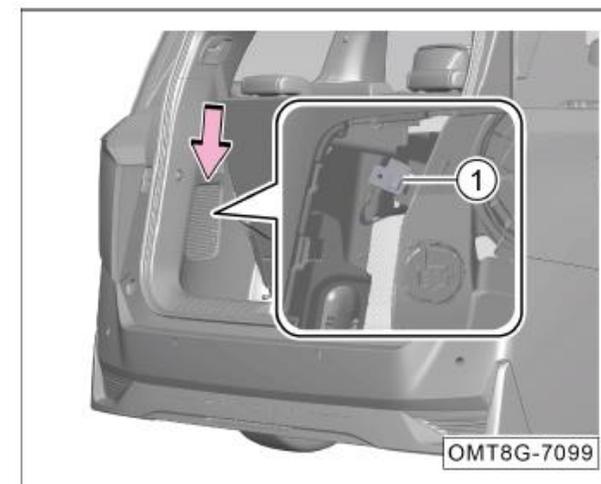
- The charging inlet is located on the left side of the rear of the vehicle.

#### Opening of charging inlet cap plate



- Press and hold the charging inlet cap plate button  on the right side of the instrument panel to open the charging inlet cap plate.

#### Emergency opening of charging inlet cap plate



When the charging inlet cap plate cannot be opened by pressing the buttons inside the car, manual emergency unlocking can be used to open the charging inlet cap plate.

1. Open the liftgate, pry open the left side cover of the trunk at the -Arrow- position, and remove the manual unlock cable ① of the electronic lock.
2. Pull the electronic lock outward to manually unlock the cable ① and open the charging inlet cap plate.

### Charging steps

#### iNOTE

After the charger and charging inlet are combined, the protection level is IP55, which has good waterproof and dustproof performance. However, for heavy rain and rainstorms, for safety reasons, it is recommended to avoid outdoor charging in bad weather as far as possible.

### AC slow charging



1. Press and hold the charging inlet cap plate button  on the right side of the instrument panel to open the charging inlet cap plate.
2. Remove the inner cap of the charging inlet.

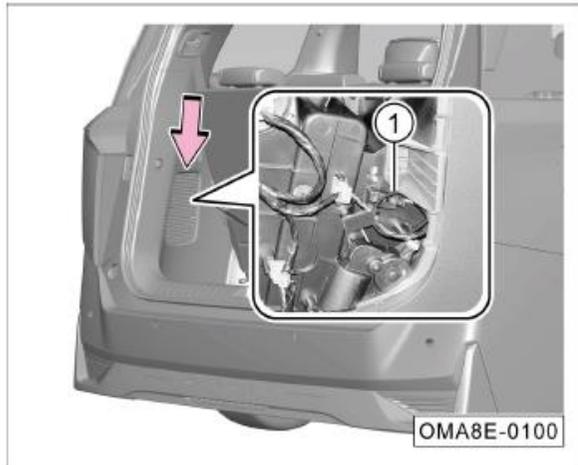
3. Insert the AC charger parallel to the AC charging inlet on the right side (do not press the unlock button on the charger during insertion). When hearing a "click" sound, it indicates that the charger is connected in place. Follow the instructions for using the charging device to start the charging device and charge the vehicle.
4. The charging connection indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module comes up, and at the same time, the instrument cluster module displays the charging interface and related charging parameters, indicating that the vehicle has successfully started charging.
5. After waiting for the charging to be completed or actively ending the charging, unlock the AC charging inlet electronic lock by pressing the unlocking button of the remote key or the charging inlet cap plate button  on the left side of the instrument panel.
6. Press the unlocking button on the charger, unplug the AC slow charging charger, plug in the inner cap of the charging inlet, and manually close the charging inlet cap plate.

#### iNOTE

- After unlocking the electronic lock of the AC charging inlet through the above method, please remove the charger within 150 seconds, otherwise the electronic lock of the charging inlet will be locked again.
- When using AC slow charging, if the passenger compartment cooling or heating function is turned on, the overall charging time will be extended, and the estimated remaining charging time of the system will be shorter.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

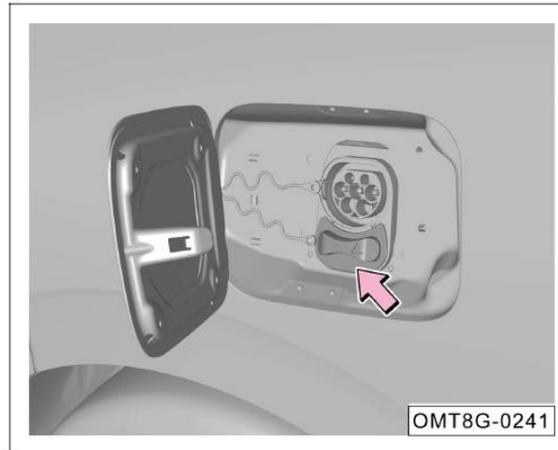
### Emergency unlocking of the AC slow charging charger



When the AC slow charging charger cannot be unlocked, it can be manually unlocked in an emergency.

1. Open the liftgate and pry open the left side cover of the trunk at the -Arrow- position.
2. Pull the "slow-charging gun emergency unlock" cable ① to unlock the AC slow charging charger.

### DC fast charging



1. Press and hold the charging inlet cap plate button  on the right side of the instrument panel to open the charging inlet cap plate.
2. Remove the inner cap of the charging inlet.
3. Connect the DC fast charging charger.
4. Scan the QR code or swipe the card to start charging.
5. Wait for the charging to be completed or actively end the charging.
6. Pull out the DC fast charging charger, insert it into the inner cap of the charging inlet, and manually close the charging inlet cap plate.

### Charging indicator lamp

The meanings of the various states of the charging indicator lamp are as follows:

State	Meaning
The turn signal lamp comes on	The charger is successfully connected
The turn signal lamp flashes slowly	The charging starts

### Automatically unlocking the charger

The automatic unlocking function can be set to be turned on or off through the AV system. When the automatic unlocking function is turned on, the electronic lock of the charger will automatically unlock after the vehicle is fully charged. Press the unlocking button on the charger and the charger can be directly removed.

### 4.1.4 External discharging function

#### Introduction to external discharging function

The external discharging function allows energy from the vehicle's power battery to be converted into AC 220V and delivered to domestic appliances via the V2L external discharging power strip provided by the manufacturer. This power strip connects to the vehicle's AC charging inlet.

#### External discharging operation



1. The vehicle's power is in the "ON" or "READY" gear.
2. Press and hold the charging inlet cap plate button on the right side of the instrument panel to open the charging inlet cap plate.

3. Remove the inner cap of the charging inlet.
4. Connect the discharger.
5. Within 150 seconds, activate the external discharging function through the AV system soft key.
6. Domestic appliances can be connected through the V2L patch panel.
7. After disabling the external discharging function, unlock the AC slow charging charger electronic lock by pressing the unlocking button of the remote key or the charging inlet cap plate button on the right side of the instrument panel.
8. Pull out the discharger in a timely manner, insert it into the inner cap of the charging inlet, and manually close the charging inlet cap plate.

#### NOTE

The external discharging function needs to be turned on or off through the AV system settings.

#### External discharging settings

- Starting of the engine: After enabling this function, when the battery level is lower than the set discharging value, the engine starts to generate electricity; if this function is turned off, the discharging will end when the battery level is below the set discharging value.
- Discharging cut-off battery level: The discharging value can be set through the AV system settings. When the battery level is lower than the set discharging value, the discharging will end.

#### Discharge indicator lamp

The meanings of the various states of the charging indicator lamp are as follows:

State	Meaning
The turn signal lamp comes on	The discharger is successfully connected
The turn signal lamp flashes slowly	The discharging starts

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### WARNING

- Ensure that the electrical device is not scratched, rusted and cracked, or has no abnormal conditions such as surface damage to the charging inlet, cable and plugs.
- If the surface of the socket is damaged, rusted and cracked, or has poor contact, it is strictly prohibited to discharge to the outside.
- When the plug is too dirty or damp, discharging is strictly prohibited. Use a dry and clean cloth to wipe the plug to ensure that it is dry and clean before discharging.
- Please choose to conduct V2L discharging in a relatively safe environment (such as avoiding environments with liquids, fire sources, etc.).
- Do not modify or disassemble the discharging cable and charging inlet, otherwise it may lead to discharging failure or even a fire.
- It must be discharged at rated power.

### WARNING

- Before discharging, please ensure that there is no water or debris in the charging inlet, power supply equipment, plug, or discharging cable port; ensure that the metal terminals are not rusted or damaged due to corrosion, otherwise discharging is not allowed. Because abnormal terminal connections may cause short circuits or electric shocks, posing a threat to life safety.
- If an unusual odor or smoke is detected from the vehicle during discharging, please stop discharging immediately.
- Before driving, please ensure that the external discharging cable has been unplugged from the interface.
- It is strictly prohibited to discharge when the discharging cable is worn, the insulation layer is broken, the cable becomes soft, or there is any other damage.

### WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to discharge when the vehicle charging inlet is disconnected, broken, or exposed to any damage.
- It is strictly prohibited for minors to touch or use the device, and minors are strictly prohibited from approaching it during use.
- Do not discharge when the maximum ambient temperature exceeds 50°C.
- Do not drop external discharging cables to avoid damage; it is strictly prohibited to drag cables directly to avoid damage; please handle the charger with care and store it in a cool place.
- When the vehicle's battery level is low, there is a possibility that the external discharging function cannot be turned on or stopped. Please turn on the "Start the engine" switch in the AV system.
- After the discharging is completed, when disconnecting the charging connection device, make sure your hands are dry, otherwise it may cause electric shock and personal injury.

### ⚠ WARNING

When inserting or removing the charger from the charging dock, hold the charger with one hand and press the mechanical buckle with the other hand to insert or remove the charger parallel to the charging dock, avoiding shaking during the insertion and removal process. If the charger is inserted and removed from the charging dock at an angle or violently shaken, there is a risk of the charging dock pole breaking.

### ⚠ WARNING

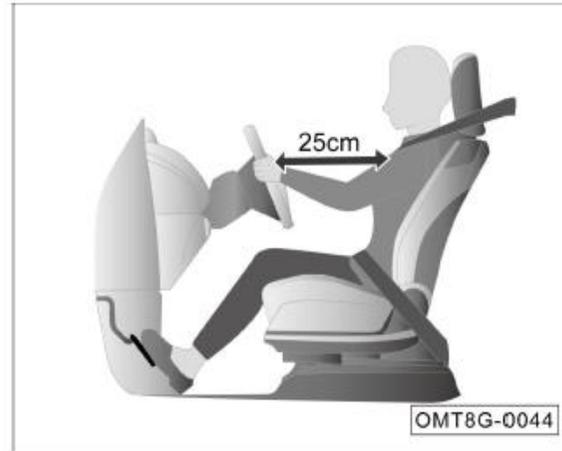
To avoid personal injury, the following precautions should be taken when the vehicle is discharged:

- Do not touch the discharging cable and power strip.
- During thunderstorms, it is prohibited to conduct external discharging. Rainwater or a humid environment may cause electric leakage of the device, and thunders may damage the device.

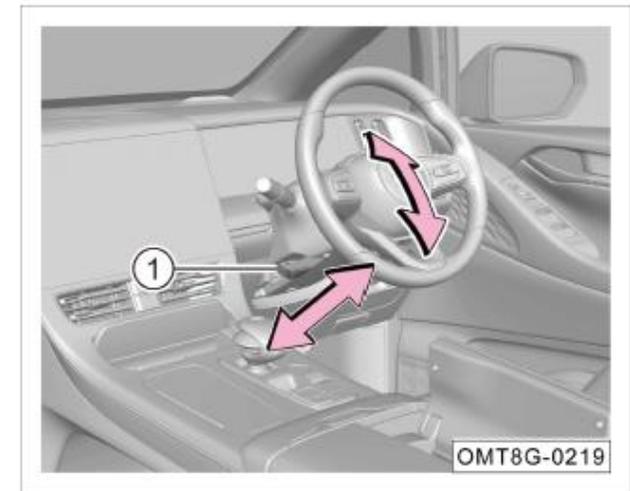
## 4.2 Cab

### 4.2.1 Steering wheel

#### Adjustment of the steering wheel position



- Adjust the driver's seat until the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is not less than 25 cm.



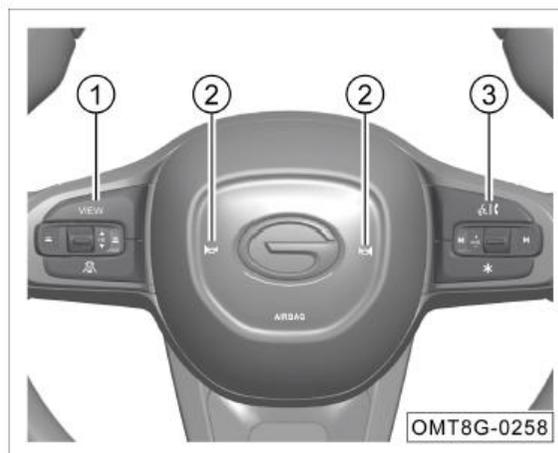
- Push down the locking handle ① to unlock the steering wheel.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the appropriate position up, down, front, and back as required, so that you can see the instrument cluster module and all indicator lamps.
- Pull up the locking handle ① to lock the steering wheel and check that it is firmly locked.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### ⚠WARNING

- During driving, the driver's hands should always grasp the outer ring of the steering wheel (9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions).
- After adjustment, the steering wheel must be locked to prevent shifting while the vehicle is running.
- Only when the vehicle is stopped can the steering wheel be adjusted to avoid traffic accidents.
- To ensure safety, the steering wheel should face your chest, otherwise the airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

### Buttons on steering wheel



#### ① Left side buttons:

- Control buttons of the instrument cluster display:
  - Driving information operation
  - Instrument theme switching
  - Alarming information operation

- Cruise control buttons:
  - Adaptive cruise control button
  - ICA button

② Horn button: Press the  button to sound the horn; release the button to stop sounding the horn.

### ⚠WARNING

**Do not press and hold the  button for a long time, otherwise the horn is highly prone to be damaged.**

#### ③ Right side buttons:

- AV system control button
- Voice/phone control button
- Custom button

### ⚠NOTE

The custom button can be set through the AV system.

### Steering wheel heating\*

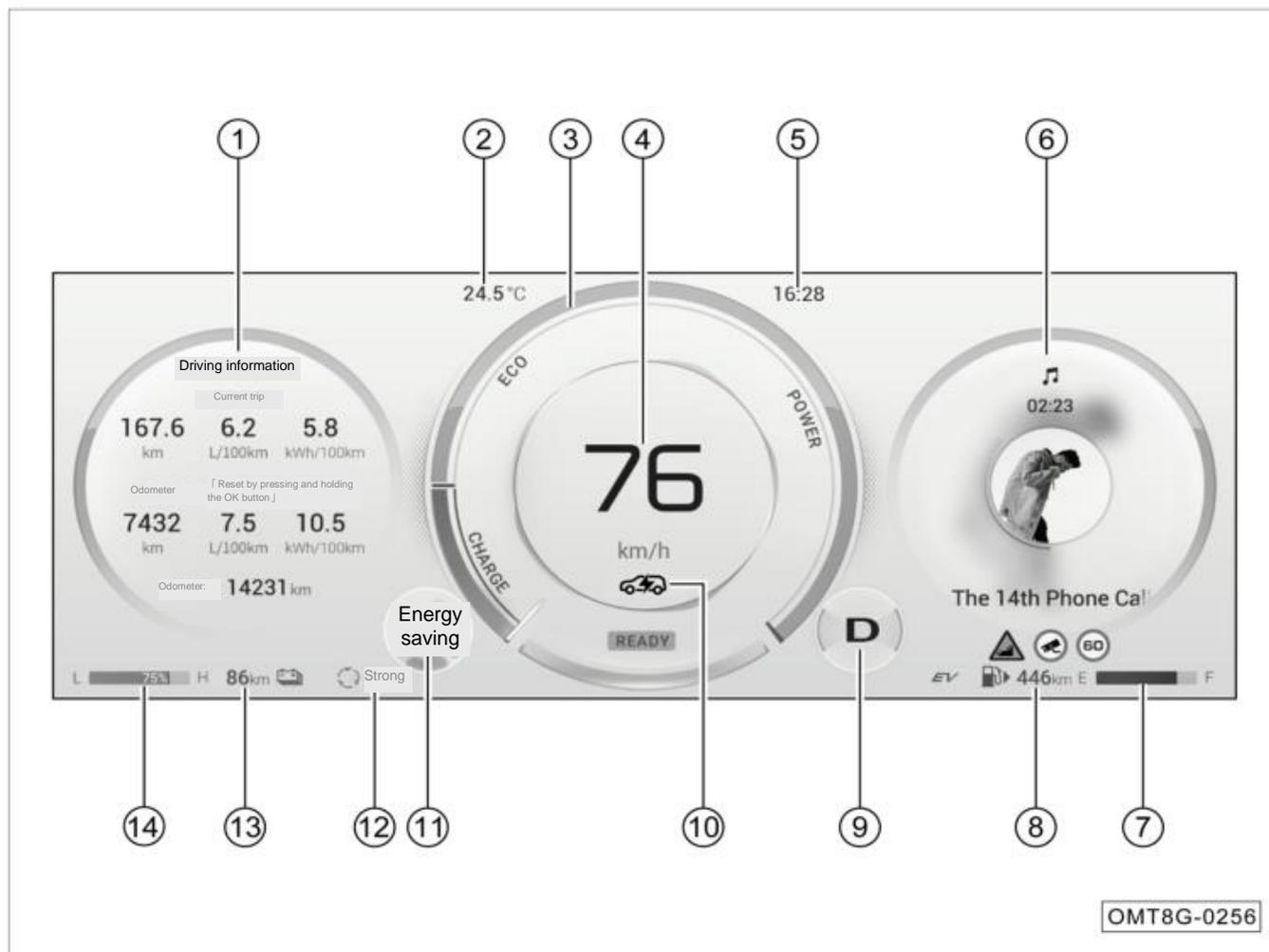
- Method 1: Switch the vehicle power to the "ON" gear, the steering wheel heating function can be turned on or off through the AV system settings interface.
- Method 2: Switch the vehicle power to the "ON" gear,  enter the driving control panel interface through the bottom toolbar of the AV system, and turn on or off the steering wheel heating function.

#### CAUTION

If you feel no temperature change in the seat for a long time or feel hot after turning on the steering wheel heating function, please immediately turn off the function and go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.2.2 Instrument cluster module/ICM



### 12.3-inch ICM

- ① Display on the left side of the instrument
- ② Display of the outside temperature
- ③ Power meter
- ④ Speedometer
- ⑤ Time display
- ⑥ Display on the right side of the instrument
- ⑦ Fuel gauge
- ⑧ Fuel mileage
- ⑨ Gear display
- ⑩ Energy models
- ⑪ Driving mode
- ⑫ Energy recovery level
- ⑬ Pure electric mileage
- ⑭ Charge gauge

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.2.3 Indicator lamps

Serial No.	Icon	Designation	Color	Function
1		Battery charging system warning lamp	Red	If the red warning lamp comes on, it indicates that the battery charging system is faulty.
2		Engine fault indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the engine system is faulty.
3		Low oil pressure warning lamp	Red	If the red warning lamp comes on, it indicates that the engine oil pressure is low.
4		Emission fault indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the emission system is faulty.
5		Left turn signal indicator lamp and hazard warning lamp	Green	When the left turn signal indicator lamp flashes alone, it indicates that the left turn signal lamp of the vehicle is on. When the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed down, the left/right turn signal indicator lamps and all turn signal lamps will flash simultaneously.
6		LDW status indicator lamp	White	If the white indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the LDW is activated
			Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the LDW system is faulty. In that case, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.
			Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the LDA system is working normally or intervenes with the steering wheel for deviation correction.
7		Forward collision warning (FCW) status indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp flashes, it indicates that the FCW system is being triggered and activated.
			Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the FCW system is faulty. In that case, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.
8		BSD status indicator lamp	Green	If the green indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the BSD system is activated.
			Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the BSD system is faulty.
9		High engine coolant temperature indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the engine coolant temperature is too high.
10		Supplemental restraint system (SRS) indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the SRS is faulty.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

Serial No.	Icon	Designation	Color	Function
11		Low fuel level indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp flashes, it indicates that the fuel level of the fuel tank is low.
				If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the fuel pump level sensor circuit is faulty.
12		ACC indicator lamp (no vehicle ahead)	Gray	If the grey indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ACC system is in the ready state, and there is no target vehicle ahead.
			Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ACC system is working, and there is no target vehicle ahead.
13		Vehicle indicator lamps ahead of adaptive cruise control	Gray	If the grey indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ACC system is in the ready state, and there is a target vehicle ahead.
			Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ACC system is working, and there is a target vehicle ahead.
14		ACC fault indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ACC system is faulty.
15		Right turn signal indicator lamp and hazard warning lamp	Green	If the right turn signal indicator lamp flashes alone, it indicates that the right turn signal lamp of the vehicle is on. When the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed down, the left/right turn signal indicator lamps and all turn signal lamps will flash simultaneously.
16		EPB status indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the EPB is applied. If the red indicator lamp flashes, it indicates that the EPB is engaged partially or faulty.
			Green	If the green indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the AUTO HOLD is activated.
17		EPB fault indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the EPB system is faulty.
				If the yellow indicator lamp flashes, it indicates that the EPB system is in the service mode.
18		Parking brake and brake system indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low, or the electronic brake force distribution (EBD) system or the brake assist system is faulty.
19		Electronic stability program (ESP) indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ESP is faulty.
				If the yellow indicator lamp flashes, it indicates that the ESP is working.
20		ESP OFF indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ESP is off.
21		Anti-lock brake system (ABS) indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the anti-lock brake system (ABS) is faulty.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

Serial No.	Icon	Designation	Color	Function
22		Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is faulty.
23		Electric Power Steering (EPS) indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the EPS is faulty.
24		Front seat belt indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened or the system is faulty.
25		Driver's seat belt indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the driver's seat belt is not fastened or the seat belt system is faulty.
26		High beam indicator lamp	Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the high beam is on.
27		Position lamp indicator lamp	Green	If the green indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the position lamp, instrument panel lamp, license plate lamp, etc. are on.
28		Rear fog lamp indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the rear fog lamp is on.
29		Intelligent headlight control indicator lamp	White	If the white indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the IHC is in the standby state.
			Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the intelligent headlight control is activated.
30		Hill descent control (HDC) indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the HDC is activated.
31		Hands-on steering wheel indicator lamp	Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the hands on the steering wheel are detected by ICA.
			Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the hands off the steering wheel are detected by ICA.
32		Lateral control status indicator lamp	Gray	If the grey indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ICA lateral control is in the standby state.
			Blue	If the blue indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ICA lateral control is activated.
			Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the ICA lateral control is faulty.
33		Door ajar indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the engine hood, any door or liftgate is not closed
34		Second row seat belt reminder light	White	If the white indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the corresponding rear seat belt is fastened.
			Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the corresponding rear seat belt is not fastened or the seat belt system is faulty.
35	READY	READY indicator lamp	Green	If the green indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the READY status and can be driven normally.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

Serial No.	Icon	Designation	Color	Function
36		EV pure power mode indicator lamp	Green	If the green indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the driving status of pure power mode.
37		System fault indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the hybrid powertrain is faulty.
38		Power battery low indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the power battery level is too low.
39		Dropout power driving indicator lamp	Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the driving of dropout power.
40		Charging Reservation indicator lamp	Green	If the green indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the charging reservation is set successfully.
			White	If the white indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the charging reservation has been started.
41		Charger connection indicator lamp	Red	If the red indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the charger has been connected.
42		Gasoline particulate filter (GPF) indicator lamp	White	If the white indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the accumulated carbon of the gasoline particulate filter (GPF) exceeds a certain limit, and it is necessary to run at a high speed for more than 40 minutes to clean the carbon.
			Yellow	If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that the accumulated carbon of the GPF is excessive, and it is necessary to run at a high speed for more than 40 minutes to clean the carbon.

Note: The vehicle will perform a self-test when starting, and some instrument warning lamps or indicator lamps will briefly come on and then automatically turn off. If there are still warning lamps or indicator lamps comes on the instrument panel after starting, it indicates that the relevant system or function is in a certain working state or faulty. Please read and understand the meaning of all the indicator lamps and warning lamps in detail. If a fault occurs, please visit or contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

### 4.3 Vehicle locking and unlocking

#### 4.3.1 Remote control key

The vehicle is equipped with intelligent remote control keys (including the emergency mechanical key) and the corresponding key barcodes. If the key needs to be re-customized, please inform the GAC Motor authorized shop of the key barcode. If the key barcode is missing, please inform the GAC Motor authorized shop of the vehicle VIN code.

#### NOTE

After the vehicle is started, do not place the remote control key on the instrument panel under the front windshield glass, otherwise the prompt “No key detected” may appear.

#### Poor signal strength of remote control key

The operation of the remote control key button may be interfered or unstable in the following cases:

- Nearby equipment is emitting strong radio waves.

- The intelligent remote control key is carried together with telecommunication equipment, laptop, mobile phone, or wireless signal transmitter.
- The remote control key is put together with magnetic cards (such as bank card and bus card).
- Metal objects are in contact with or cover the remote control key.

#### CAUTION

The remote control key contains an electronic circuit that can trigger the engine immobilizer system. If the circuit is damaged, the vehicle may not be started. Therefore:

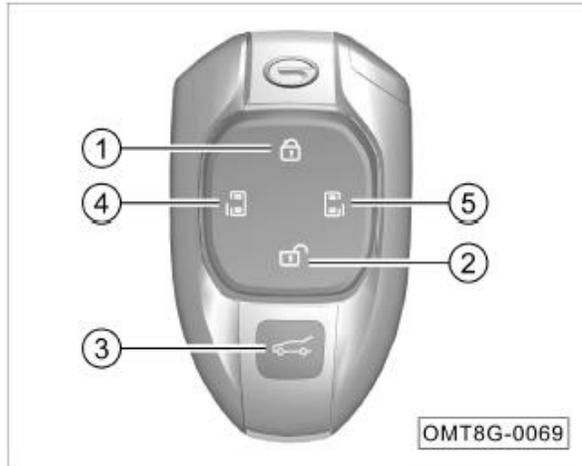
- Avoid placing the remote control key in direct sunlight or in a high-temperature or humid place.
- Avoid dropping the remote control key from a high place or crushing it by heavy objects.
- Avoid exposing the remote control key to any liquid. If the key gets wet accidentally, dry it immediately.

#### NOTE

- The buttons of the remote control key do not work when the vehicle power is set to “ACC” or “ON” gear.
- If the unlocking or locking function of the remote control key is deactivated, you can try to press the buttons on the remote control key 3 times continuously to activate the function.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Button operations



- ① : Locking button
- ② : Unlocking button
- ③ : Liftgate unlocking button
- ④ : Motorized left sliding door opening/closing button
- ⑤ : Motorized right sliding door opening/closing button

#### ① Locking button

- If the button is pressed once within the effective range, all doors will be locked; press and hold the button, and the four door windows, sunroof and electric sunshade will automatically close. During the automatic closing process of the window, sunroof and electric sunshade, if you release the button, the window, sunroof and electric sunshade will stop closing.
- If the button is pressed continuously for 2 times, the vehicle locating function will be activated and the turn signal lamps will flash 3 times quickly.

#### CAUTION

When the window, sunroof and electric sunshade are closed remotely, no body parts (such as head, hands, etc.) should be within the closing trajectory of the window, sunroof and electric sunshade, otherwise, there is a risk of pinching.

#### iNOTE

- When the automatic window closing function is activated, press the button once, and all doors will be locked, and the windows and sunroof will automatically close.
- The automatic window closing function can be set to be turned on or off through the AV system.
- When the doors are locked, the turn signal lamps will flash once and the horn will sound once. The horn sound can be set to be turned on or off through the AV system.

### ② Unlocking button

- If the button is pressed once within the effective range, all doors will be unlocked; press and hold the button, and the four door windows will automatically open and the sunroof will automatically tilt. During the opening process of the window, if you release the button, the window will stop opening.

#### NOTE

When the doors are unlocked, the turn signal lamps will flash twice and the horn will sound twice. The horn sound can be set to be turned on or off through the AV system.

#### CAUTION

If the door is not opened within a period of time after being unlocked by pressing the  button, the system will lock the door again.

### ③ Button operations

If the button is pressed twice within the effective range, the liftgate will automatically open to the set position. During the opening process, if the button is pressed again, the liftgate will stop at the current position.

#### ④ Button operations

- Within the effective range, when the sliding door is fully closed, press and hold the  button to electrically open the left sideslip door, and a warning sound will sound from the speaker alternately.
- Within the effective range, when the sliding door is fully opened, press and hold the  button to electrically close the left sideslip door, and a warning sound will sound from the speaker alternately.
- During the process of opening or closing the electric sliding door, press the  button to stop the sliding door.

#### NOTE

- When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, the remote key can be used to remotely open or close the electric sliding door.
- When the vehicle is locked and the left sideslip door is opened by pressing and holding the button , the horn will also sound twice.

#### NOTE

When the charging inlet cap plate is opened, the electric function of the left sideslip door fails; it can be manually opened or closed, but there are limitations when manually opening the left sideslip door. There will be a mechanical stopper that prevents the sliding door from fully opening to avoid interference with the charging inlet cap plate. After the charging inlet cap plate is closed, the electric function of the left sideslip door is restored.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### ⑤ Button operations

- Within the effective range, when the sliding door is fully closed, press and hold the  button to electrically open the right sideslip door, and a warning sound will sound from the speaker alternately.
- Within the effective range, when the sliding door is fully opened, press and hold the  button to electrically close the right sideslip door, and a warning sound will sound from the speaker alternately.
- During the process of opening or closing the electric sliding door, press the  button to stop the sliding door.

### NOTE

- When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, the remote key can be used to remotely open or close the electric sliding door.
- When the vehicle is locked and the right sideslip door is opened by pressing and holding the  button, the horn will also sound twice.
- When the fuel tank flap is opened, the electric function of the right sideslip door fails; it can be manually opened or closed, but there are limitations when manually opening the right sideslip door. There will be a mechanical stopper that prevents the sliding door from fully opening to avoid interference with the fuel tank flap. After the fuel tank flap is closed, the electric function of the right sideslip door is restored.

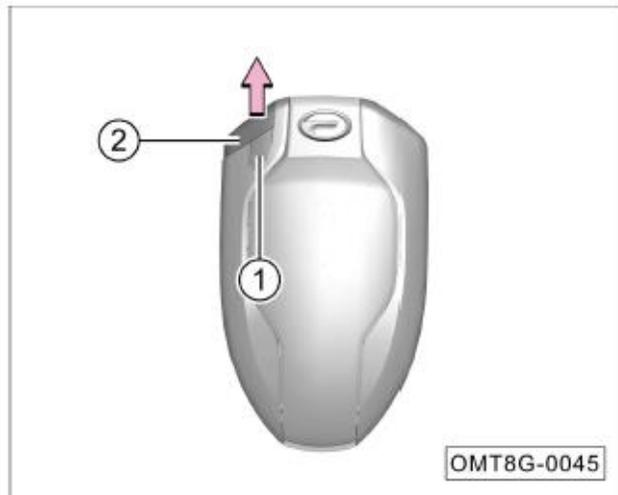
### **Battery replacement**

Each time you press the buttons on the remote control key, the indicator lamp of the key will flash once. If the indicator lamp fails to flash, or you need to press the buttons several times to lock or unlock the doors, the battery may be exhausted or about to run out. It is recommended to go to GAC Motor authorized shop for the battery replacement.

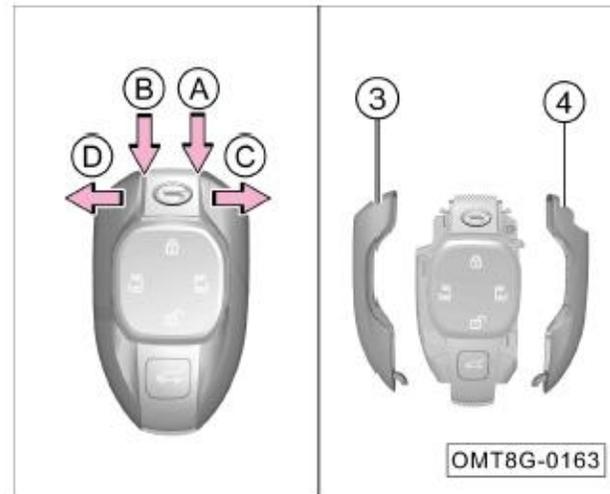
### CAUTION

- Be sure to replace the battery with a new one of the same model.
- An inappropriate battery may damage the remote control key.
- Always comply with environmental regulations to dispose of the exhausted battery.

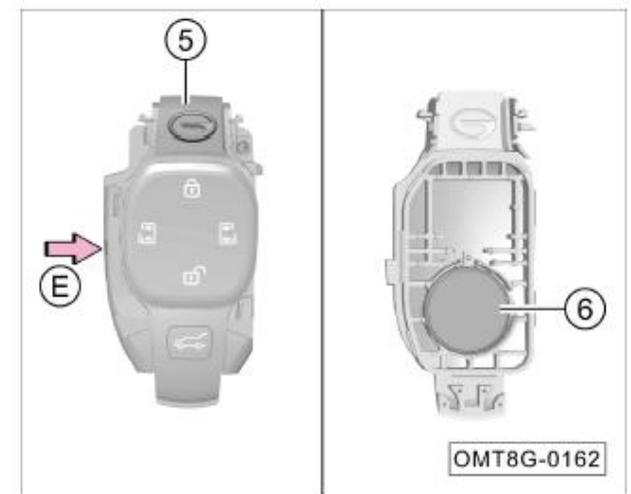
### Battery replacement steps



1. Press the lock button ① and pull out the emergency mechanical key ② in the -Arrow- position.



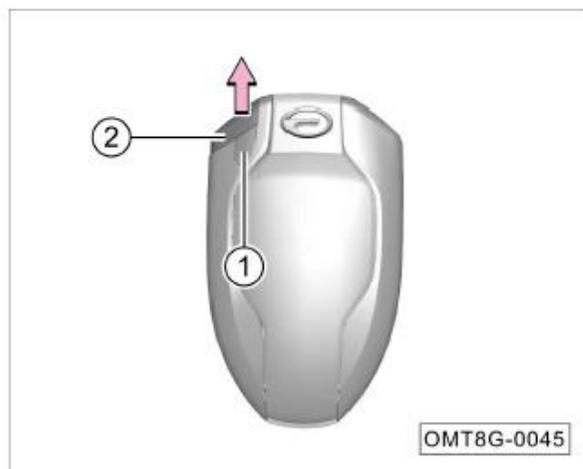
2. Wrap a slotted screwdriver with cloth at positions -Arrow A- and -Arrow B-, and pry open the chroming outer shell of the remote control key in the directions of -Arrow C- and -Arrow D-.
3. Remove the chroming outer shells ③ and ④ of the remote control key.



4. Remove the transparent trim cover plate ⑤.
5. Wrap a slotted screwdriver with cloth and pry open the remote control key outer shell at the -Arrow E- position.
6. Take out the remote control key battery ⑥.
7. Assemble the remote control key in the reverse steps mentioned above.

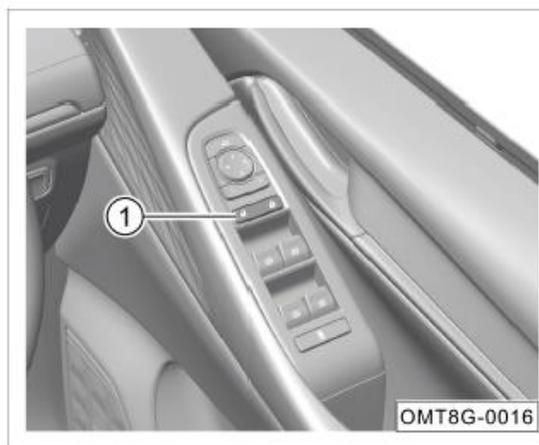
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.3.2 Emergency mechanical key Emergency mechanical key



- Press the lock button ① and pull out the emergency mechanical key ② in the direction of -Arrow A-.

### 4.3.3 Door lock system Central locking button

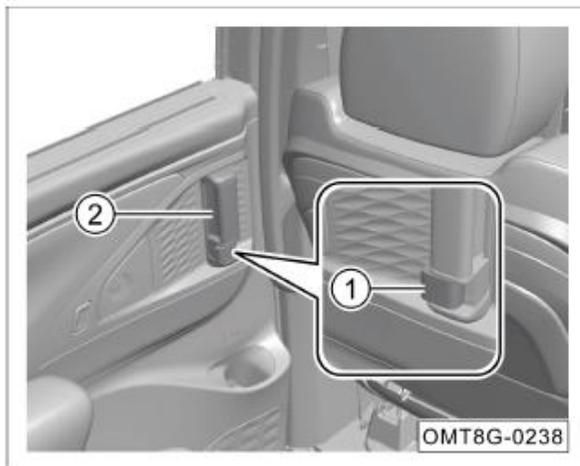


- The central locking button ① can lock and unlock the doors inside the vehicle.

### Door lock and inside handle



- If the vehicle is locked, pull the driver's side door inside handle once to unlock all four doors. Pull the inner handles of the other side doors once to unlock only the corresponding side doors. Pulling again will unlock all four doors.
- If the vehicle is unlocked, pull any door handle once to directly open the door.



Each sliding door has a door lock latch ① and an inside handle ②.

- When the door lock latch ① is pushed forward, the corresponding door is locked.
- When pushing the door lock latch ① backward, the corresponding door can be unlocked; pull the inside handle ② backward to open the corresponding sliding door.

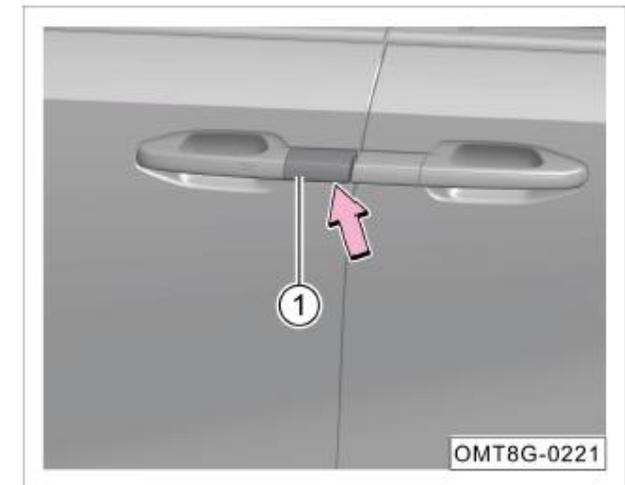
### NOTE

When the child safety lock is activated (=> see Page 61), even if the sliding door lock latch is unlocked, the inside handle cannot open the sliding door. In this case, the sliding door shall be opened from outside. Do not pull the inside handle with force to avoid damage.

### CAUTION

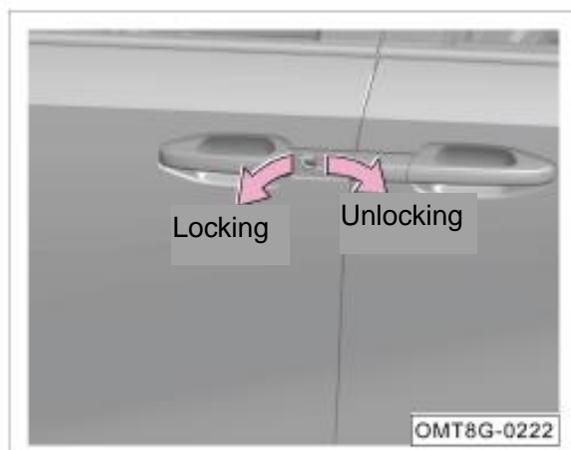
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inner handle during driving to avoid accidents due to opening of door.
- When opening or closing the door, check the surroundings of the vehicle, for example, check whether the vehicle is on a slope, check whether there is enough space to open the door or check whether there is strong wind. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly for any unpredictable movement.

### Door lock hole



1. Take out the emergency mechanical key. => See page 58
2. Insert the mechanical key into the trim cover of the mechanical lock at the front left door. Pop up the trim cover ① gently upwards, pull up the door handle and take off the trim cover ①.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment



3. Insert the emergency mechanical key into the front left door lock hole.
4. Turn the key clockwise to unlock only the front left door (when the vehicle has no power) / to unlock both the front left and front right doors (when the vehicle has power).
5. Turn the key counterclockwise to lock only the front left door (when the vehicle has no power) / to lock all doors (when the vehicle has power).

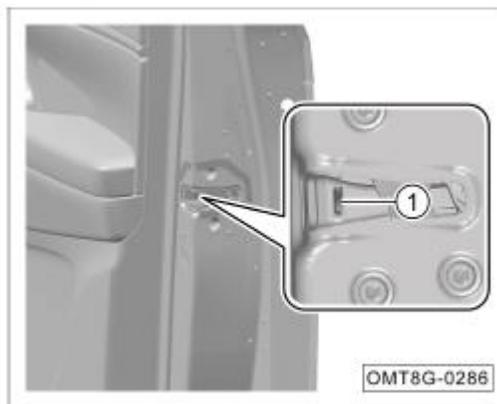
### Emergency locking of the door

If the remote control key cannot be used to lock the door due to the depletion of the low-voltage battery, the door can be locked in an emergency.

Locking of the front passenger's side door

Refer to the door lock hole section => See [page 59](#)

Locking of the driver's side door



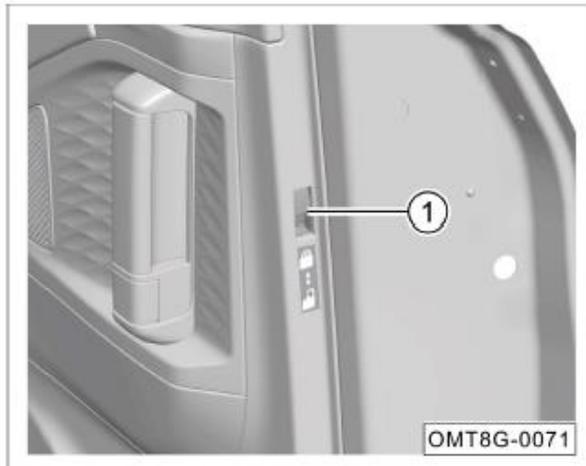
1. Take out the emergency mechanical key
2. Open the door, and insert the emergency mechanical key into the locking switch ①.
3. Pull out the emergency mechanical key and close the door to lock the driver's side door in an emergency.

Locking of the rear sliding door



- Push the door lock latch forward inside the vehicle to emergency lock the corresponding side rear sliding door.

### Child safety lock



- Activation: Pull the child safety lock switch ① from position  to position  to turn on the child safety lock.
- Deactivation: Pull the child safety lock switch ① from position  to position  to turn off the child safety lock.

#### iNOTE

- Before driving the vehicle, if a child is sitting in the rear seat, it is necessary to confirm that the child lock is in the open state.
- When the child safety lock is activated, the inside handle cannot open the sliding door. At this time, do not pull the inside handle forcefully to avoid damage. The sliding door should be opened from the outside.

#### △WARNING

**When the child safety lock is activated, never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle alone. Once the doors are locked, it is difficult for children to leave the vehicle on their own to protect their own safety in an emergency; and at this time, external rescue personnel are facing difficulties in rescuing due to the vehicle being locked.**

### Auto unlock function

If the vehicle stops with the doors locked and the vehicle power switch set to "OFF" gear, the four doors will be automatically unlocked.

#### iNOTE

The automatic unlocking function can be set to be on or off through the AV system.

### Speed sensing door lock

If this function is activated with all doors closed, the vehicle will be automatically locked at certain vehicle speed or after certain driving time.

#### iNOTE

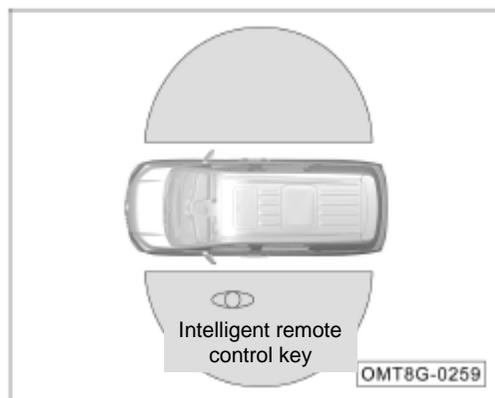
The speed sensing door lock function can be set to be on or off through the AV system.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Collision unlock function

With doors locked and the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, when the system detects that the vehicle has suffered a severe collision, all doors will be automatically unlocked. Depending on the impact force and impact range, the system may not work under extreme conditions.

Intelligent active unlock



- When the intelligent active unlocking function is activated and the intelligent remote control key is brought close to the vehicle, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked.

### iNOTE

- The intelligent active unlocking function can be set to be on or off through the AV system.
- After the intelligent active unlocking is successful, the turn signal lamps will flash twice and the horn will sound twice.
- When the vehicle has been not in use for more than 7 days, the intelligent active unlock function will be automatically deactivated in order to reduce the power consumption of the vehicle. In this case, you need to use the intelligent remote control key or touch the door handle to unlock the doors, and after the vehicle is started, the intelligent active unlock function will be restored.

The intelligent active unlocking function will not work when one of the following conditions occurs: – The vehicle power is not in the "OFF" gear.

- The voltage of the vehicle's low-voltage battery or intelligent remote control key battery is too low.
- The intelligent remote control key is interfered with by electronic products or metal-containing objects.
- The intelligent remote control key is inside the car or tightly attached to the door glass.
- After the vehicle is locked, the intelligent remote control key stays within a certain effective detection distance outside the vehicle for more than a certain period of time (the effective detection distance is related to environmental factors).

### Intelligent active locking

- With the intelligent active locking function activated and the vehicle power in the "OFF" gear, after all doors are closed, if the intelligent remote control key is taken away from the vehicle, the vehicle will be automatically locked. The specific locking distance is related to walking speed and environmental factors.
- If the remote control key is kept close to the vehicle for a period of time, the system will temporarily deactivate the intelligent active locking function for the purpose of power saving; the user needs to open and then close one of the doors to re-activate the intelligent active locking function.

#### iNOTE

- The intelligent active locking function can be set to be on or off through the AV system.
- If the intelligent active unlock is successful, the turn signal lamps will flash once and the horn will sound once.
- If the intelligent active locking is activated successfully but the liftgate or the engine hood is not closed, the audible and visual alarms will be triggered to remind you.
- If any door is not closed, the instrument cluster module will prompt you that the corresponding door is not closed.

The intelligent active locking function will not work when one of the following conditions occurs:

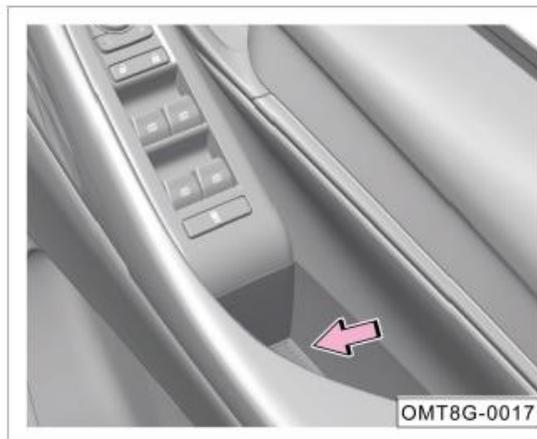
- The vehicle power is not in the "OFF" gear.
- Any door is not closed.
- The voltage of the vehicle's low-voltage battery or intelligent remote control key battery is too low.
- The intelligent remote control key is interfered with by electronic products or metal-containing objects.
- The intelligent remote control key is inside the car or tightly attached to the door glass.
- When closing the door, the intelligent remote control key is too far from the vehicle.
- After closing the door, the intelligent remote control key stays within a certain effective detection distance outside the vehicle for more than a certain period of time (the effective detection distance is related to environmental factors).

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### ⓘ CAUTION

- The automatic window closing function after locking the car can be set to be on through the AV system. When the intelligent active locking function is activated, the windows and sunroof will automatically close.
- Do not leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle alone when using the intelligent active lock function.

### 4.3.4 Door



- To close the door in the vehicle, grab the door armrest and pull it inward.
- To close the door outside, directly push the door inward.

### ⓘ CAUTION

Before opening the door, always pay attention to other vehicles or pedestrians outside the vehicle to avoid accidents caused by collision.

### ⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure all doors are closed before driving, otherwise unclosed doors will open and cause accidents or injuries.**
- **Open or close the doors only when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **Do not put your hands on the edge of the door when closing the door, otherwise there will be a risk of pinching.**

### ℹ NOTE

- If the door is not closed properly, please re-open the door and close it again.
- If the door is not closed properly, there will be a corresponding indication on the instrument cluster display. When the driving speed is higher than 5 km/h, there will be a buzzer prompt.

### Electric opening and closing of the sliding door

When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, the manual or electric opening of the sliding door can be set through the AV system settings. The system defaults to electrically opening the sliding door.

#### iNOTE

- When the sliding door electric function is turned off, the corresponding electric auxiliary suction function will still be retained. When the sliding door is half closed, the electric suction function will still be triggered to ensure that the sliding door is completely closed.
- Please try to avoid switching the electric on/off function of sliding doors on slopes as much as possible to prevent accidents caused by sudden loss of power assistance of the sliding door. If this situation occurs, in order to avoid the danger of sudden sliding of the sliding door, it will enter the speed protection mode, and the sliding door can only be operated in steps until it is fully opened or fully closed.

### Dynamic protection function of electric sliding door

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the sliding door cannot continue to open and can only be closed, and the speaker will emit a short alarm sound.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h and the sliding door is still not fully closed, the speaker will continue to emit an alarm sound to remind you to close the sliding door.

#### Remote control key operation

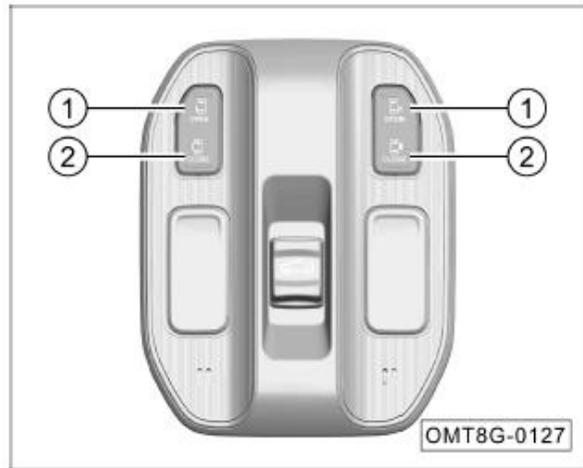
- When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, press and hold the sliding door button on the remote control key to open or close the corresponding sideslip door electrically. => [See page 54](#)

#### iNOTE

- When the fuel tank flap or the charging inlet cap plate is opened, the electric function of the corresponding sideslip door fails; it can be manually opened or closed, but there are limitations when manually opening the corresponding sideslip door. There will be a mechanical stopper that prevents the sliding door from fully opening to avoid interference with the fuel tank flap or the charging inlet cap plate. After the fuel tank flap or the charging inlet cap plate is closed, the electric function of the corresponding sideslip door is restored.
- When the sliding door is in the locked state, the electric opening function of the sliding door will be turned off.
- When the sliding door is opened or closed, or when the anti-pinch is triggered, the speaker will emit an alarm sound.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

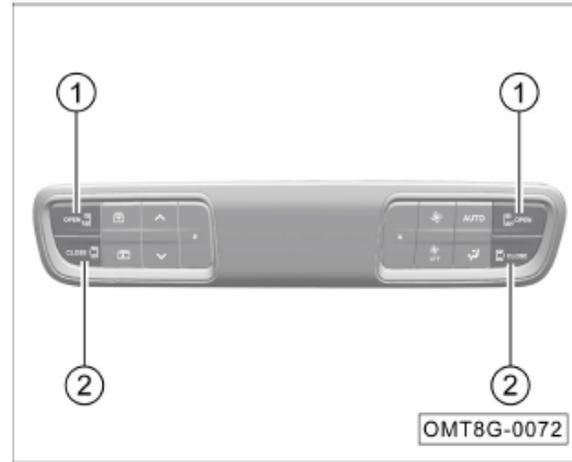
### Front seat dome lamp button operation



When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, press the button on the front dome lamp combination switch to open or close the corresponding side sliding door electrically.

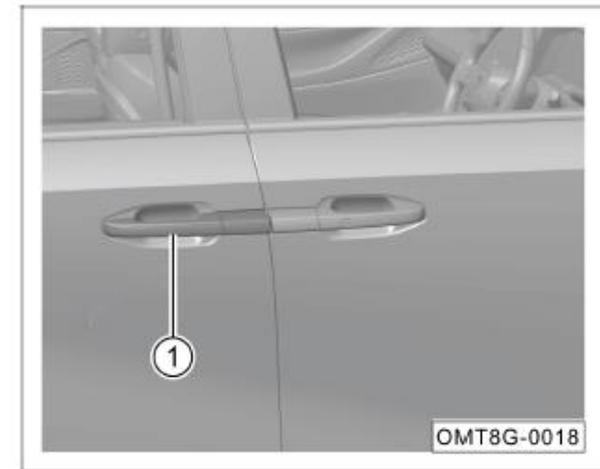
- Press the sliding door button ① to electrically open the corresponding sideslip door.
- Press the sliding door button ② to electrically close the corresponding sideslip door.

### Rear control panel buttons



When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, press the button on the rear center control panel to open or close the corresponding side sliding door electrically.

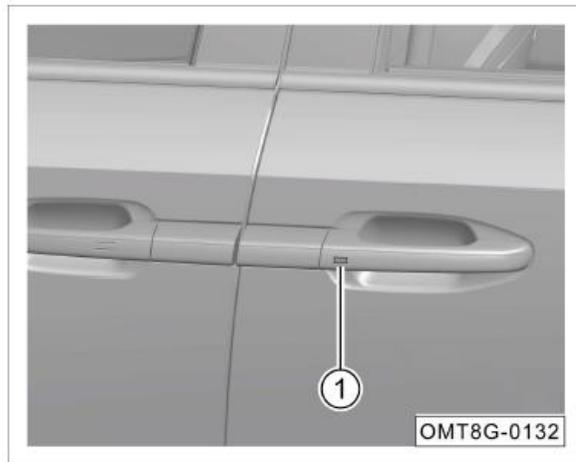
- Press the sliding door button ① to electrically open the corresponding sideslip door.
- Press the sliding door button ② to electrically close the corresponding sideslip door.



### Outer handle operation

When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, pull the outer handle of the sliding door to electrically open or close it.

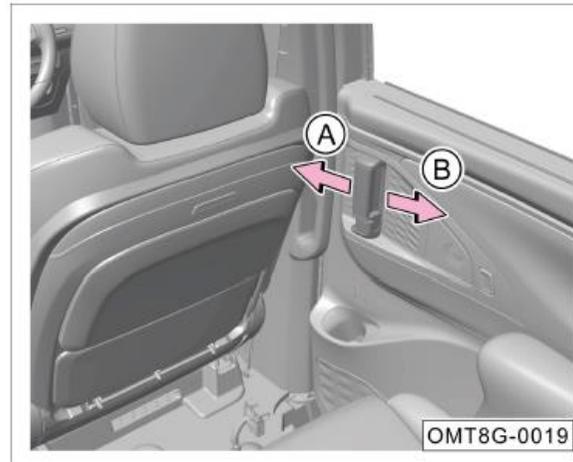
- When the sliding door is fully open, pull the outer handle ① to electrically close the corresponding sideslip door.
- When the sliding door is fully closed and the sliding door is unlocked, pull the outer handle ① to electrically open the corresponding sideslip door.
- During the operation of the sliding door, if the outer handle ① is pulled, the sliding door will stop moving.



### Outer handle button operation

When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on, press the outer handle button of the sliding door to electrically open or close it.

- When the sliding door is fully open, press the button ① to electrically close the corresponding sideslip door.
- When the sliding door is fully closed and the sliding door is unlocked, press the button ① to electrically open the corresponding sideslip door.
- During the operation of the sliding door, if the button ① is pressed, the sliding door will stop moving.



### Inner handle operation

When the electric function of the sliding door is turned on and the door lock latch and the child safety lock are in the unlocked status, pull the inner handle of the sliding door to electrically open or close it.

- Pull the inner handle in the direction of - Arrow A- to electrically close the corresponding side sliding door.
- Pull the inner handle in the direction of - Arrow B- to electrically open the corresponding side sliding door.
- During the operation of the sliding door, the sliding door can be stopped by pulling the handle in the opposite direction.

### Anti-pinch function of the electric sliding door

#### 1. Anti-pinch strip mode

Effective during the electric closing process:

- When it is triggered, the sliding door stops closing and electrically opens to the fully open position.

#### 2. Obstacle detection mode

Effective during the electric opening and closing process:

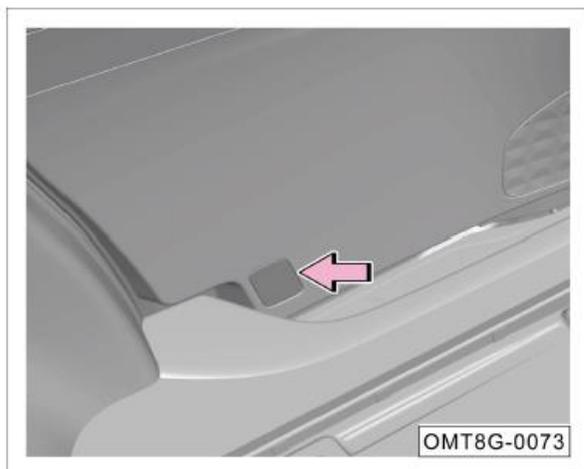
- During the electric closing process, if the sliding door detects an obstacle that prevents it from closing, the anti-pinch function will be triggered, and the sliding door will stop closing and open electrically to the fully open position.
- During the electric opening process, if the sliding door detects an obstacle that prevents it from opening, the anti-pinch function will be triggered and the sliding door will slightly close and stop moving.

#### **i**NOTE

When the anti-pinch function is triggered, the speaker will emit an alarm sound.

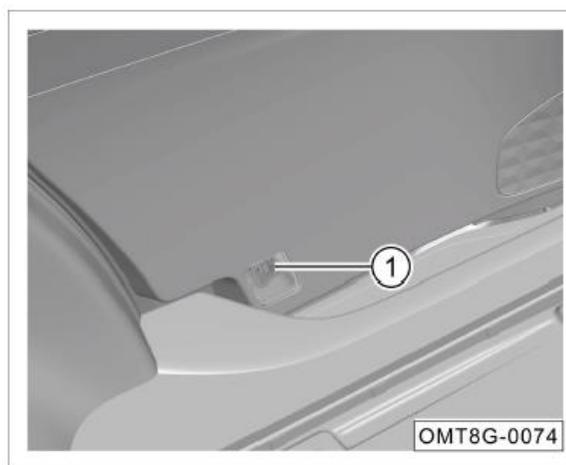
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Emergency opening of the sliding door



When the vehicle battery loses power or the electric door lock malfunctions and the sliding door cannot be opened normally, you can try to open the sliding door from inside the vehicle in an emergency:

1. Pry open the trim panel below the rear of the sliding door at the -Arrow- position.

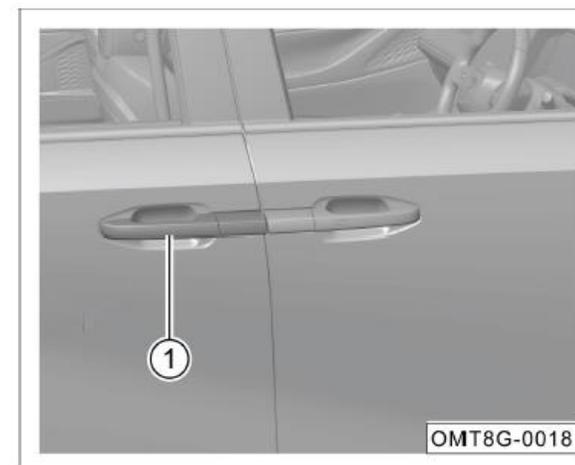


2. Simultaneously pull the emergency cable ① and the inside handle of the sliding door attempting to open the sliding door.

#### **i**NOTE

If the sliding door cannot be opened as an emergency, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

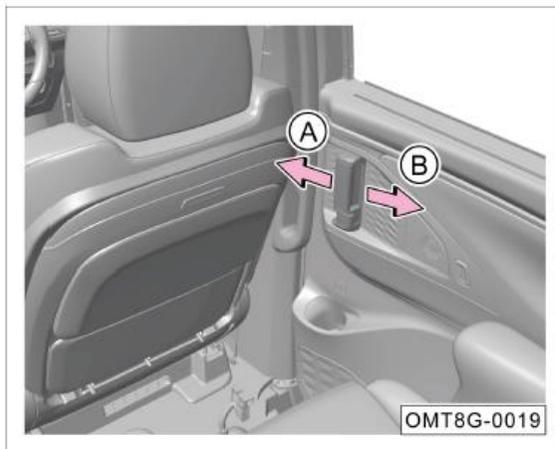
### Manually opening and closing of the sliding door



#### **Outer handle operation**

When the electric function of the sliding door is turned off, the sliding door can be manually opened and closed.

- When the sliding door is fully open, pull the outer handle ① to unlock and pull the sliding door and close the corresponding sideslip door.
- When the sliding door is fully closed and the sliding door is unlocked, pull the outer handle ① to unlock and pull the sliding door and open the corresponding sideslip door.



### Inner handle operation

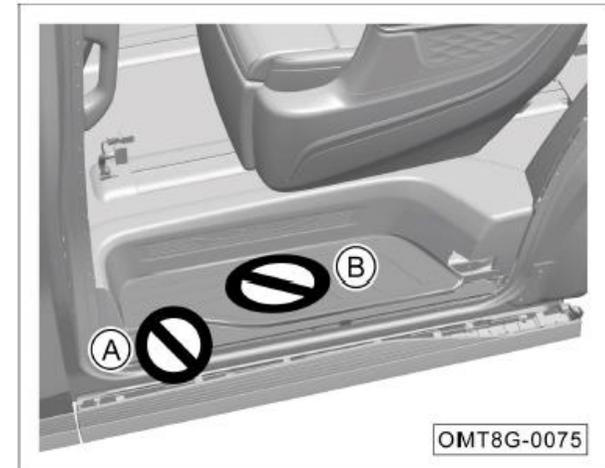
- When the sliding door is fully open, pull the inner handle ① in the direction of -Arrow A- to close the corresponding sideslip door.
- When the sliding door is fully closed and the door lock latch and the child safety lock are unlocked, pull the inner handle ① in the direction of -Arrow B- to open the corresponding sideslip door.

### NOTE

- If the force to close the sliding door is too light, it may not be closed properly and the sliding door needs to be opened and closed again.
- If the sliding door is not closed, the instrument cluster display will indicate the corresponding alarm information; when the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the speaker will continuously emit an alarm sound.

### WARNING

- **Ensure that all sliding doors are closed before driving, otherwise, the unclosed sliding door may suddenly open, causing injury to personnel or accidents.**
- **Open or close the doors only when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **Do not put your hands on the edge of the sliding door when closing the door, otherwise there will be a risk of pinching.**



### CAUTION

- Do not step on the sliding door guide groove area in area A!
- During the opening or closing process of the sliding door, it is prohibited to place objects or passengers' feet on the threshold pedal of the sliding door in area B.

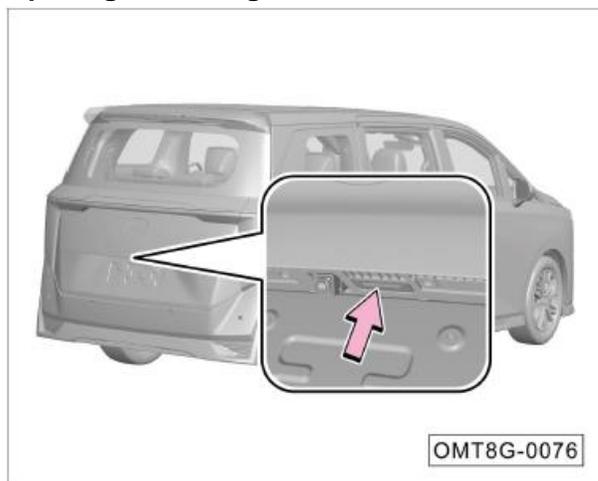
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.3.5 Liftgate

#### Opening of the remote control key

Within the effective range, double-click the button  on the remote control key to electrically open the liftgate.

#### Opening of the liftgate button



Carry the intelligent remote control key with you and, within its effective range, press the button on the outside of the liftgate to unlock it.

**iNOTE**

If the vehicle is unlocked and stationary, you do not need the intelligent remote control key to unlock and open the liftgate. Instead, you may press the liftgate button to open the liftgate.

#### Opening of the instrument panel right button



Press and hold the liftgate button on the instrument panel, and the liftgate will electrically open to the set height. During electric opening, if you press this button again, the liftgate will stop opening.

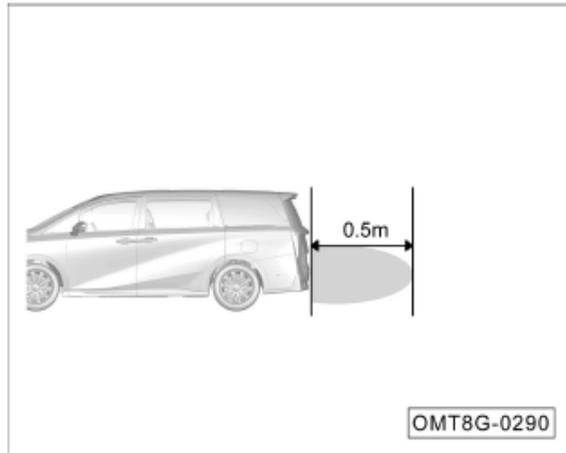
**iNOTE**

- When the electric liftgate function of the vehicle fails, the remote control key button, liftgate button, and the right side button on the instrument panel can only unlock the liftgate. After unlocking, the liftgate needs to be manually opened.
- When the liftgate starts to open electrically from stationary, the turn signal lamp flashes and the buzzer sounds.
- In addition to the above opening methods, the liftgate can also be opened or closed through the AV system.

**CAUTION**

The remote control key button, liftgate button, instrument panel right button, and liftgate side button are all signals without direction. Based on the current status and the previous action direction, confirm the relevant opening and closing direction of the liftgate. If the last time it was paused during the opening process, the next time you press this button, the liftgate will close; if last time it paused during the closing process, the next time you press this button, the liftgate will open.

### Sensing opening of the liftgate\*



- With the vehicle power in the "OFF" gear and the four doors and liftgate closed, when carrying the intelligent remote control key and approaching the liftgate sensing area within a range of about 0.5 m, the horn will sound once and the high-level brake lamp will flash. If you stay still or take a step back, the turn signal lamp will flash and the liftgate will open automatically. If you leave the liftgate sensing area while the high-level brake lamp flashes (4 times), the liftgate will not open.

#### NOTE

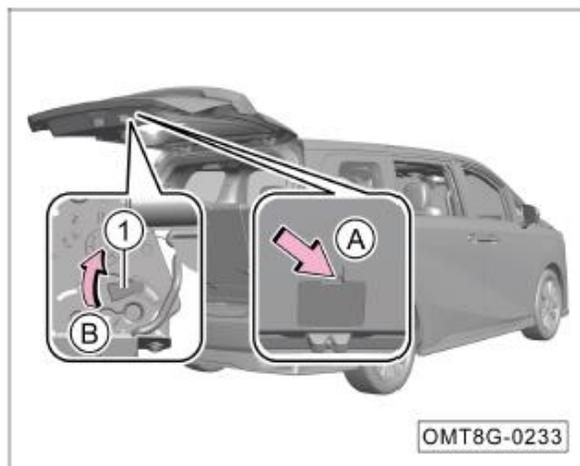
- When the liftgate automatically opens, to remind you, the horn will sound once, the high-mounted stop lamp will flash four times, and the turn signal lamp will start flashing twice.
- If you leave the sensing area of the liftgate during the flashing of the high-mounted stop lamp, the function will be temporarily stopped and the liftgate will not open.
- If you press the intelligent remote control key button  during the flashing of the high-mounted stop lamp, the function will be temporarily stopped and the liftgate will not open. If you want to trigger this function again, you need to open and close one of the door to reactivate the liftgate sensing opening function.
- The liftgate sensing opening reminder can be set through the AV system to "closing", "opening but no honning", or "opening and honning".

#### CAUTION

- It is recommended to turn off this function when cleaning the vehicle.
- Do not leave the remote control key near the liftgate when it is not necessary to open the liftgate.
- Before using the sensing opening of the liftgate, please confirm that there are no people or obstacles within the swing range of the liftgate.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Emergency opening of the liftgate



When the vehicle is out of power or the liftgate malfunctions and the liftgate cannot be opened normally, you can try to open the liftgate from inside the vehicle in an emergency:

1. Lower the 3rd-row seat back. => See page 111.
2. Open the trim panel on the liftgate at position -Arrow A-.
3. Move the liftgate emergency switch ① in the direction of the -Arrow B- to unlock and open the liftgate in an emergency.

### Setting of second height of the liftgate



When the height of the opening of the liftgate is 55% to 98%, press and hold the inside switch of the liftgate for about 2s to set the second height of the liftgate successfully. The buzzer will beep twice.

#### iNOTE

The second height of the liftgate can be set or reset through the AV system.

### Close the liftgate



#### Electric closing

- Press the button on the inside of the liftgate, and the power liftgate will automatically lower until it closes by suction. In this case, if you press this button again during the closing process, the power liftgate will stop at the current position.
- If you double-click the button  on the intelligent remote control key within effective range, the power liftgate will be automatically lowered until it is closed by suction. If you press this button again during the closing process, the power liftgate will stop at the current position.

- If you press and hold the liftgate button on the right side of the instrument panel, the power liftgate will be automatically lowered until it is closed. If you press this button again during the closing process, the power liftgate will stop at the current position.
- Manually press down on the liftgate, and the liftgate will automatically descend until it closes by suction when it senses a closing trend.

### Manual closing

When the electric function of the liftgate fails, it can be manually closed:

- Lower the liftgate close to the rear bumper cover, and then press down the liftgate firmly with both hands to close it.



### ⓘCAUTION

During the process of closing the liftgate, do not place your hands or any part of your body in the area where the liftgate is closed to avoid injury.

### ⓘNOTE

- When the power liftgate starts to close from a standstill, the turn signal lamp will flash twice.
- When the power liftgate is electrically closed, the buzzer will beep alternately.
- If the liftgate is not closed, the instrument cluster display will indicate an alarm message.

### ⓘCAUTION

- Always close the liftgate firmly, otherwise it may cause accidents.
- Be careful when closing the liftgate to ensure that no person is within the movement range of the liftgate.
- Always ensure that the closed power liftgate is locked to prevent sudden opening during driving.

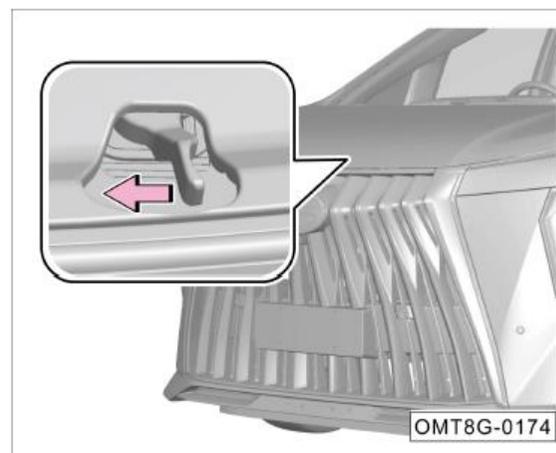
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.3.6 Engine hood

#### Opening of engine hood



1. Pull the engine hood release handle located under the driver's side instrument panel in the direction of the arrow. The engine hood will unlock and pop up slightly.



2. Push the locking mechanism in the direction of the arrow to fully unlock the engine hood.



3. Lift the engine hood upwards and secure it with the stay bar.

### Closing of engine hood

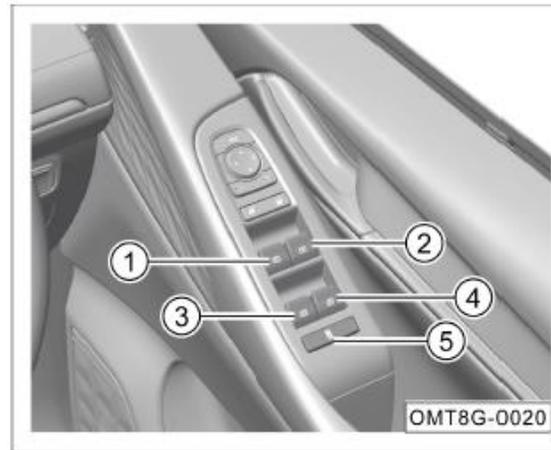
Lower the engine hood until it is close to the fender, then press down firmly on the front end of the engine compartment to securely lock it.

#### **i**NOTE

- Proper lubrication of the moving parts of the engine hood compartment's locking mechanism helps facilitate opening and closing.
- If the engine hood is ajar, the instrument cluster display will display an alarm message. When the driving speed is higher than 5 km/h, there will be a buzzer prompt.

### 4.3.7 Power window

#### Driver's side power window control button



- ① Front left power window control button
- ② Front right power window control button
- ③ Rear left power window control button
- ④ Rear right power window control button
- ⑤ Passenger's window lock button

- Pull up button ① to the first stop position, and the power window will rise until you release the button or until the window reaches the top.
- Pull up button ② to the first stop position, and the power window will rise until you release the button or until the window reaches the top.
- Press down button ① to the first stop position, and the power window will lower until you release the button or until the window reaches the bottom.
- Press down button ① to the limit position, and the power window will automatically lower to the bottom.
- If you press the passenger's window lock button ⑤, the button indicator lamp will come on and the front/rear power window control buttons cannot work anymore. To unlock, press the button again and the button indicator lamp goes out.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### NOTE

- Pull up or press down button ① to the limit position, and the window will automatically lower to the bottom.
- The operation of buttons ②, ③, and ④ is the same as button ①, but each only controls the corresponding door window.

### CAUTION

- Please close all windows before leaving the vehicle.
- Please exercise caution when closing the windows. Do not place your hands near the window edges to avoid the risk of injury.

### Front passenger power window button



- The operation of the front passenger power window button ① is the same as that of the driver's side power window button.

### Rear passenger power window button



- Press the upper end of button ① to the first stop position, and the window will rise until you release the button or the window reaches the top.
- For some models, pressing the upper end of button ① to the limit position will cause the window to automatically rise to the top.
- Press the lower end of button ① to the first stop position, and the window will lower until you release the button or the window reaches the bottom.

- For some models, pressing the lower end of button ① to the limit position will cause the window to automatically lower to the bottom.

### NOTE

During the automatic movement, if you wish to stop the window, you can press either the upper or lower end of button ① to halt the motion.

### Initialization of anti-pinch function

If you notice that the one-touch power window function is unavailable, the anti-pinch feature is malfunctioning, or the initialization state has automatically been lost due to multiple activations of the anti-pinch feature in a short period, the system will require re-initialization.

1. Pull up the power window button, and the window will rise in increments until it is fully closed.
2. After the window is fully closed, continue pulling up the power window button for approximately 2 seconds to complete the initialization.
3. Once the window initialization is complete, operate the window to the lowest position, then press down the power window button for approximately 2 seconds to ensure a hard stop is achieved.
4. Pull up the power window button to check if the one-touch up function has been restored.

### WARNING

- **The window has no anti-pinch function during the initialization learning process. Therefore, please do not use any part of your body or other objects to hinder the closing of the window, otherwise it will cause personal injury and affect the result of the initialization learning.**
- **If the power window system malfunctions, please visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.**

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Automatic window closing upon locking

When the doors are locked (via remote key or intelligent auto-lock) and the windows are not fully closed, the system will automatically close the windows to prevent potential damage caused by leaving them open. If automatic window closing fails due to an abnormal condition such as the anti-pinch feature being triggered, the horn will sound four times to alert the user that the windows have not been closed.

#### NOTE

You can enable or disable the automatic window closing feature through the AV system settings.

#### CAUTION

The automatic window closing function only works when the battery level and parts are functioning normally. Ensure that all windows are fully closed before leaving the vehicle.

### Automatic window calibration\*

If external factors prevent the window from closing automatically, the window will first lower to the bottom for automatic calibration, then rise again automatically.

#### CAUTION

In special circumstances, some windows may not be able to close automatically, and manual calibration may be required.

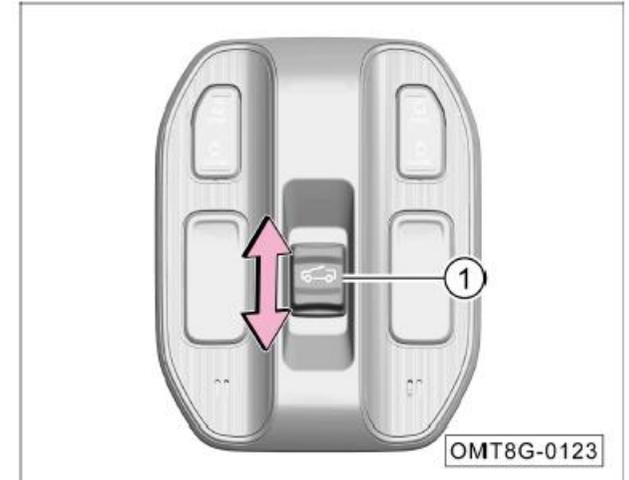
### Window not closed warning

When the vehicle's power is switched to the "OFF" gear and the driver's side door is opened, if any window is still open, the system will emit a warning beep, and the instrument cluster display will show a "Window Not Closed" warning message.

### 4.3.8 Electric sunroof

#### Opening and closing the sunroof

Roof switch operation



- A brief backward push on sunroof switch ① will open the sunroof a small distance and then stop. Pushing and holding the switch ① backward for a short time will cause the sunroof to open fully automatically.
- A brief forward push on sunroof switch ① will close the sunroof a small distance and then stop. Pushing and holding the switch ① forward for a short time will cause the sunroof to close fully automatically.

- When the sunroof is fully closed, pressing the sunroof switch ① will tilt the sunroof upwards. To close the sunroof, push the sunroof switch ① forward.

### ⓘ CAUTION

Please fully close the sunroof before leaving the vehicle. Or rain and debris may enter the interior.

### Remote operation

When the vehicle's power is switched to the "OFF" gear, pressing and holding the remote key button  will remotely close the sunroof and the electric sunshade. You shall continue holding the button during the closing process. If you release the button, the closing will stop.

When the vehicle's power is switched to the "OFF" gear, pressing and holding the remote key button  will tilt the sunroof remotely.

### ⓘ NOTE

- In addition to the methods mentioned above, you can also control the opening and closing of the sunroof through the AV system.
- The electric sunroof function only supports tilting and closing; it does not allow for opening.

### Sunroof anti-pinch function

The sunroof has an anti-pinch function when closing both in the sliding mode and when lowering from a tilted position.

- If the anti-pinch function is triggered while the sunroof is in the sliding position, the sunroof will move slightly in the open direction and then stop.
- If the anti-pinch function is triggered while the sunroof is in the tilted position, the sunroof will move upwards until it reaches the maximum tilt position.
- The sunroof's anti-pinch function prevents large objects from being pinched when the sunroof is closing. If the sunroof encounters an obstacle while closing, it will stop and slightly retract.

### ⓘ CAUTION

Do not operate the sunroof when the temperature is below -20°C, as the anti-pinch function may not activate under such conditions, potentially leading to accidents. Additionally, low temperatures can cause damage to the motor.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### ⚠WARNING

- Exercise caution when closing the sunroof. Ensure that no one is in the sunroof's movement range to avoid the risk of being pinched.
- The anti-pinch function cannot prevent fingers or small objects from being pinched.
- The sunroof will stop detecting obstacles at a position where the sunroof is about to be closed fully, so the anti-pinch function will be deactivated at this time.
- Do not try to activate the anti-pinch function by your hand or any part of your body, otherwise there will be a risk of pinching.

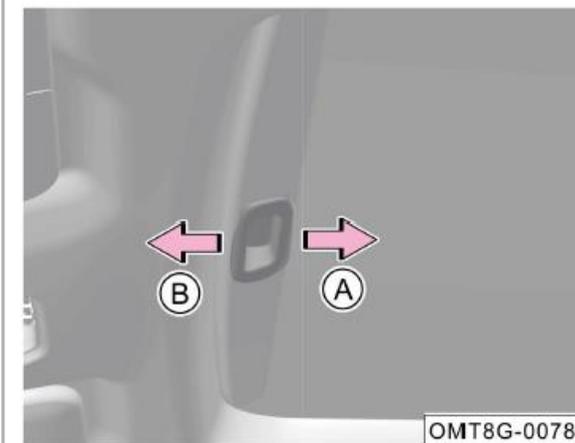
### Electric sunroof initialization



In some cases (e.g., sudden power disconnection or the vehicle not being used for an extended period), the sunroof may need to be manually initialized and re-learned. The specific operations are as follows:

1. Push switch ① forward until the sunroof reaches the fully closed position.
2. Continue pushing switch ① forward, and the sunroof will first move to the tilted position, then to the half-open position, and finally return to the fully closed position.
3. Release switch ①, and the sunroof initialization will be complete.

### Opening and closing of sunroof sun visor



Grasp the notch:

- Pull in the direction of arrow A to open the sunroof sun visor.
- Pull in the direction of arrow B to close the sunroof sun visor.

### iNOTE

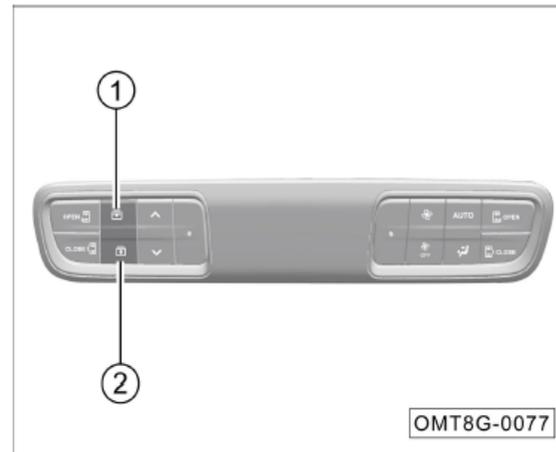
When the sunroof is opened, the sun visor will automatically open along with it.

### CAUTION

- To avoid damage caused by airflow possibly adhering the sun visor during vehicle movement, the sun visor can only be fully closed when the sunroof is completely closed.
- Before closing the sunroof sun visor, make sure the electric sunroof is fully closed.
- If the electric sunroof is not closed and only the sun visor is closed, there is a risk of water entering the cabin during rain.

### Open/close the electric sunshade

Rear control panel buttons



When the vehicle's power is in the "ON" gear, press buttons ① or ② on the rear control panel to open or close the electric sunshade.

- Short press button ① to open the sunshade a small distance, after which it will stop. Press and hold button ① to fully close the sunshade automatically.
- Short press button ② to close the sunshade a small distance, after which it will stop. Press and hold button ② to fully close the sunshade automatically.

### iNOTE

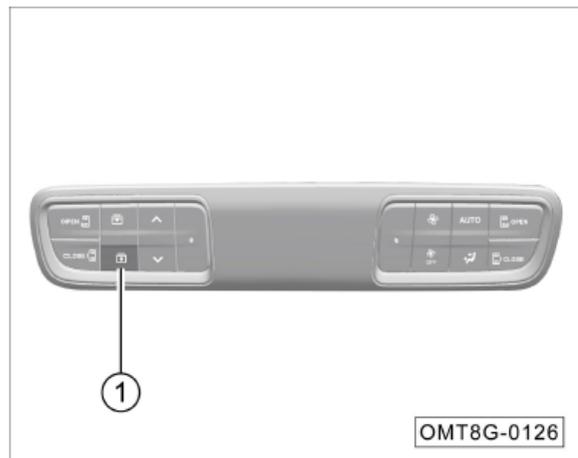
In addition to the above operation methods, you can also control the electric sunshade's opening and closing through the AV system.

### CAUTION

Do not touch the sunshade with your hands or any objects during the opening or closing process, as this may cause the sunshade to wrinkle, detach, or fail.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Electric sunshade initialization



- Press button ① to move the electric sunshade to the fully closed position.
- Press and hold button ①, and the electric sunshade will first open to one-third of its range, and then move back to the fully closed position.
- Release button ① to complete the initialization.

### ⓘ CAUTION

If the electric sunroof system malfunctions, please visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

### 4.3.9 Basic operation of body anti-theft system

#### Disarming the body anti-theft system

When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear and the vehicle is in the armed state, use the remote to unlock the doors, or approach the vehicle with the intelligent remote control key to trigger the smart entry system. The doors will unlock, and the anti-theft system will be disarmed. The turn signal lamps will flash twice.

#### Arming the body anti-theft system

When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear, and all four doors, the engine hood, and the liftgate are closed, the remote locking or smart entry system will activate the door locking, and the anti-theft system will be armed. The turn signal lamps will flash once.

### Activation of body anti-theft function

When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear and the vehicle is in the armed state, the anti-theft system will be triggered if an illegal key or forced door unlocking is detected. The anti-theft horn will sound, and the turn signal lamps will flash.

If the vehicle is armed through remote locking and the driver's side door is unlocked with the emergency mechanical key, opening the door will trigger the horn and turn signal lamp alarms of the anti-theft system within a few seconds.

#### iNOTE

When no alarm has been triggered, or during an ongoing alarm, pressing the remote key button  or switching the vehicle power to the "ON" gear will deactivate the anti-theft alarm, and the vehicle will enter the disarmed state.

### Anti-theft function of engine

When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear, the body anti-theft system is deactivated, and a valid key is inside the vehicle. Switch the vehicle power to the "ON" gear, and if the engine anti-theft system passes the verification, the engine anti-theft will be deactivated.

If the engine anti-theft system does not pass the verification, the engine cannot be started and an anti-theft alarm will be triggered.

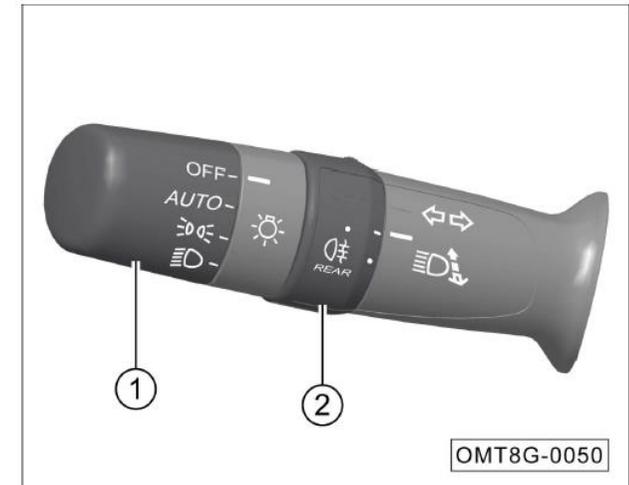
### Body anti-theft maintenance instructions

No maintenance is required during normal use. If you have any doubt, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop.

## 4.4 Lamps and vision

### 4.4.1 Exterior lamps

#### Lamp combination switch



① Lamp switch

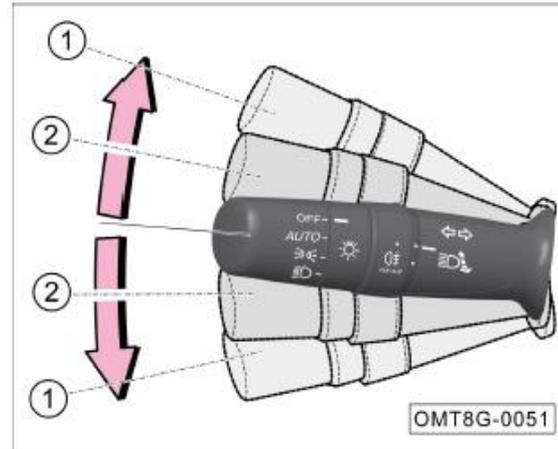
② Rear fog lamp switch

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### iNOTE

- Under certain conditions (such as high humidity or after a car wash, but not limited to these), condensation or water droplets may appear on the inner surface of the lamps, similar to fogging on the windows when driving in the rain. This is not a malfunction.
- This fogging phenomenon can be eliminated by parking the vehicle in a dry environment, turning on the lamps or driving the vehicle, but may recur.
- If large water droplets or water ingress appear inside the lamp, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection.

### Turn signal lamp



- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, flick the lamplight combination switch up or down to the first detent position ① to turn on the right or left turn signal lamp, and the corresponding indicator lamp ➡ or ⬅ on the instrument cluster module will flash.

### Turn signal lamp flashing for lane change

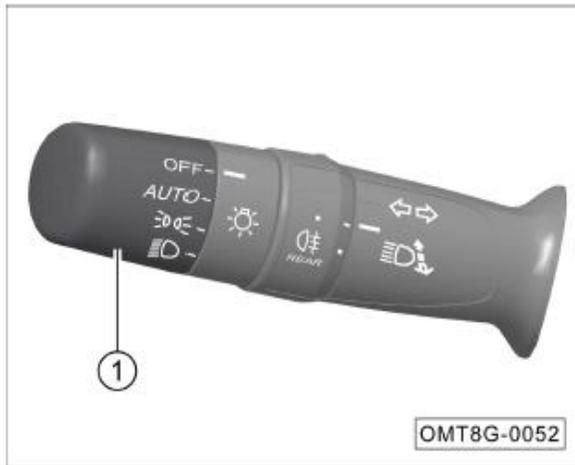
- For lane changes or overtaking, flick the lamplight combination switch up or down to the second detent position ② and release it. The corresponding turn signal lamp and the indicator lamp ➡ or ⬅ on the instrument cluster module will flash three times.

- If you turn the lamplight combination switch up or down and hold it at the position ②, the corresponding turn signal lamp and the indicator lamp ➡ or ⬅ on the instrument cluster module will flash continuously. Releasing the switch to the original position can stop the flashing.

### ⚠CAUTION

If the corresponding indicator lamp ➡ or ⬅ on the instrument cluster module flashes faster, one of the turn signal lamps may be faulty, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

### Lamp switch



When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, rotate the light switch ① to control the AUTO (automatic headlamp), ☀️ (position lamp), or 🚗 (low beam).

When the light switch is turned to the "OFF" position, all lamps will turn off.

### AUTO (Automatic headlamp)

- Turn the lamplight switch to the AUTO position to activate the automatic headlamp on/off function.

#### iNOTE

If the automatic headlamp on/off function is activated, the vehicle will automatically turn on or off the headlamp according to the ambient light. When the external natural light gradually becomes dark, the position lamps and the low beam will be turned on simultaneously; when the external natural light gradually becomes bright, the position lamps and the low beam will be turned off simultaneously.

#### 👁️ CAUTION

- If the message "Sensor failure; please manually control light" appears on the instrument cluster display, the system will keep the low beam on for the sake of safety. In that case, you should manually control the light and go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.
- The automatic headlamp function may be affected in the haze environment, so please manually turn on the headlamp in this case.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

---

### Daytime running lamp

- When the vehicle is started and the low beam is not on, the daytime running lamp will automatically turn on. The daytime running lamp will automatically turn off when the low beam is turned on, or the "READY" indicator lamp goes off.

### Position lamp

- Turn the light switch to the position lamp  setting to turn on the position lamps, instrument panel illumination lamps, license plate lamps, and other lights. The corresponding indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module will come on.

### iNOTE

To save battery power, if you forget to turn off the position lamp, it will automatically turn off 15 minutes after the vehicle power is switched to the "OFF" gear and the vehicle is not locked. If the vehicle power is switched to the "OFF" gear and the vehicle is locked, the position lamp will turn off immediately.

### △WARNING

**When driving at night or on a road with poor visibility, also use other lamps in addition to the position lamps. Otherwise, accidents may easily occur.**

### Low beam

- Turn the lamp switch to the position  to turn on the low beam.

### High beam

- After turning on the low beam, if you push the lamplight combination switch forward to the limit position, the high beam will be turned on and the corresponding indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module will come on.
- If you pull the lamplight combination switch backward to the original position, the high beam will be turned off.

### High beam flashing

- Pull the lamplight combination switch towards the rear of the vehicle to the limit position to turn on the high beam.
- Release the switch, and it will automatically return to its original position, turning off the high beam.

### iNOTE

- The high beam may cause dazzling to drivers of oncoming vehicles at close range, which may easily cause accidents. Therefore, please use the high beam reasonably.
- If all lamps are off, pulling and holding the lamplight combination switch will turn on the high beam, and the corresponding indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module will come on.

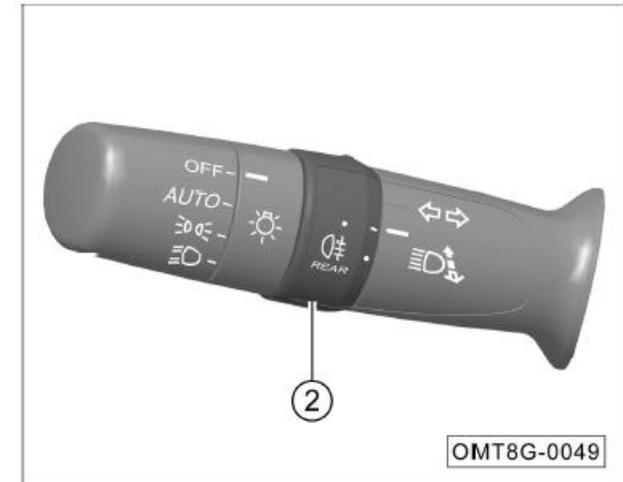
### Warning for lights left on

When the vehicle power is switched to the "OFF" gear, and the driver's side door is opened, if the headlamp or position lamp is still on, the system will emit a warning beep, and the instrument cluster display will show a "Lights Left On" warning message.

### Follow Me Home

- Activate the headlamp delay-off function through the AV system. When the lamplight combination switch is turned to the "AUTO" position and the vehicle power is switched to the "OFF" gear, if the external light is dim, the low beam will illuminate for about 30 seconds. If any of the doors (four doors, engine hood, or liftgate) are opened within this 30-second period, the timer will reset, and the low beam will remain on for 80 seconds. If all doors are closed within that 80-second period, the timer will reset again, and the low beam will stay on for 30 seconds, repeating this process.

### Rear fog lamp switch

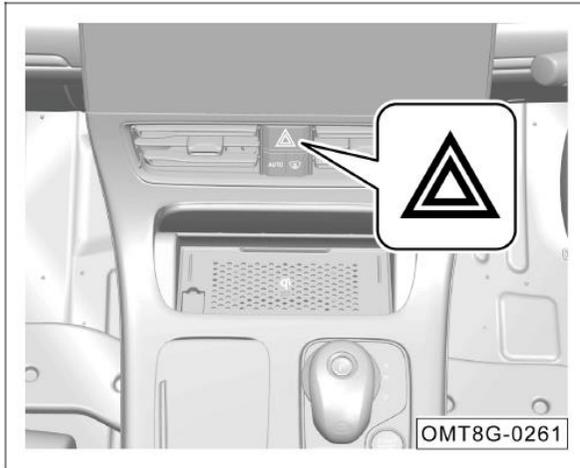


When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear and the low beam is on, rotate the fog lamp switch ② to control the rear fog lamp .

- Rotate the fog lamp switch ② to the  indicated position, then release it. The switch will return to the "—" position, and the rear fog lamp will turn on.
- Rotate the fog lamp switch ② to the indicated position  again, then release it. The switch will return to the "—" position, and the rear fog lamp will turn off.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Hazard warning lamp



In any gear, press the switch , and the red background light of the switch will flash, turning on the hazard warning lamp. Press the switch again to turn off the hazard warning lamp.

When the hazard warning lamp is activated, all turn signal lamps and their corresponding indicator lamps  or  on the instrument cluster module will flash simultaneously.

The hazard warning lamp shall be turned on in the following cases so as to attract the attention of other road users and reduce the risk of traffic accidents:

- When the vehicle is faulty.
- The vehicle is at the tail end of a traffic jam.
- The vehicle tows another vehicle or is towed.
- The vehicle is temporarily parked due to poor visibility.

#### **iNOTE**

- The use of the hazard warning lamp will consume the battery power, so please turn it off when not in use.
- Be sure to strictly abide by the relevant regulations when using the hazard warning lamp.
- In case of emergency, if the hazard warning lamp is faulty, other methods that comply with relevant traffic regulations must be taken to attract the attention of other people on the road.

### Vehicle assisted lighting

- Within the effective range, pressing the unlock button  on the remote key will cause the position lamps to illuminate as auxiliary lighting for a period of time. Pressing the unlock button  on the remote key again will extend the illumination of the position lamps for an additional period of time. When the vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear, the position lamps will turn off.

### Vehicle locating lighting

- Quickly press the lock button  on the remote key twice, and the position lamps will illuminate for a few seconds, while the turn signal lamps will flash three times, helping you identify the exact location of the vehicle.

### Exterior rearview mirror welcome light\*

- When any door is opened, the exterior rearview mirror welcome light will automatically turn on.
- When all doors are closed, the exterior rearview mirror welcome light will automatically turn off.

### Intelligent welcome function

When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear and all doors are closed and locked, you can unlock/lock the vehicle using the following methods to trigger the front and rear combination lamps for the welcome lighting effect:

- Remote unlock/lock using the intelligent remote control key.
- Approach the vehicle with the intelligent key to unlock it.
- Walk away from the vehicle to automatically lock it.
- If no door is opened within a certain period after unlocking, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again.

#### iNOTE

You can enable or disable the intelligent welcome light function through the AV system settings.

### Second-row right welcome light carpet\*

- When the sliding door is opened, the second-row right welcome light carpet will automatically turn on.
- When the sliding door is closed, the second-row right welcome light carpet will automatically turn off.

### 4.4.2 Interior lamps

#### Automatic light-on function of dome lamps

- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, access the driving control panel via the AV system menu  and click the "Dome DOOR" soft key to enable the automatic light-on function of the dome lamps. Click the soft key again to disable this function.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Interior light delay off function

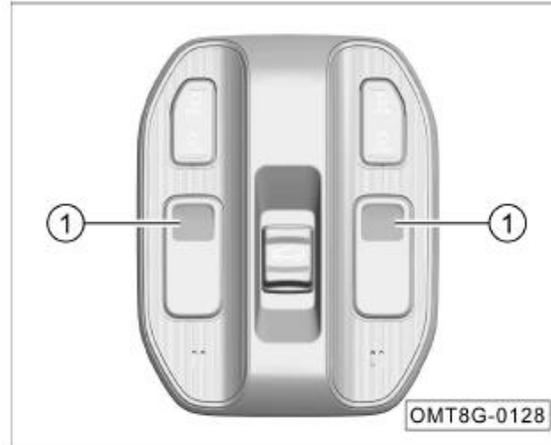
When all the dome lamps are off, and the automatic light-on function is enabled:

- When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear and any door is opened, the dome lamps will automatically turn on and turn off about 30 seconds after the door is closed.
- When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear and the doors are unlocked via the remote, the dome lamps will automatically turn on and turn off about 30 seconds later.
- When the vehicle power is switched from "ON" to "OFF" gear, the dome lamps will automatically turn on and turn off about 30 seconds later.

#### **i**NOTE

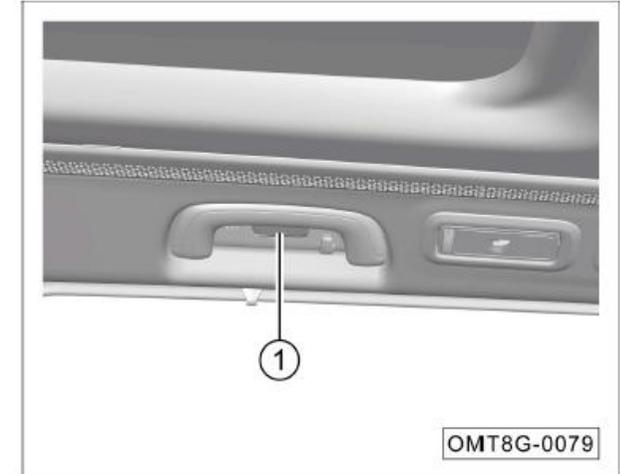
When all doors are closed, and the dome lamps are illuminated under the above conditions, using the remote to lock the doors or switching the vehicle power to "ON" gear will cause the dome lamps to automatically turn off.

### Dome lamp



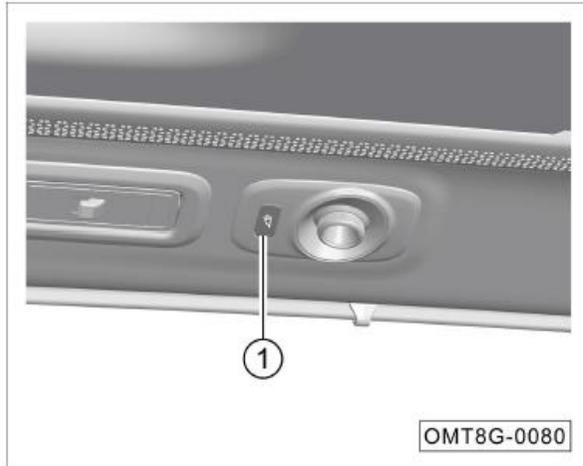
- When the dome lamps are off, press switch ① to turn on the corresponding side's dome lamp. Press switch ① again to turn off the corresponding dome lamp.

### 2nd/rear seat dome lamp



- When the second/rear seat dome lamps are off, press switch ① to turn on the corresponding side's dome lamp. Press switch ① again to turn off the corresponding dome lamp.

### Second-row dome reading light



- When the second-row reading light is off, press switch ① to turn on the corresponding side's reading light. Press switch ① again to turn off the corresponding side's reading light.

### Glove box lamp

- If the glove box is opened, the glove box lamp will come on automatically.
- If the glove box is closed, the glove box lamp will go out automatically.

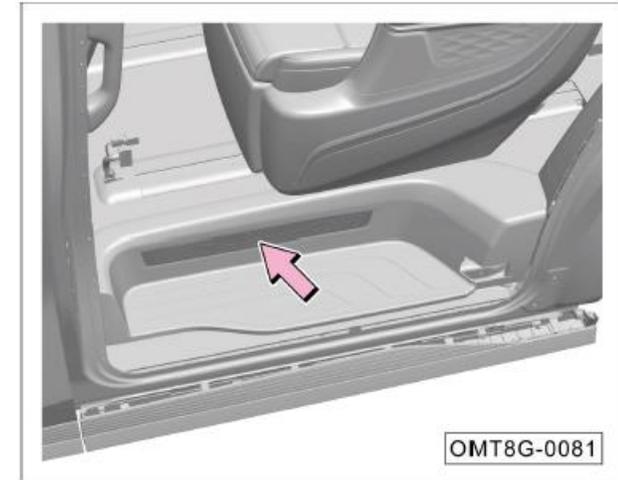
### Trunk lamp

- When the liftgate is opened, the trunk lamp will automatically turn on.
- When the liftgate is closed, the trunk lamp will automatically turn off.

### Vanity mirror light

- When the vanity mirror cover is opened, the vanity mirror light will automatically turn on.
- If the vanity mirror cover is closed, the vanity mirror light will go out automatically.

### Second-row welcome light



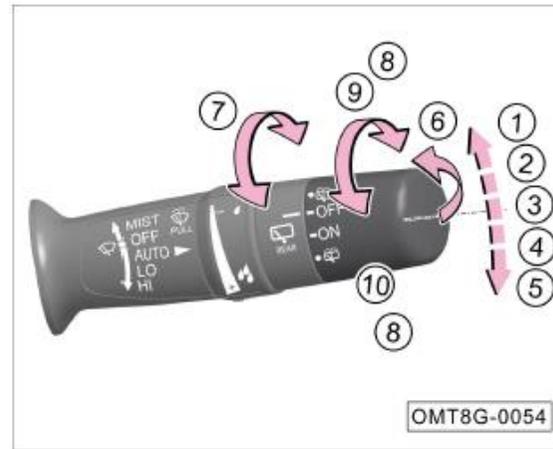
- When the sliding door is opened, the welcome light will automatically turn on.
- When the sliding door is closed, the welcome light will automatically turn off.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Intelligent Ambient Light\*

Through the AV system, enter the interior trim ambient light settings interface to enable or disable the ambient light. Once enabled, you can adjust the ambient light effects.

### 4.4.3 Wiper combination switch



When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, the wiper combination switch can be operated:

- ① MIST: Manual wiping
- ② OFF: Wiper off
- ③ AUTO: Automatic wiping
- ④ LO: Low-speed wiping
- ⑤ HI: High-speed wiping
- ⑥ Front windshield washer system on
- ⑦ Adjusting knob:

- Adjust automatic wiping sensitivity (AUTO)
- Adjust wiping interval (INT)
- ⑧ : Activate the rear windshield washer system
- ⑨ OFF: Turn off the rear windshield washer system or the rear wiper
- ⑩ ON: Turn on the rear wiper

#### **MIST: Manual wiping**

- Move the wiper combination switch to the MIST limit position ①, and the front wiper will manually wipe.
- Release the wiper combination switch to let it return to the OFF limit position ②, and the front wiper will stop wiping.

#### **OFF: Wiper off**

- If the wiper combination switch is turned to ② OFF position, the front wiper will stop wiping.

### **AUTO: Automatic wiping**

- If the wiper combination switch is turned to the ③ AUTO position, the automatic wiping function will be activated, and the wiper system will adjust the wiper speed according to the current rainfall and the real-time vehicle speed.
- Rotate knob ⑦ up or down to adjust the wiping sensitivity. Sensitivity increases as you rotate it upward, making the system more responsive to raindrops.
- You can switch to intermittent wiping mode through the AV system settings.

### **LO: Low-speed wiping**

- If the wiper combination switch is turned to ④ LO position, the front wiper will wipe at a low speed.

### **HI: High-speed wiping**

- If the wiper combination switch is turned to ⑤ HI position, the front wiper will wipe at a high speed.

### **Front windshield washer system on**

- If the wiper combination switch is turned toward the rear of the vehicle to ⑥ position, the front washer will start spraying water and then the front wiper will start wiping.
- Release the wiper combination switch and allow it to return to its original position. The front windshield washer system will turn off, but the front wiper will continue to operate for a few more seconds.
- After the front wiper stops for a few seconds, it will perform one more wipe to clear any remaining water on the glass.

### **Rear windshield washer system on**

- Rotate the rear wiper knob up or down to the limit position ⑧  to activate the rear windshield washer system. The washer will start spraying, and the rear wiper will begin wiping shortly after.

### **ON: Turning on the rear wiper**

- Rotate the rear wiper knob to the limit position ⑩ ON to start the rear wiper.

### **OFF: Turning off the rear windshield washer system or the rear wiper**

- If the wiper combination switch is turned to ⑨ OFF position, the rear windshield washer system will be turned off and the rear wiper will stop wiping.

#### **CAUTION**

- Before activating the automatic wiping function in winter, please check whether the wiper blade is frozen.
- When washing the vehicle, it is recommended to turn off the automatic wiping.
- The automatic wiping function is an assist, so the driver should manually operate the wipers when necessary according to the driving situation to ensure driving safety.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.4.4 Windshield Windshield glass

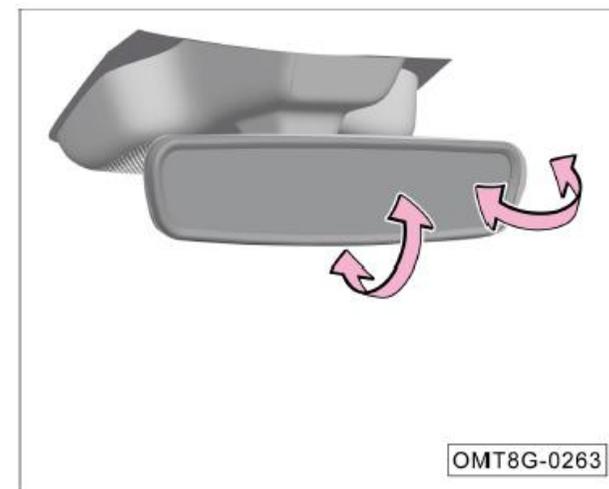


The front windshield uses green, sound-insulating glass.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Always keep the glass surface clean.
- Please affix the necessary identifications according to local traffic laws, rules and regulations. Do not stick paper or hang objects on the surface of the front windshield glass, otherwise the front view will be obstructed, and a traffic accident is likely to be caused.

### 4.4.5 Rearview mirror Interior rearview mirror

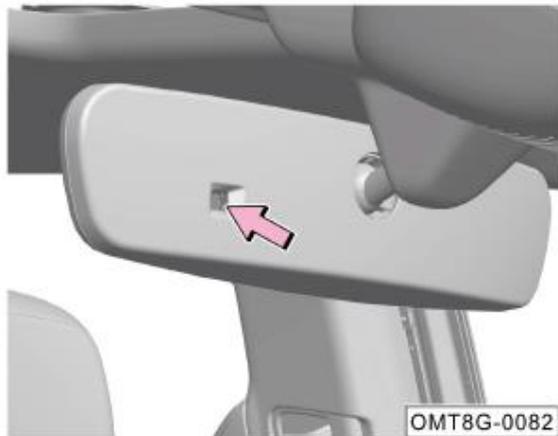


The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror monitors the intensity of lights behind the vehicle in real time, and automatically adjusts the reflective effect, so that strong lights it reflects to the driver's eyes turn dark and not glaring.

- Before driving, always adjust the interior rearview mirror to the appropriate angle.
- Hold the interior rearview mirror and adjust it up, down, left and right to the best rearview position.

### ⓘ CAUTION

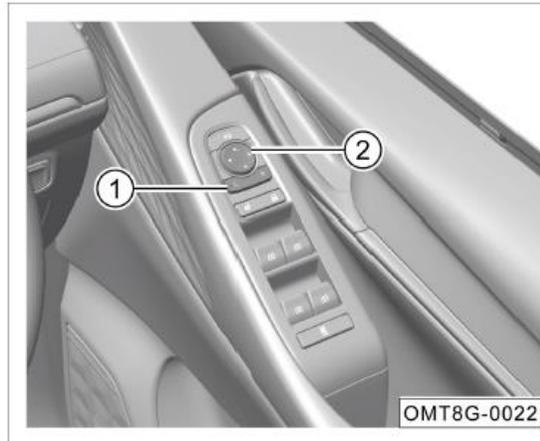
Do not adjust the interior rearview mirror during driving, as you will be distracted from driving, causing loss of control to vehicle and dangerous accident thereafter.



### ⓘ CAUTION

To ensure the proper functioning of the anti-glare rearview mirror sensor, do not cover the sensor indicated by the arrow.

### Electric adjustment of exterior rearview mirrors



- Press the "L" or "R" end of selection button ① to choose the left or right exterior rearview mirror.
- Press the adjusting button ② to adjust the selected exterior rearview mirror to the appropriate rearview angle.
- After adjusting the exterior rearview mirror, restore the selector button ① to its original state.

### iNOTE

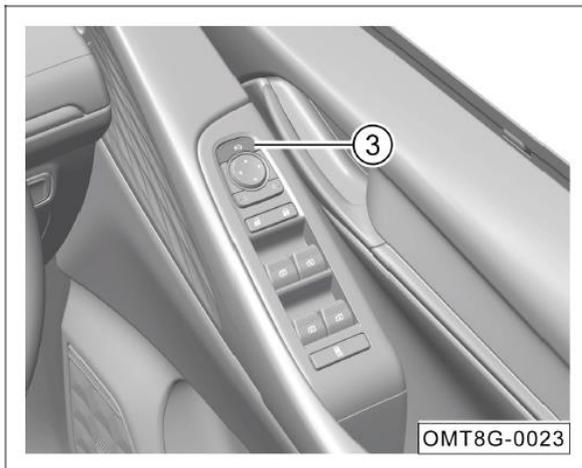
If the exterior rearview mirror malfunctions, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Although the curved (convex and spherical) rearview mirror can expand the field of view, the reflected object image is smaller and farther than the real object. Therefore, when changing the lanes, do not judge the distance between your vehicle and the following vehicle by the reflected image, otherwise accidents may occur due to wrong judgment.
- Do not adjust the exterior rearview mirrors while driving, as it may distract your attention and lead to loss of vehicle control, causing danger.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Power folding exterior rearview mirrors



- Press the folding button ③ to fold the exterior rearview mirror electrically.
- Press the folding button ③ again to unfold the exterior rearview mirror electrically.

### Auto folding of exterior rearview mirror

- If the vehicle is locked from outside, the exterior rearview mirror will be folded automatically.
- If the vehicle is unlocked from outside, the exterior rearview mirror will be unfolded automatically.

#### iNOTE

You can enable or disable the automatic folding function of the exterior rearview mirrors through the AV system settings.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- If the power folding function of the exterior rearview mirrors fails, you can manually fold them. After manual folding, please manually restore them. When you hear a "click" sound, the mirrors are properly restored.
- Avoid manually folding exterior rearview mirrors equipped with the power folding function too frequently, as this may damage the internal folding mechanism and cause the power folding function to fail.
- Be careful when operating the electric folding function of the exterior rearview mirror to prevent fingers from being pinched by the rearview mirror and its base.

### Reverse tilt of exterior rearview mirrors

Memory of turning down position of exterior rearview mirror when reversing:

1. Manual reverse tilt memory operation:
  - When the vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear, enter the AV system settings interface and enable the reverse tilt function for the exterior rearview mirrors.
  - Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever into the "R" gear.
  - Adjust the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side to a suitable reversing position. After adjusting, shift the gearshift lever to another gear, and the adjusted position will be saved as the reverse tilt position for the mirror.

2. Automatic reverse tilt memory operation:
  - When the vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear, enter the AV system settings interface and enable the reverse tilt function for the exterior rearview mirrors.
  - Click the exterior rearview "Mirror Angle Adjustment" soft key and adjust both exterior rearview mirrors to suitable reversing positions. Once the adjustment is complete, click the "Confirm" soft key, and the adjusted position will be saved as the reverse tilt position for the mirrors.

The reverse tilt function for exterior rearview mirrors provides a radar parking assist/RPA function. By default, this function is off. You can enable it and set the reverse mirror positions via the AV system settings interface. When reversing, both rearview mirrors will tilt downwards, and when you exit reverse, the mirrors will return to their original positions. If the function is disabled, the mirrors will not tilt downwards.

### Exterior rearview mirror defrosting/defogging function

Through the AV system, enter the front air conditioning control main interface and click the soft key  to enable/disable the defrost/defog function. When enabled, the button  indicator light will come on.

- Activating the defrosting/defogging function will remove fog or frost from the exterior rearview mirrors and the rear windshield glass.
- After approximately 15 minutes, this function will automatically turn off, or you can manually turn it off during operation by clicking the soft key  again, which will turn off the button indicator light.

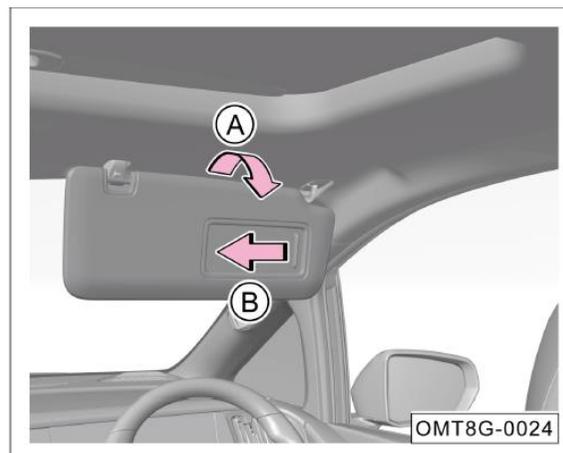
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### ⚠CAUTION

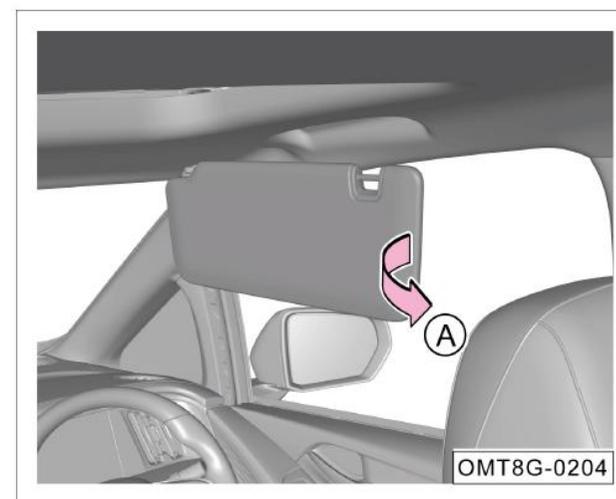
- If fog or frost still needs to be cleared after the defrosting/defogging function automatically turns off, please press the button  again.
- Do not use the defrosting/defogging function continuously for an extended period, as the heater may overheat and become damaged.
- If the defrosting/defogging function is not needed, please turn it off to avoid draining the battery unnecessarily.

### 4.4.6 Sun visor/sunshade\*

#### Front row sun visor

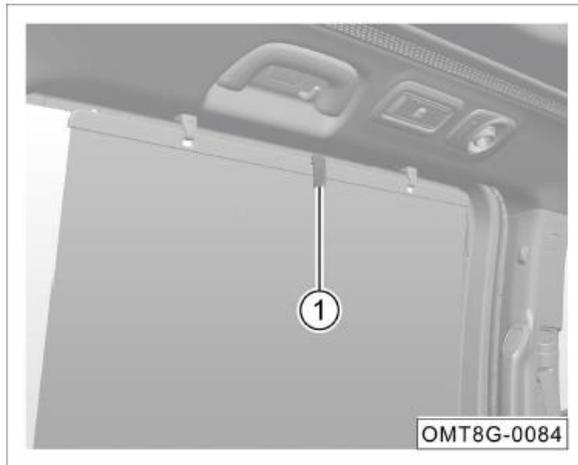


- Turn down the sun visor on the driver's side or front passenger's side in the direction of - arrow A - to block the sunlight from the front windshield.
- If you need to use the vanity mirror, flip down the sun visor and slide open the vanity mirror cover in the direction of arrow B. The vanity mirror light will automatically turn on. When you close the vanity mirror cover, the light will automatically turn off.



- After flipping down the sun visor on the driver's side or front passenger's side, pull out the adjustable arm in the direction of arrow A to block sunlight entering through the side window.

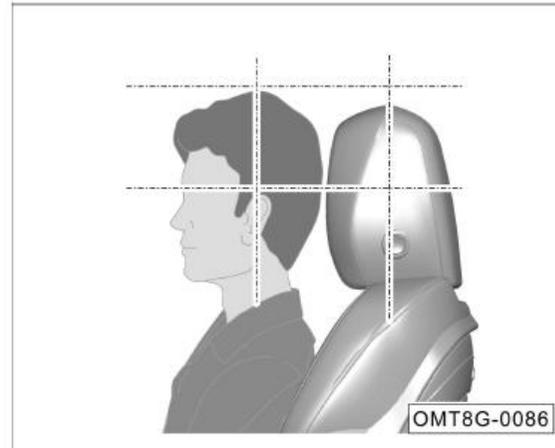
### Second-row side window sunshade



- Pull up handle ① to secure the side window sunshade onto the door frame hook, blocking sunlight from the side window.

### 4.5 Seats and storage facilities

#### 4.5.1 Headrests



Properly adjusting the headrests is essential for protecting driver and passengers and reducing the risk of injury in the event of an accident.

Always adjust the headrest to the correct position (as shown in the figure) according to their body shape.

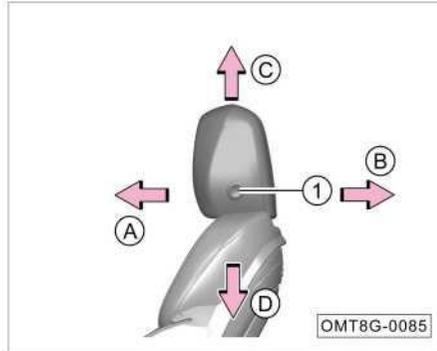
#### ⚠WARNING

In order to reduce the risk of accidental casualties, please strictly observe the followings:

- Do not adjust the headrest while driving.
- The headrests must always be in their installed position. If the headrests are removed or improperly installed while driving, it significantly increases the risk of serious injury to the driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

Adjust the front seat headrest height (for manually adjustable 4-way headrests) \*



Forward/backward adjustment

- Press and hold the lock button ①, and push the headrest forward or backward in the direction of arrow A or arrow B to adjust the headrest position.

Upward/downward adjustment

- To raise: Simply pull the headrest upward in the direction of arrow C to the desired position.
- To lower: Press and hold the lock button ①, and press the headrest downward in the direction of arrow D to the desired position.

Adjust the front seat headrest height (for manually adjustable 2-way headrests) \*



- Downward adjustment: Press and hold the lock button ①, and press down the headrest to the desired position.
- Upward adjustment: Pull up the headrest directly to the desired position.

### **i**NOTE

The method for adjusting the manually adjustable 2-way headrest on the rear seats is the same.

Second-row seat sleeping headrest



- Downward adjustment: Press and hold the lock button ①, and press down the headrest to the desired position.
- Upward adjustment: Pull up the headrest directly to the desired position.
- To adjust the front part of the headrest forward, grip both sides of the headrest handle ② and pull it forward.

### 4.5.2 Front seats

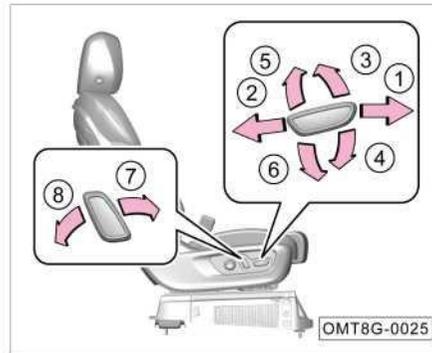
#### NOTE

When measuring the seat cushion depth, the seat shall be positioned in the middle of the sliding rail, and the seat back shall be adjusted to a normal usage position (25°).

#### WARNING

- **Do not place any objects under the front seats, as they may get caught between the seat and the rail, preventing the seat from locking properly.**
- **Adjusting the seat while driving can cause you to lose proper seating posture, increasing the risk of accidents. Only adjust the front seats when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **After the vehicle power is switched to the "OFF" gear, the electric seat adjustment mechanism still functions. Never leave children alone in the vehicle to prevent accidental operation of the electric seats, which could cause injury.**

### Electric seat



Forward and backward adjustment of seat:

- Push the switch in the direction of arrow ① or ② to slide the seat forward or backward.

Seat cushion front end up/down adjustment (driver's seat only):

- Move the switch in the direction of arrow ③ or ④ to adjust the seat cushion up or down.

Seat up/down adjustment (driver's seat only):

- Move the switch in the direction of arrow ⑤ or ⑥ to adjust the seat height up or down.

Forward and backward adjustment of seat back:

- Move the switch in the direction of arrow ⑦ or ⑧ to adjust the seat back forward or backward.

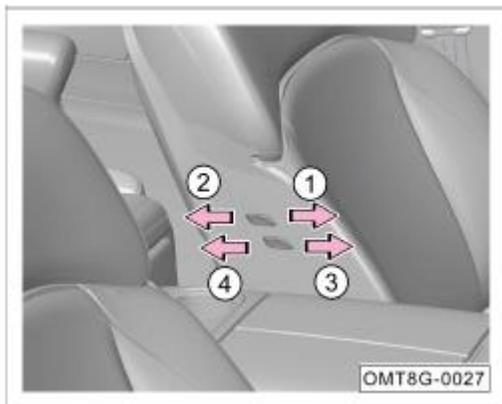
### Driver's seat lumbar support adjustment



- Press the switch in the direction of arrow ①, ②, ③, or ④ to adjust the lumbar support: up, down, forward, or backward, respectively.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Boss key\*



Forward and backward adjustment of seat back:

- Press the switch in the direction of arrow ① or ② to adjust the seat back forward or backward.

Forward and backward adjustment of seat:

- Press the switch in the direction of arrow ③ or ④ to slide the seat forward or backward.

### Seat ventilation/heating

When the vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear, click the soft key  at the lower right corner of the AV system display to open the seat ventilation/heating settings interface.

Heating:

- Click "Heating," and by default, the heating will activate at level 3. You can switch between levels 1, 2, and 3 by clicking the respective buttons.
- There are 3 seat heating gears: level 3 is the highest temperature, level 2 is medium, and level 1 is the lowest.

Ventilation:

- Click "Ventilation," and by default, the ventilation will activate at level 3. You can switch between levels 1, 2, and 3 by clicking the respective buttons.
- There are 3 seat ventilation gears: level 3 provides the highest airflow, level 2 is medium, and level 1 is the lowest.

Intelligent:

- Click "Intelligent" to activate the smart mode for seat ventilation and heating.

OFF:

- Click "Off" to disable the seat ventilation/heating function.

### CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the electrical components inside the seat, do not kneel on the seat or apply pressure to a specific point on the seat or backrest.
- If you do not feel any change in seat temperature after a long time of turning on the heating function, or if the seat feels too hot, immediately turn off the seat heating function and visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.
- If the seat ventilation function is turned on and the seat fan does not work, immediately turn off the seat ventilation function and visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

### WARNING

**If you are sensitive to temperature changes from the seat heating function, avoid using the seat heating to prevent burns from the heater.**

### Driver's seat memory

After adjusting the driver's seat to a comfortable position, you can store this current position as a memory position via the AV system. The next time you enter the vehicle, the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the memory position. You can also recall the driver's seat position through the AV system.

### NOTE

If you manually adjust the driver's seat position, the AV system may prompt you to save the new position or restore the previously saved position. (If you do not need to save or restore, simply ignore these prompts.) Confirm to save the position and complete the position update storage.

### WARNING

**Do not perform any related operations while driving, as the seat movement may distract you and lead to an accident.**

### Memory seat

This function can be enabled or disabled through the AV system settings. When the function is enabled:

- When the vehicle power is switched to the "OFF" gear and the driver's side door is opened, the seat will automatically move backward to the welcome position.
- When the vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear, the seat will automatically return to its original position.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

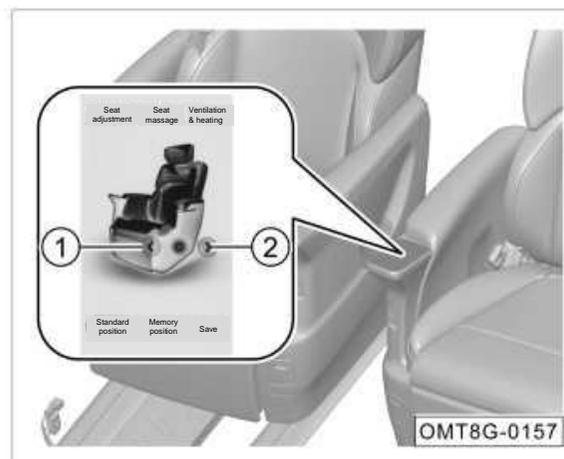
### 4.5.3 Second-row/rear seats

#### Manual forward and backward adjustment of second-row seats\*:



- Pull the adjustment handle in the direction of the arrow to slide the seat forward or backward. After releasing the adjustment handle, slightly slide the seat back and forth until the seat locking mechanism engages.

#### Electric forward and backward adjustment of second-row seats\*:



- Click the seat adjustment soft key, and then click soft key ① or soft key ② to slide the seat forward or backward.

#### Electric forward and backward adjustment of second-row seat backrest:

##### Armrest panel:

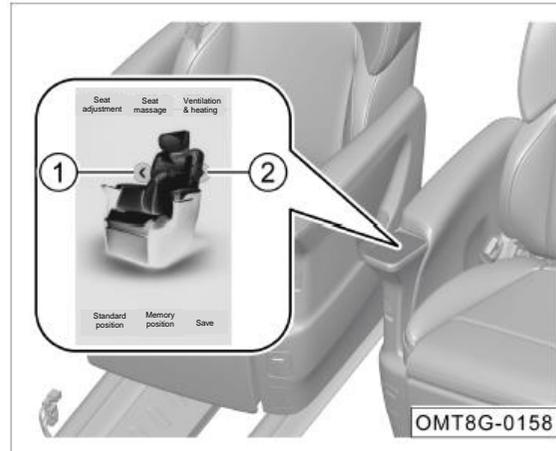


- When the panel is active (character lights are on), press button ① or button ② to adjust the seat back forward or backward. When the panel is in sleep mode (panel lights off), press the panel to activate it before making adjustments.

### iNOTE

When adjusting the seat backrest, avoid interference with the body trim panel. If the seat backrest needs to be adjusted to the maximum recline position, slide the seat to the foremost position.

### Armrest screen:



- Click the seat adjustment soft key, and then click soft key ① or soft key ② to adjust the seat backrest forward or backward.

### iNOTE

When adjusting the seat backrest, avoid interference with the body trim panel. If the seat backrest needs to be adjusted to the maximum recline position, slide the seat to the foremost position.

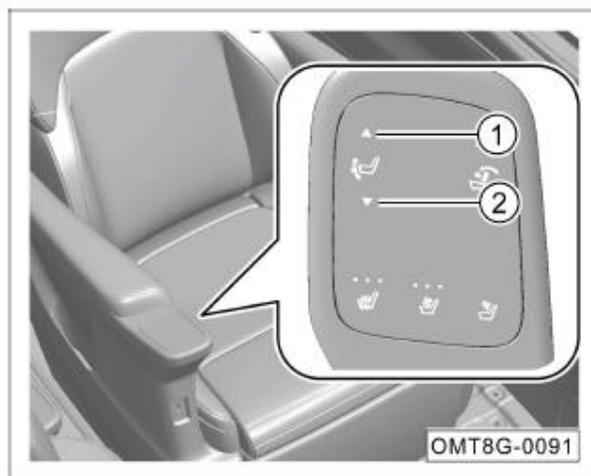
### iNOTE

- If the seat twists to one side or cannot be adjusted while using the electric seat forward/backward adjustment, visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.
- When measuring the depth of the seat cushion, be sure to adjust the longitudinal position of the seat to the middle of the slider rail and the seat back to the normal operating state (25°).
- When rear passengers enter or exit the vehicle, be cautious of sharp objects (such as high heels or umbrellas) that may get caught in the long slider rail grooves. Especially when women are wearing high heels, avoid inserting them into the grooves, as this could hinder movement and lead to a fall.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

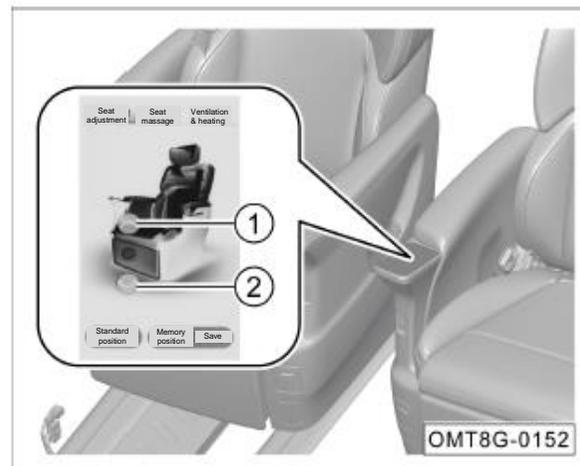
### Second-row seat largest adjustment

Armrest panel:



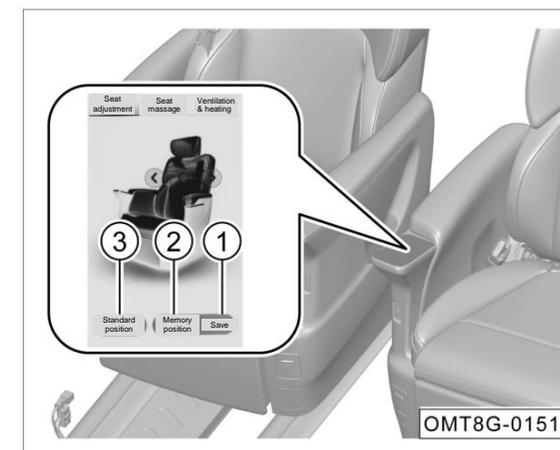
- When the panel is active (character lights are on), press button ① to raise the largest for support or press button ② to lower and retract the largest. When the panel is in sleep mode (panel lights off), press the panel to activate it before making adjustments.

Armrest screen:



- Click the seat adjustment soft key, and then click soft key ① or soft key ② to raise and extend the largest, or to lower and retract it.

### Second-row seat memory position\*



- Adjust the seat to a suitable position, click soft key ① to save the current seat position, click soft key ② to recall the saved seat position, and click soft key ③ to restore the seat to the standard position.

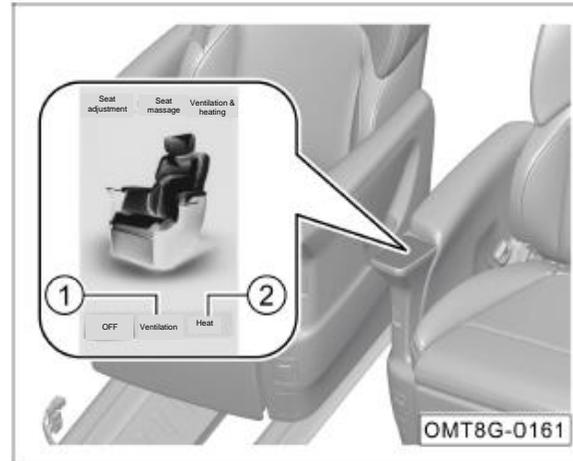
### Second-row seat heating/ventilation

1. Rear seat armrest panel/screen control armrest panel:



- The vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear.
- Press button ①, and the button indicator lamp will come on, activating the heating function for the corresponding seat.
- Press button ②, and the button indicator lamp will come on, activating the ventilation function for the corresponding seat.
- Each time the button is pressed, the gear will change once, cycling through "OFF-3-2-1-OFF".

### Armrest screen:



- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, click the ventilation/heating soft key.
- Click soft key ① to enter the airflow adjustment interface.
- Click soft key ② to enter the temperature adjustment interface.
- The seat heating temperature/ventilation airflow has 3 levels: level 3 is the highest, level 2 is medium, and level 1 is the lowest.

#### NOTE

Some models also allow controlling the second-row seat ventilation/heating function through the AV system.

#### CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the electrical components inside the seat, do not kneel on the seat or apply pressure to a specific point on the seat cushion or backrest.
- If the seat temperature does not change after turning on the heating function for an extended period, or if the seat feels too hot, immediately turn off the seat heating and visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

#### WARNING

**If you are sensitive to temperature changes, do not use the seat heating function to avoid burns from the heater.**

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Second-row seat massage

Armrest panel:

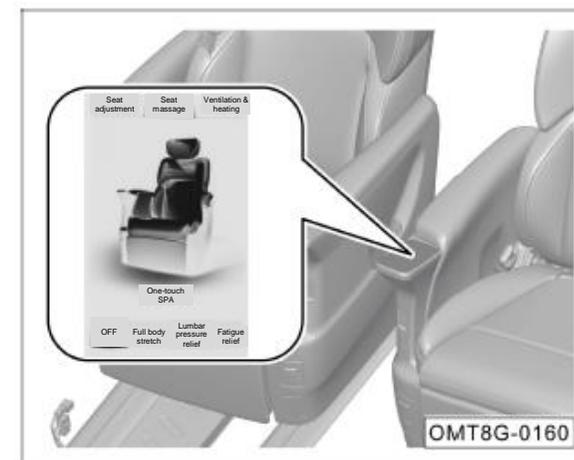


- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, press button ① to activate the seat massage function. Press the button again to turn off the massage function.

#### <sup>i</sup>NOTE

If the seat massage function is not turned off by pressing button ①, the massage will automatically stop after 15 minutes. To continue the massage, press button ① again.

Armrest screen:

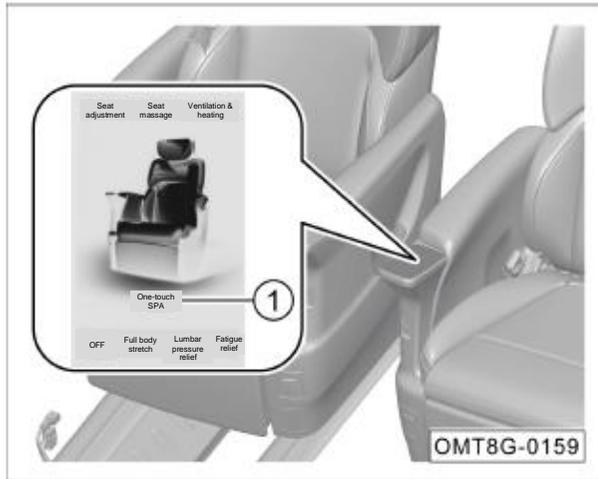


- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, click the seat massage soft key and select a massage mode to activate the seat massage function.
- Massage modes: Off, full body stretch, lumbar pressure relief, fatigue relief.

#### <sup>i</sup>NOTE

Some models also allow controlling the second-row seat massage function through the AV system.

### Second-row seat one-touch SPA\*



- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, click soft key ① to activate the One-touch SPA function, which will integrate ambient lighting, seat reclining, and massage functions to create a relaxing SPA atmosphere for second-row passengers. Click the "Turn Off SPA" soft key to exit the One-touch SPA function and restore the vehicle to its previous state.

- If the standard position (or welcome position, One-touch SPA position) of the left and right second-row seats is inconsistent, move the seat to the limit position (forward or backward) and press and hold for 1 second to restore the factory position.

#### NOTE

Before enabling or disabling the One-touch SPA function, make sure to check the front and rear seat spaces and the leg positions of the passengers to prevent accidental pinching.

### Armrest screen lock/unlock button\*



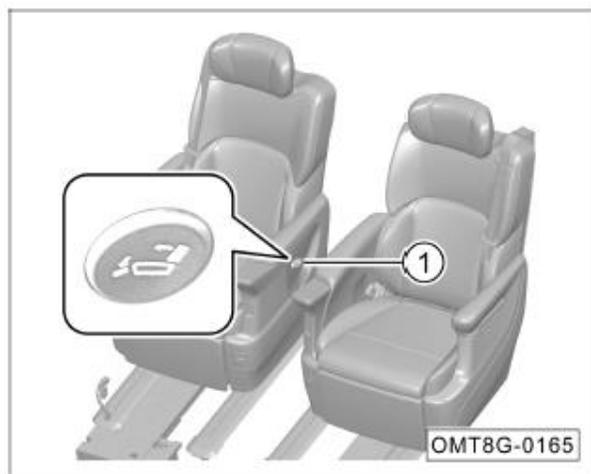
- Press the button at the front end of the armrest screen to control the screen's lock or unlock function (applicable only to models equipped with an armrest screen).

### Second-row seat welcome function\*

When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, you can enable or disable the second-row seat welcome function through the AV system settings. When the function is enabled, opening the sliding door will automatically adjust the corresponding seat to the welcome position.

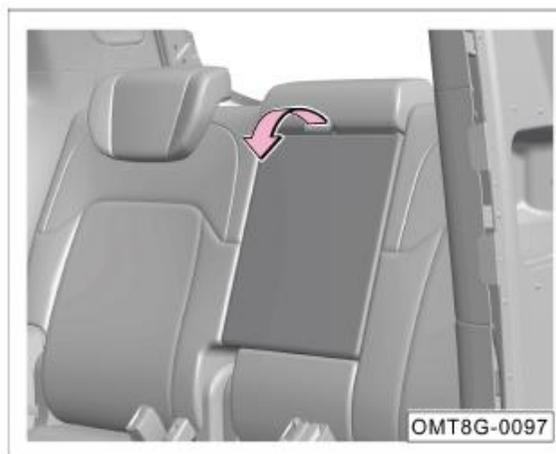
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Second-row seat One-touch reset\*



When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, briefly press the reset button ①, and the second-row seat's forward/backward position, backrest, and largest will return to the initial position. If there is a risk of leg pinching during the reset, pressing any seat adjustment button (forward/backward adjustment, backrest adjustment, or largest adjustment) will stop the seat reset.

### Rear seat central armrest

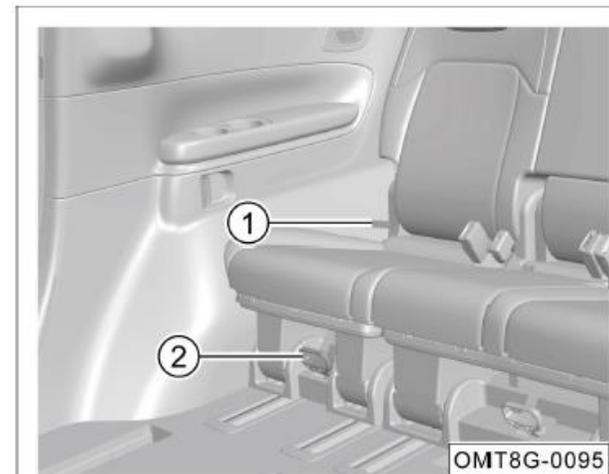


- Open the rear seat central armrest in the direction of the arrow.

#### NOTE

The central armrest is not for seating passengers. If needed for seating, return the central armrest to its position within the backrest.

### Rear seat adjustment

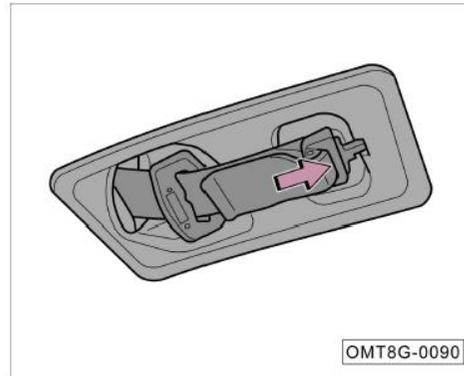


- Pull the cable ① forward to adjust the seat back forward or backward.
- Pull the adjustment handle ② upward to slide the seat forward or backward. After releasing the handle, slightly slide the seat until the locking mechanism engages.

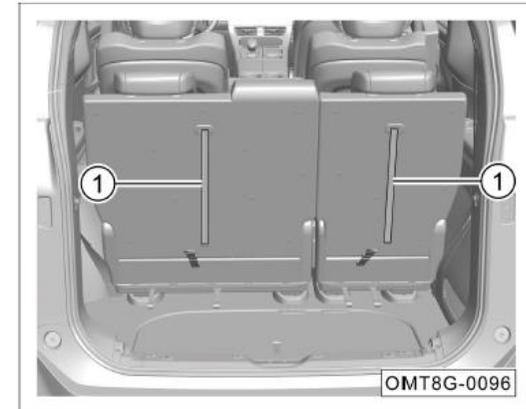
### Rear seat folding function



1. Detach the rear center seat belt as described => See page 17 and slowly retract it into the roof's dome slot.



2. Retract the seat belt into the dome slot in the roof.

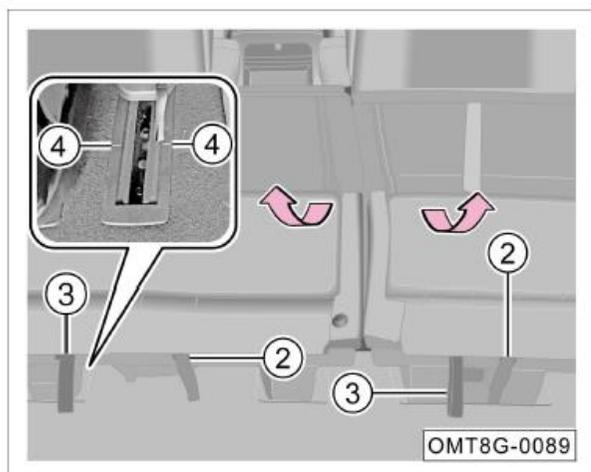


3. Lower the rear seat headrest to the lowest position.
4. Pull the backrest fold switch cable ① to unlock the seat and fold the backrest forward.

#### **i** NOTE

There is also a cable on the side of the seat, which functions the same as cable ①.

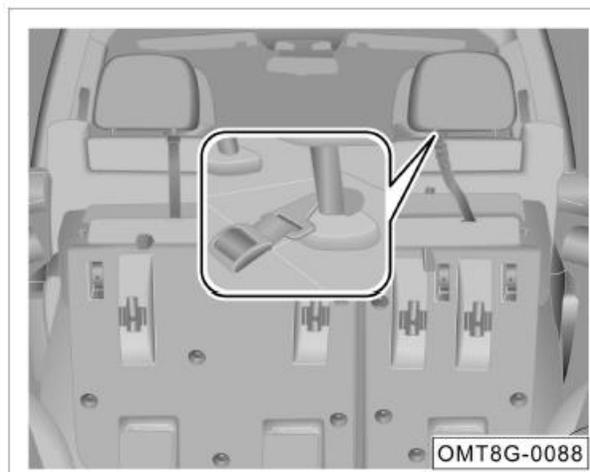
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment



5. To create more trunk storage space, fold the seat back, then pull the rail unlock strap ②, adjust the rail, and push the seat forward until the foldable mark ④ is exposed. Pull the strap ③ behind the seat cushion and fold the rear seat in the direction of the arrow.

### **i**NOTE

The rear seats can be split 60/40 for folding, providing various storage space combinations.



6. Fix the hook to the second-row seat headrest.
7. Release the hook and slowly lower the seat until it locks into place. Push the backrest upright to restore it.

### 4.5.4 Storage facilities

#### Storage compartment on door interior trim panel



- Place beverage bottles, map manuals and other articles here.

Storage tray under the cab guard



- This is suitable for placing small items.

Storage box in front of the instrument panel



- Press the cover of the storage box to automatically open it, and small items can be placed inside.

Storage box under the instrument panel



- For placing books, ipad, etc.

### NOTE

This area is designated for wireless phone charging. Ensure the phone's wireless charging function is turned off before placing items in this area. => See page 122.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Cup holder



#### Front cup holder

- Press the front cup holder cover to open it and use the cup holder for placing beverage bottles.

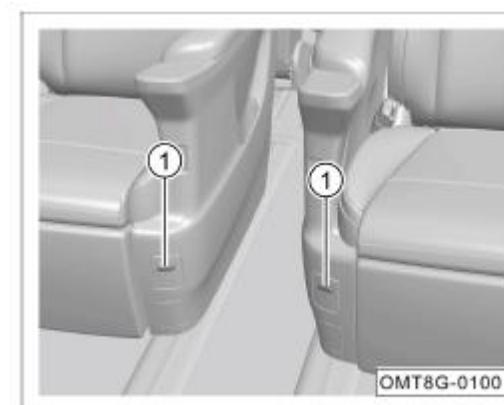
#### **i** NOTE

As this button area is not waterproof, beverage bottles placed in the front cup holders need to be kept secure to ensure that the beverage will not splash near the buttons and cause damage to the internal electronics.



#### Second-row cup holder (behind the center console)

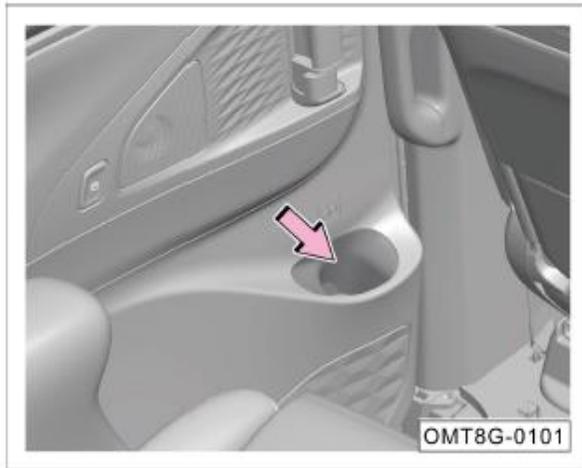
- Suitable for placing beverage bottles.



#### Hidden second-row seat cup holder

- Press button ① below the second-row seat to pop out the hidden cup holder, suitable for placing beverage bottles.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment



Sliding door cup holder

- Suitable for placing beverage bottles.



Rear seat cup holder

- Rear seat cup holders are on either side of the 3rd row seats for beverage bottles.



WARNING

**Do not place hot beverages in the cup holder, as they may spill and cause burns to driver and passengers while driving.**

Second-row seat side storage slot



- Suitable for placing a mobile phone.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Front passenger's glove box

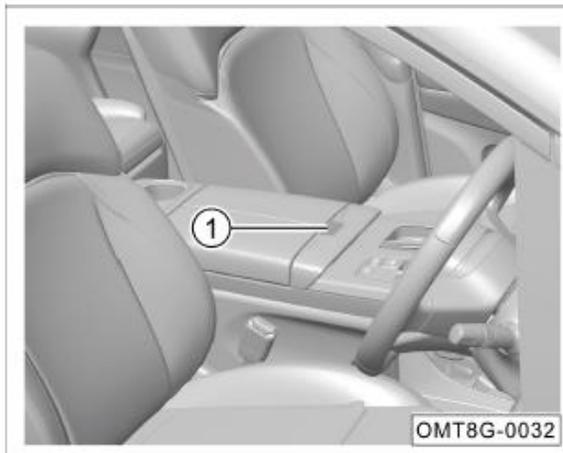


- Pull the opening handle to open the glove box to place items such as document bags.
- Push back to close the glove box until you hear a "click" sound.

#### ⚠ WARNING

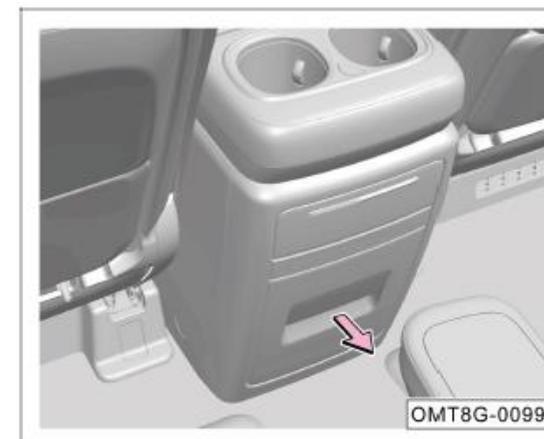
**The glove box shall be closed while driving, as items inside may fly out during emergency braking or in the event of an accident, causing injury to passengers.**

### Front central armrest box



- Press button ① to open the front central armrest box cover, which can store items such as wallets.

### Rear storage compartment of the front seat central armrest box



- Pull the storage compartment open in the direction of the arrow, suitable for placing beverage bottles and other items.
- Push the rear storage compartment back into place until you hear a "click" to close it.

### Storage pockets on the back of front seats\*



- Pull open the storage bag backwards to place books, foldable umbrellas and other articles.

### Small tray\*



- Press the unlock button ① to pop out the small tray, then lift it up until the tray is level.
- The small tray can be used while the vehicle is stationary for placing cups and signing documents.

### CAUTION

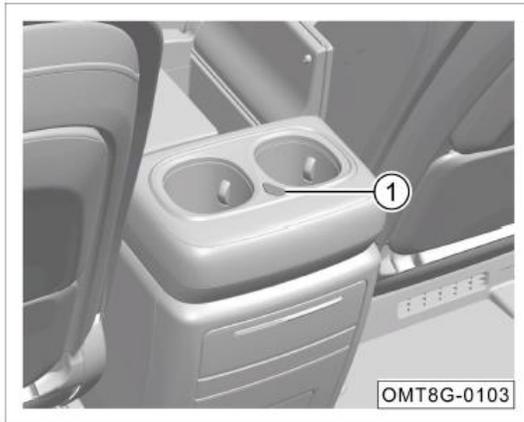
- Do not place your hands where the tray folds, as it may cause injury.
- The maximum weight capacity of the small tray is 10 kg. Do not overload it.

### △WARNING

**The small tray shall only be used while the vehicle is stationary. It is strictly prohibited to use the tray while the vehicle is in motion, as failure to follow this instruction could result in death or serious injury.**

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.5.5 Heated/cooled cup holder On and Off



- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, press button ① to cycle between "Heating → Cooling → Off." The button indicator lamp comes on when the heating or cooling function is on and goes out when the heating or cooling function is off.

#### **i** NOTE

- Only the right-side cup holder has heating/cooling functionality.
- The heating/cooling function mainly serves to maintain the temperature of beverages. Cold drinks will warm more slowly, and hot drinks will cool more slowly.

### 4.5.6 Power outlets/USB ports

#### 12V Power outlet

Front 12V power outlet



- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, open the power outlet cover and connect the charging device to use.

### 220V power outlet behind the central armrest box\*

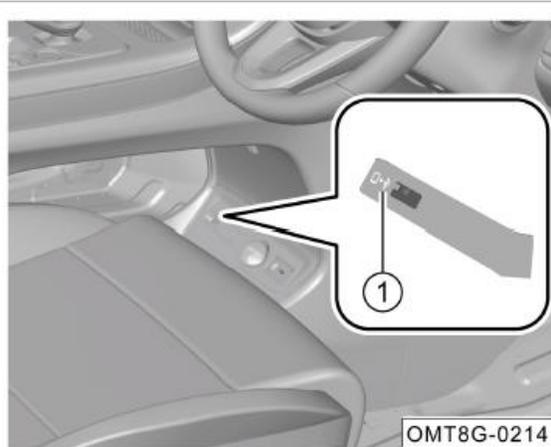


- Open the storage compartment.
- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect the charging device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

Supports devices up to 220V/150W.

### Front USB port

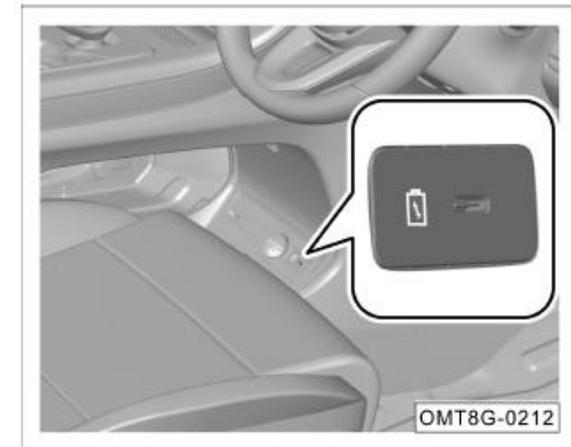


- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

- USB1 port ① supports charging, media playback, and OTG (mobile phone connection) functions.

### Front TYPE-C port



- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

The TYPE-C port is for charging only.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### USB port behind the central armrest box



- Press the cover, and the cover will automatically pop open.
- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

The USB port behind the central armrest is for charging only.

### TYPE-C port behind the central armrest box



- Press the cover, and the cover will automatically pop open.
- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

The TYPE-C port is for charging only.

### Second-row left seat USB port



- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

The USB port on the left side of the second-row seat is for charging only.

### Second-row right seat TYPE-C port



- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **iNOTE**

The TYPE-C port on the right side of the second-row seat is for charging only.

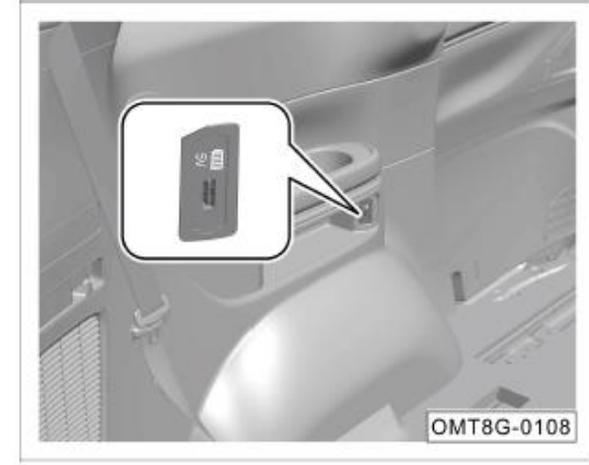
#### **CAUTION**

- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, do not connect power generating device to the power outlet.
- Only electrical devices in line with the national EMC standards may be used.
- When turning the vehicle power on or off, disconnect the charging device from the power outlet to avoid damage to electrical devices due to voltage fluctuations.

#### **WARNING**

- **Do not use the power outlet when no one is in the vehicle. Improper use of the power outlet can easily cause fires.**
- **Do not allow children to operate and use.**

### Rear seat left USB port



- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **iNOTE**

The USB port on the left side of the rear seat is for charging only.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Rear seat right USB port\*



- When the vehicle power is switched to "ACC" or "ON" gear, connect your device to use.

#### **i** NOTE

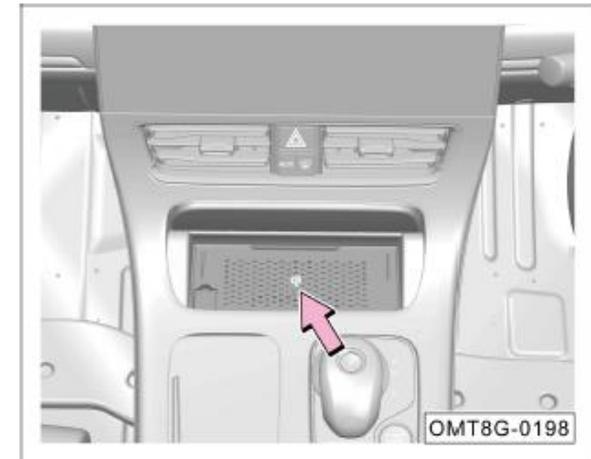
The USB port on the right side of the rear seat is for charging only.

### 4.5.7 Wireless mobile phone charging system

The wireless mobile phone charging system uses electromagnetic induction to charge the phone without the need for a wired connection.

#### **ⓘ** CAUTION

The wireless mobile phone charging system is not compatible with all phones. It only supports phones that are "Qi" certified. GAC Motor is not responsible for any accidents or damage caused by the use of non-certified phones or other wireless charging receivers.



The effective wireless charging area is located in the storage compartment in front of the gearshift lever. During charging, align the phone's charging coil with the "Qi" symbol to ensure proper charging.

### Wireless charging switch

When the vehicle power is in the "ACC" or "ON" gear:

- Method 1: Enable or disable the wireless charging system through the AV system settings interface.
- Method 2: Click the soft key  in the upper right corner of the AV system status bar to open the control panel and choose to enable or disable the wireless charging system.

#### NOTE

After enabling the wireless charging system, the icon status will change according to its use. Clicking on the icon will display the corresponding information.

### Symbol status

Symbol	Color	State
	Gray	OFF
	White or black	Standby
	Green	Charging/fully charged
	Red	Fault of charging

#### NOTE

- GAC Motor is not responsible for any problems caused by abnormal use (e.g., using an external wireless charging coil). If the product has been disassembled or modified, the free warranty service will be voided.
- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless charging may intermittently stop and resume. If the phone moves out of the charging area and stops charging, reposition it back into the charging zone.
- The wireless charging function requires proper operation on both the vehicle and phone ends. If either system malfunctions, charging may not occur.
- The charging of the mobile phone may be discontinued when the temperature is too high, and will be continued after the temperature decreases.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### CAUTION

- If the wireless mobile phone charging system malfunctions, stop using it immediately and visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.
- Do not spill liquids into the storage compartment as it may damage the wireless charge module and electronic components.
- Avoid placing heavy objects in the charging area to prevent damage to the wireless mobile phone charging system.
- If you find any metal objects between the phone and the charging area during wireless charging, do not remove them by hand immediately to avoid burns. Turn off the wireless charging function and wait for the area to cool before removing the object.
- Do not let small objects like pebbles, sand, crumbs, or paper scraps enter the charging area, as they may enter the internal fan and cause noise.

### WARNING

- **Do not place any objects between the phone and the charging pad while charging. Non-metal objects can reduce charging efficiency. Magnetic cards, chip cards, and similar items may get damaged. Keys, coins, or other metallic objects may heat up, creating safety risks.**
- **If you need to place metallic objects in the wireless charging area, be sure to turn off the wireless charging function first to avoid the risk of heating metal objects in the area.**
- **Do not leave your phone charging inside the vehicle when the driver is not present, as it may lead to unnecessary safety incidents.**

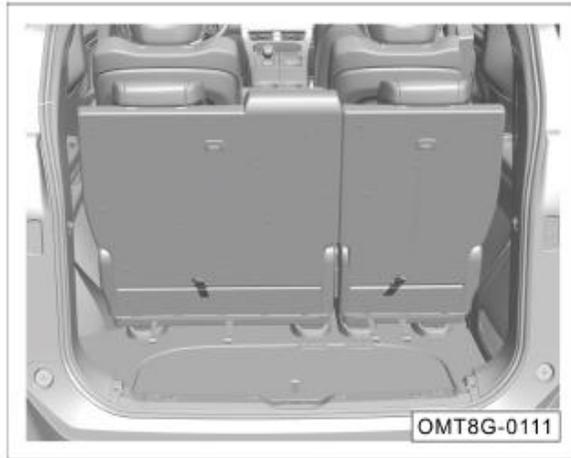
### 4.5.8 Trunk

To ensure the vehicle's stability during maneuvering, when loading the trunk, distribute items as evenly as possible, and place heavier objects at the front of the trunk.

### WARNING

- **The center of gravity of the vehicle carrying heavy objects may change. If heavy objects in the trunk suddenly slip, the maneuvering stability of the vehicle will change.**
- **Items in the trunk must be secured. In the event of emergency braking or an accident, unsecured items may fly forward, causing injury to passengers.**
- **Do not place fragile, flammable and explosive articles in the trunk!**

### Trunk volume



- Folding or flipping the rear seats can increase the trunk's storage capacity. => [See page 111](#).
- After flipping the left-side rear seat, the warning triangle and driver's tools can be accessed. => [See page 267](#)

#### CAUTION

When placing liquid items in the vehicle, ensure that the containers are sealed and do not leak. Avoid placing them on folded seat backs to prevent liquid from leaking and wetting the seats.

### 4.5.9 Accessories and modifications

Data labels and signs indicating important data and information about the use of the vehicle are affixed to the fuel tank cap, engine hood latch and other components of the delivered vehicle. Do not remove or damage these labels and signs, and always keep the data and information on them legible.

The vehicle is designed with the latest safety technologies by GAC to ensure excellent active safety and passive safety. Therefore, to maintain the superior characteristics of the vehicle, consult a GAC Motor authorized shop before installing or replacing any parts.

It is recommended to use accessories and parts approved by GAC. Parts other than GAC ones are not covered by the warranty.

#### WARNING

**The installation of inappropriate accessories or the modification of the vehicle may affect the maneuvering stability and other performance of the vehicle, and even may cause serious casualties.**

If you plan to install a car phone, alarm system, two-way radio communication device, or low-power AV system, ensure that these devices do not interfere with the vehicle's electronic control systems, such as the anti-lock brake system.

Before installing the accessories, please ensure that:

1. The accessories neither dim the lamps, nor affect the normal operation or performance of the car.
2. In vehicles equipped with side curtain airbags, do not install accessories on the B pillar or over the rear door windows. Because the installation in these areas will interfere with the normal function of the side curtain airbags.

#### NOTE

When additions (such as headrest, seat cover, floor mat, sun protection mat, etc.) are required, inferior additions may contain VOCs that do not meet national standards, and may emit unusual odors, causing hidden dangers that affect the air quality in the vehicle. Therefore, the genuine high-quality additions are recommended to ensure a comfortable driving environment.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

---

### Modification of vehicle

Dismantling the parts from the vehicle or replacing the genuine parts with non-GAC Motor parts will seriously damage the maneuvering stability and reliability of the vehicle. For example:

- If larger or smaller wheels and tires are installed, they will interfere with the normal operation of the anti-lock brake system (ABS) and other systems.
- The modification of the steering wheel and other safety devices may cause the system failure.

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Improper modification of the vehicle or installation of unsuitable accessories is likely to cause failures and accidents. The accessories and parts approved by GAC are always recommended, because the adaptability, reliability and safety of these accessories and parts have been strictly verified by GAC.**

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **Improper modification or maintenance of the vehicle may weaken the protective effect of the airbag, which results in system failure and causes fatal accidents. The accessories such as beverage cup holder and mobile phone holder shall not be installed or connected to the cover of the airbag components or within the working range of airbags.**
- **Improper operations or modifications of the vehicle (modification of the engine, brake system or components that affect the performance of wheels and tire) will affect the function of the SRS and cause serious casualties.**
- **Do not install wheels and tires that are not approved by GAC.**
- **The modifications of the front and the engine compartment of the vehicle may weaken the function of the pedestrian detection system and violate road traffic regulations.**

### 4.6 A/C system

#### 4.6.1 General description

The A/C filter can filter pollen and dust entering the air inlet of A/C system.

The A/C filter must be regularly cleaned and replaced according to the Regular Maintenance Schedule in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.

If the vehicle often runs in areas with poor air quality, the replacement interval of the A/C filter should be shortened. If the airflow from the A/C air outlet is not as smooth as usual, it may be due to the dirty and clogged A/C filter. In this case, clean or replace the A/C filter as soon as possible.

#### ⚠ WARNING

**If the air in the vehicle is foul, it will make the driver easily fatigued, lack of energy, and distracted, which is easy to cause an accident, resulting in personal injury or even death. Therefore, enable the air circulation mode according to the actual situation.**

#### 👁 CAUTION

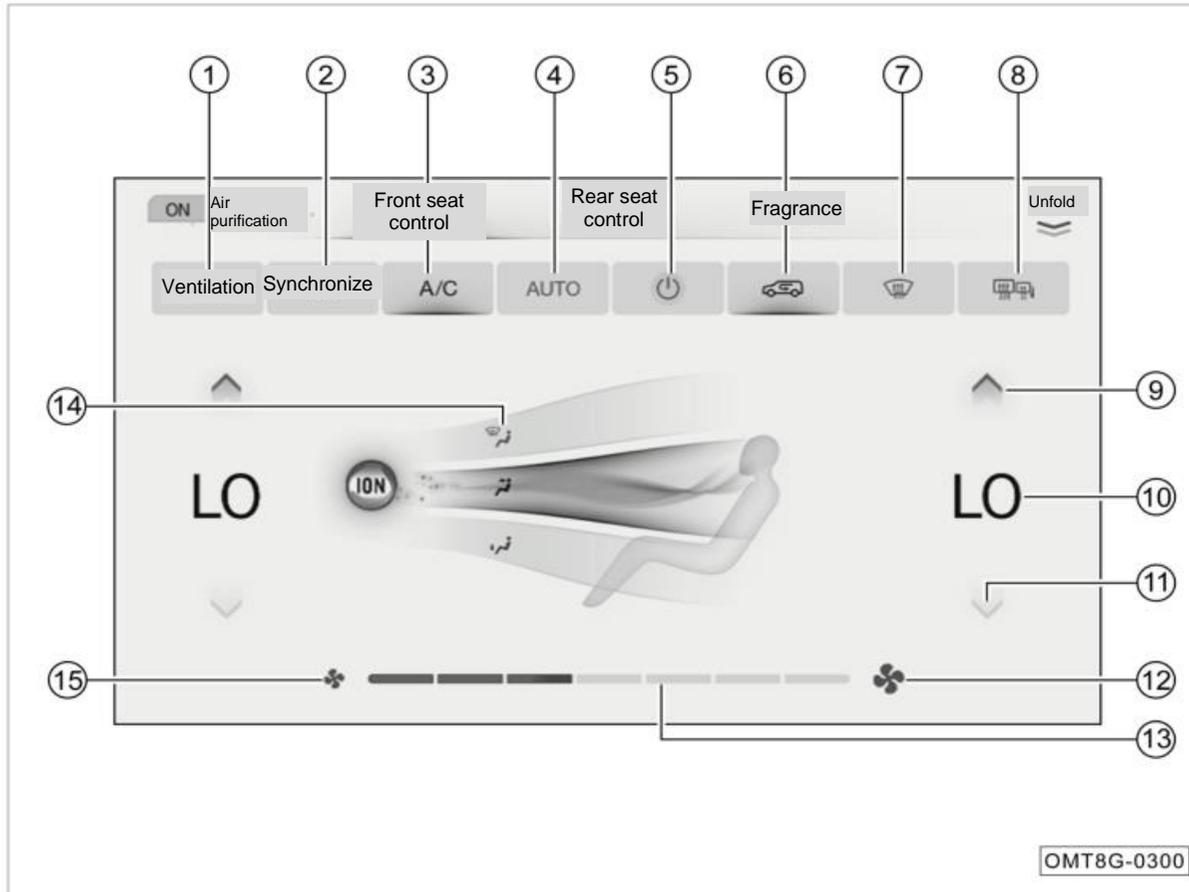
If the A/C system has failure (such as no cooling, odor, etc.), please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

#### i NOTE

- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, the A/C system can be operated.
- When the air conditioning is on, water may drip from the bottom of the vehicle. If the air conditioning is used for an extended period while the vehicle is stationary, water may accumulate under the vehicle, which is a normal phenomenon.
- Regularly clear snow, ice, and leaves from the front windshield wiper cover to prevent blockage of the air intake for the A/C system, ensuring normal airflow into the system.
- The A/C system can achieve its maximum effect with windows and sunroof\* closed. However, when the inside temperature is high under hot sun, open the windows briefly to dissipate the inside heat, and then enable the A/C for cooling.
- It is recommended to avoid keeping the doors or windows open for extended periods while the air conditioning is running. This helps prevent external humid air from causing condensation at the air vents. A small amount of condensation in hot and humid weather is normal.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.6.2 A/C system



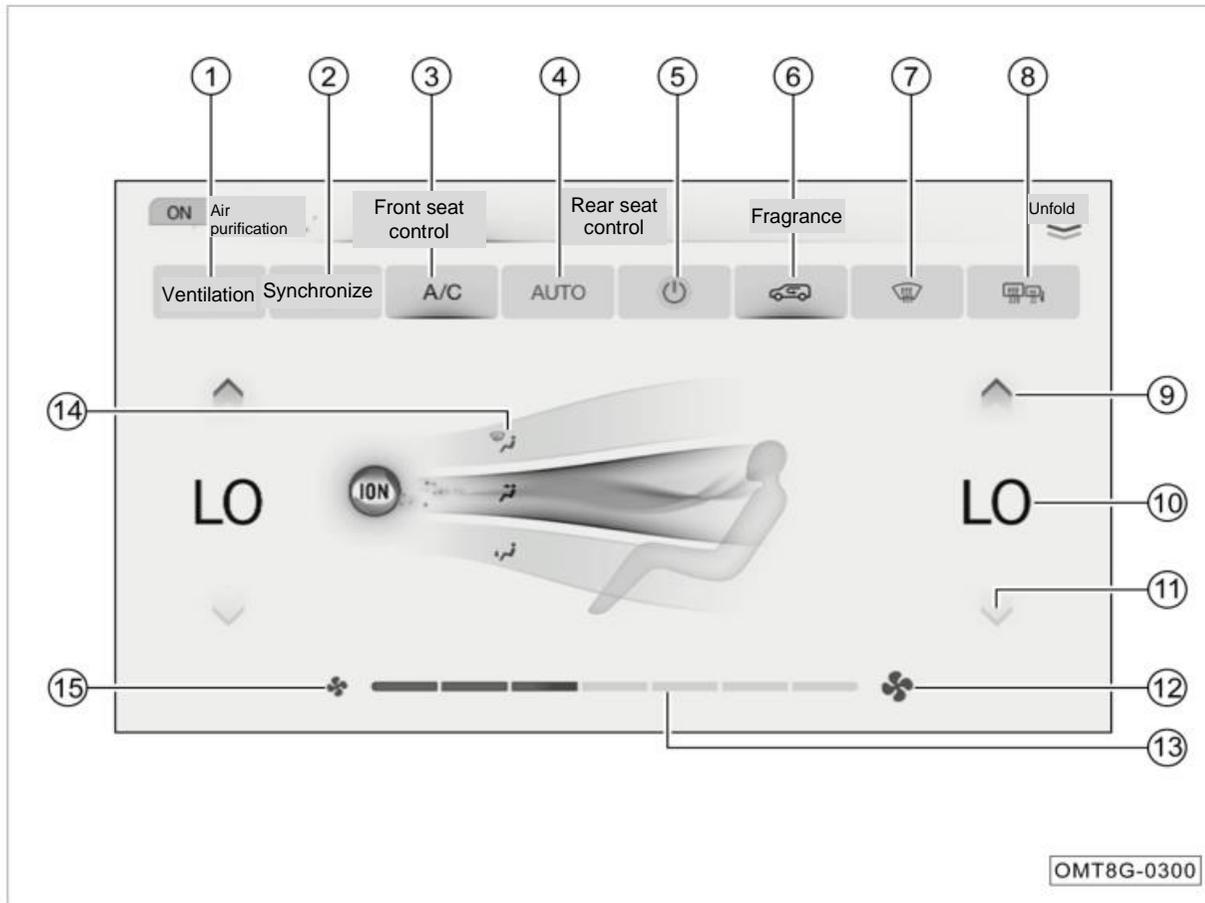
#### Front air conditioning control interface description

- ① "Ventilation" soft key
- ② "Sync" soft key
- ③ A/C cooling soft key
- ④ AUTO AUTO mode soft key
- ⑤ Air conditioning ON/OFF soft key
- ⑥ Automatic air recirculation/external circulation soft key
- ⑦ Front windshield defrosting/defogging soft key
- ⑧ Rear windshield and exterior rearview mirror defrosting/defogging soft key
- ⑨ Temperature increase soft key
- ⑩ Temperature display
- ⑪ Temperature decrease soft key
- ⑫ Fan speed increase soft key

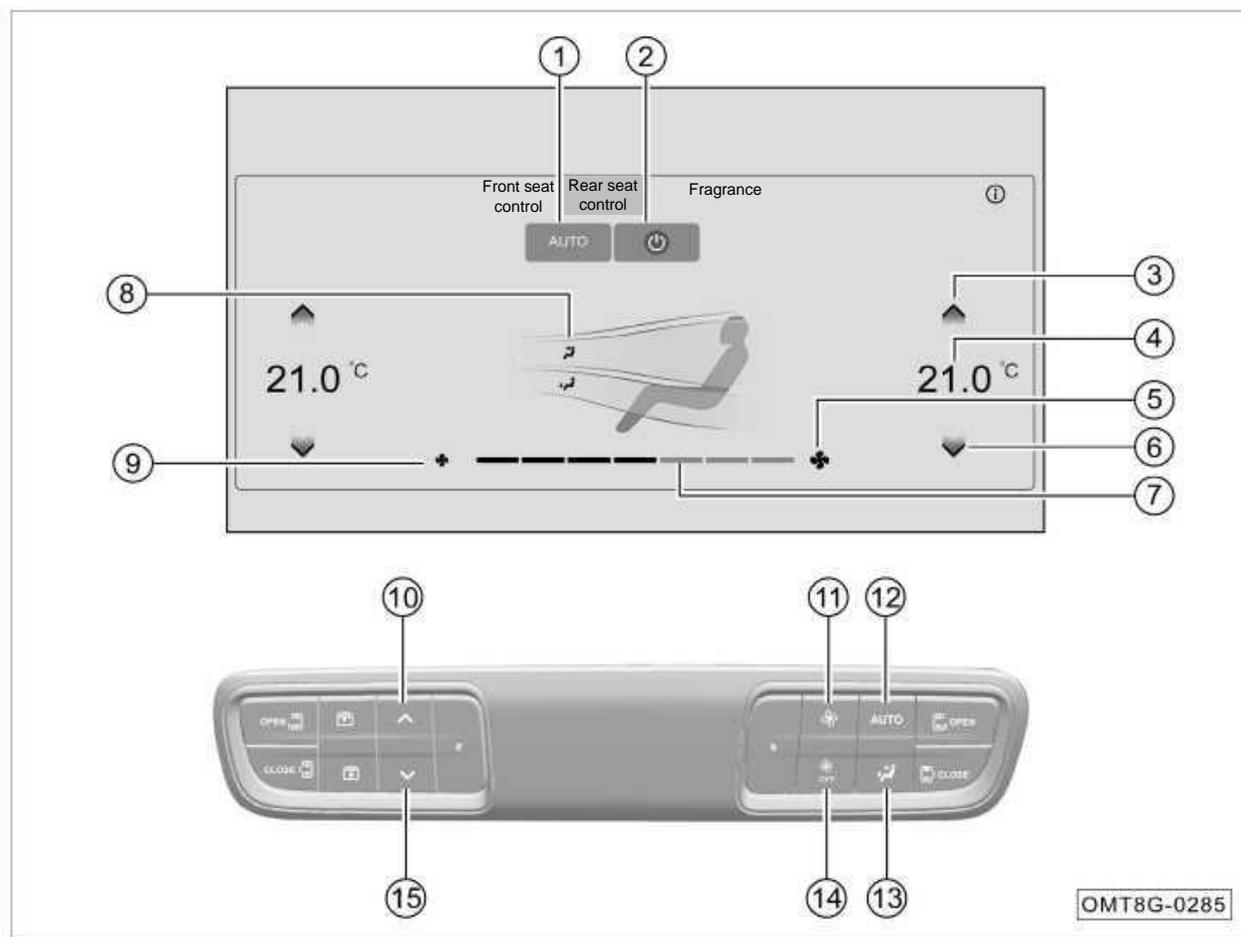
## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Front air conditioning control interface description

- ⑬ Fan speed gear level display
- ⑭  Air supply mode soft key
- ⑮  Fan speed decrease soft key



## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

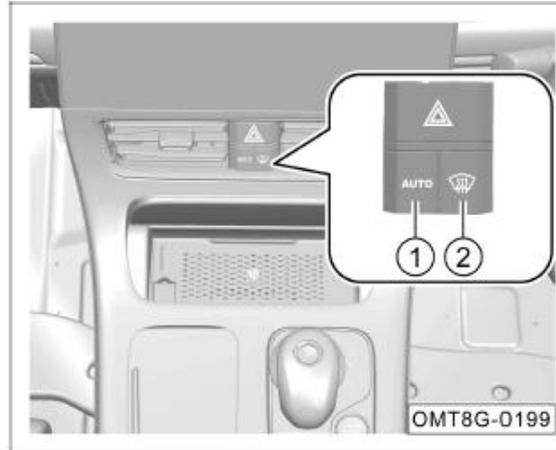


### Rear air conditioning control interface description

- ① AUTO AUTO mode soft key
- ② ⏻ Air conditioning ON/OFF soft key
- ③ ^ Temperature increase soft key
- ④ Temperature display
- ⑤ ♣ Fan speed increase soft key
- ⑥ v Temperature decrease soft key
- ⑦ Fan speed gear level display
- ⑧ ↺ Rear air supply mode selection soft key
- ⑨ ♣ Fan speed decrease soft key

- ⑩ ^ Temperature increase button
- ⑪ ⌘ Rear fan speed increase button
- ⑫ AUTO AUTO mode button
- ⑬ ↻ Air supply mode switch button
- ⑭ ⌘ Fan speed decrease/OFF button
- ⑮ v Temperature decrease button

### Air conditioning control buttons



- ① AUTO button
- ② Front windshield defrosting/defogging button

### Air conditioning fragrance\*

The air fragrance system can improve the air quality inside the vehicle. The fragrance is released using a unique pulsed system, which helps avoid olfactory habituation.

#### Conditions for use

1. It is recommended to activate the fragrance system while the air conditioning is running for a better experience.
2. The interior temperature should be between 10°C and 28°C.
3. The fragrance cartridge is installed, and its lifespan has not expired.

#### Turn the air conditioning fragrance on/off

- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, switch the AV system to the A/C system control interface, and click the "Fragrance" soft key to access the fragrance control screen.
- Select the desired fragrance type to enter the corresponding fragrance control interface, where you can turn the fragrance on/off and adjust its intensity.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

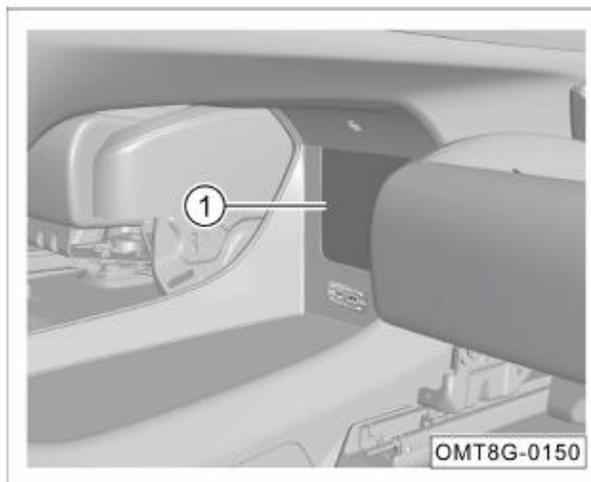
### Fragrance cartridge and fragrance description

- If the fragrance cartridge is not installed, the air conditioning interface will not display the fragrance soft key, and the AV system display will show "No fragrance cartridge installed, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for installation".

#### ⓘ CAUTION

- When the remaining amount of a fragrance block drops to 10%, and you select that fragrance, a pop-up notification will appear saying: "Fragrance is about to run out, please replace it soon". This reminder will appear each time you switch to the corresponding fragrance.
- When the remaining amount of a fragrance block reaches 0%, the corresponding fragrance button on the fragrance control interface will display "Fragrance type is used up", and the button will be grayed out.
- Once the fragrance block is used up, it is recommended to visit a GAC Motor authorized shop to replace the block before the fragrance function can be used again.

### Fragrance cartridge



- The fragrance cartridge is installed inside the passenger-side instrument panel. Replacing the fragrance block requires disassembling cover plate ①. It is recommended to visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for the replacement of fragrance blocks.

### 4.6.3 A/C air outlet

#### Instrument panel side air outlets



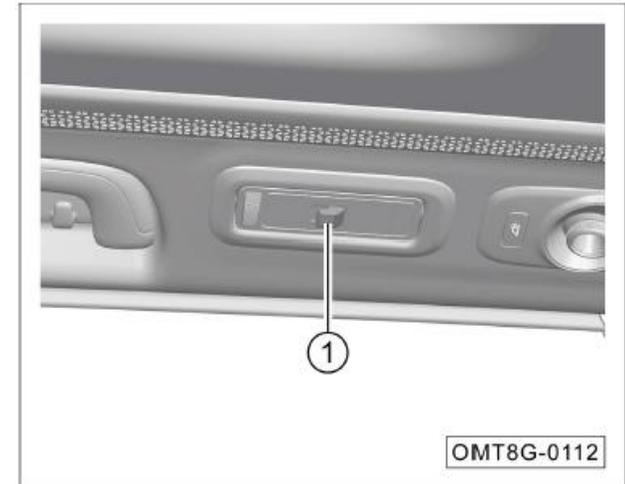
- Move the vent control tab ① to adjust the airflow direction or to close the air outlet.

#### Instrument panel central air outlet



- Move the vent control tab ① to adjust the airflow direction or to close the air outlet.

#### Roof air outlet



- Move the vent control tab ① to adjust the airflow direction or to close the air outlet.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.7 In-vehicle multimedia

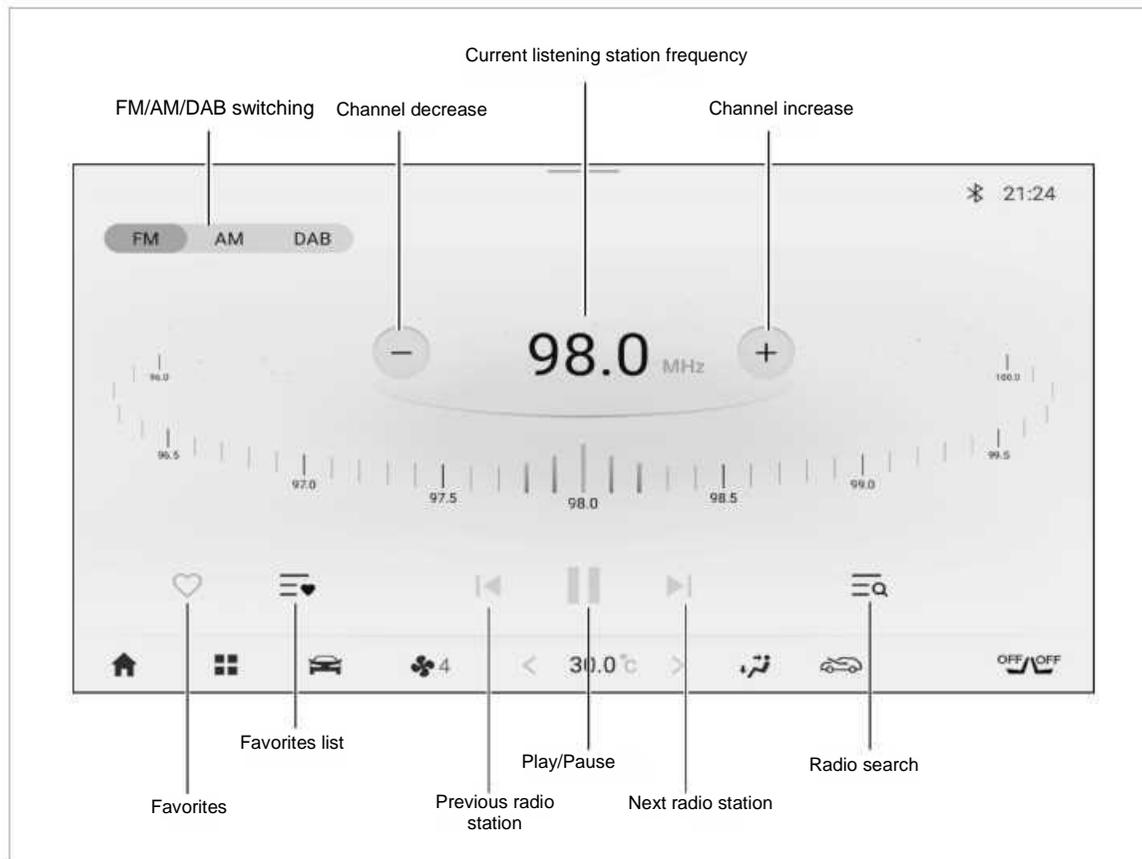
#### 4.7.1 Basic operations



Main interface function description:

- ① Smart card area
- ② Drop-down menu bar area
- ③ Smart scenario area
- ④ System status bar
- ⑤ Bottom toolbar
- ⑥ Application menu interface

### 4.7.2 Radio

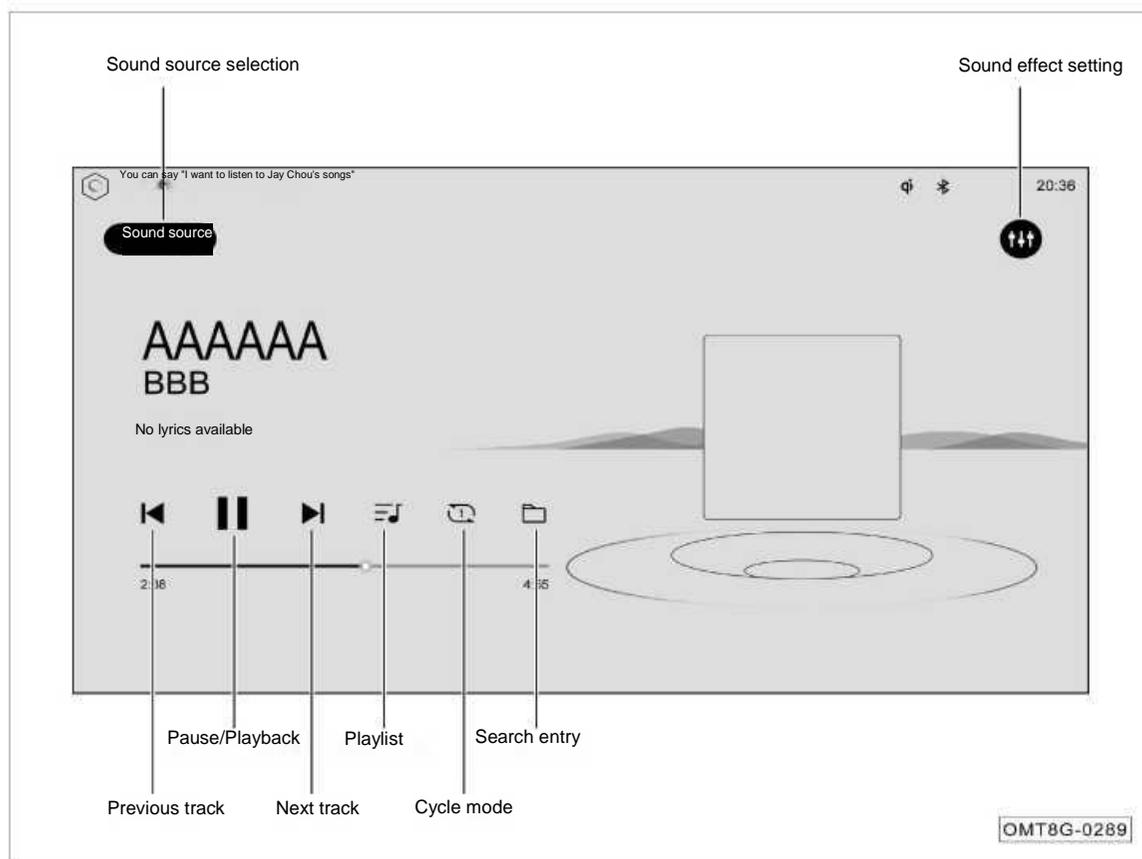


Enter the radio playback interface through the following ways:

- Click the "Radio" card on the main interface of the AV system to enter the radio playback interface.
- Press the sound source switch button on the right side of the steering wheel repeatedly to switch to the radio playback interface.
- Click the "Radio" soft key in the application menu interface to enter the radio playback interface.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### 4.7.3 Local music



Enter the local music playback interface in the following ways:

- Click the "Media" card on the main interface to enter the local music interface.
- Press the sound source switch button on the right side of the steering wheel repeatedly to switch to the local music interface.
- Click the "Music" soft key in the application menu interface to enter the local music interface.

#### NOTE

The AV system only supports USB devices in FAT16/32, exFAT, and NTFS formats, and supports lossless music.

### 4.7.4 Bluetooth function

#### Enter Bluetooth mode

Enter the Bluetooth mode in the following ways:

- Click the "Phone" soft key in the application menu to enter Bluetooth mode.
- Click the Bluetooth icon in the top-right corner of the AV system status bar  to enter Bluetooth mode.

#### Bluetooth display mode

After clicking the "Bluetooth Switch" soft key  to enable Bluetooth, the car system will automatically search for nearby Bluetooth devices. The Bluetooth connection interface has two display modes, "radar" and "list".

##### Radar display mode

- Bluetooth device: The names of nearby Bluetooth devices that can be connected will be displayed, and select the device to be connected and click to connect it.
- Switch to list display mode: Click the soft key  to switch to the list mode, the number displayed in the list mode is the number of Bluetooth devices that can be connected around.

##### List display mode

- Bluetooth device: Bluetooth devices that can be connected around will be displayed in a list.
- Switch to radar display mode: Click the soft key  to switch to radar display mode, showing the number of nearby Bluetooth devices available for connection.

#### Bluetooth function introduction

Once Bluetooth is connected, the Bluetooth icon in the status bar will light up, and the name of the connected Bluetooth device will be displayed on the Bluetooth connection interface:

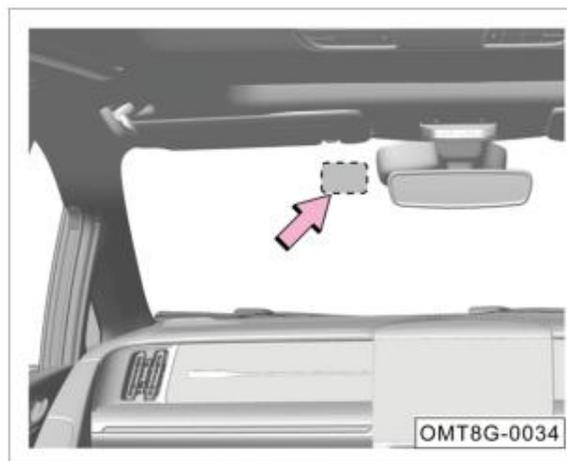
- Click the sync soft key  to synchronize phone numbers, contacts, and other information from the mobile device.
- Click the sync soft key  to synchronize the song name information for Bluetooth music playback.
- Click the disconnect soft key  to disconnect the Bluetooth connection.

## 4. Operation of systems and equipment

### Fault of bluetooth connection

Possible cause	Action
The device's Bluetooth function is set incorrectly	Set the device's Bluetooth so that it can be "Visible to Everyone" or can be searched or opened for detection
The current device is not compatible with the in-car Bluetooth system	Confirm the compatibility of the device with the Bluetooth version, update the operating system of the mobile phone to the latest version and try again
The mobile phone's Bluetooth was connected to other devices	It is recommended to delete the Bluetooth devices that were connected

### 4.8 Microwave window



- The microwave sensor window is positioned on the front windshield glass, aligned with the interior rearview mirror, toward the left side.

#### NOTE

The microwave window is available for installation of ETC debit electronic cards.

## 5.1 Starting and drivings

### 5.1.1 START/STOP button



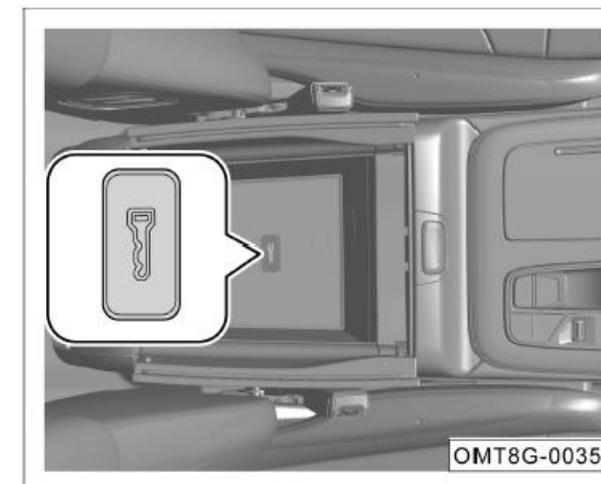
The START/STOP button works only when the intelligent remote control key is detected in the vehicle.

When the transmission gearshift lever is in the "P" gear and the brake pedal is pressed down, the START/STOP button backlight turns green. Press the START/STOP button, and the "READY" indicator lamp on the instrument cluster module (ICM) comes on, and the vehicle starts.

When the transmission gearshift lever is moved to "P" gear and the brake pedal is not depressed, press the START/STOP button to switch the gears in the following order: "OFF → ACC → ON → OFF".

- OFF: The START/STOP button backlight is white, and the START/STOP button is turned off.
- ACC: The START/STOP button backlight is orange, and accessories such as the power outlet and USB port are available for use.
- ON: The START/STOP button backlight is orange, the instrument cluster module (ICM) backlight comes on, and all electrical devices are available for use.

### Limphone mode



If the instrument cluster display shows the NOTE "Key not detected" due to low battery in the intelligent remote control key, you can place the intelligent remote control key horizontally on the key symbol at the bottom of the front armrest box. Then, press the START/STOP button to switch to the "ACC" or "ON" gear, or press down the brake pedal. Once the START/STOP button backlight turns green, press the START/STOP button again, and the "READY" indicator lamp on the instrument cluster display will come on, and the vehicle will start.

This method is intended for emergency starting. Please replace the battery of the intelligent remote control key as soon as possible.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.1.2 Vehicle start

1. Enter the vehicle with the intelligent remote control key.
2. Make sure the gear is in "P".
3. Depress the brake pedal and make sure that the indicator lamp of the ENGINE START/STOP button is in green.
4. Press down the START/STOP button, and the "READY" indicator lamp on the instrument cluster display will come on, and the vehicle will start.

#### NOTE

If the powertrain battery level is low, the system will automatically start the engine when starting the vehicle.

#### CAUTION

If the low-voltage battery is depleted and the vehicle cannot be started, you can attempt an emergency start using jumper cables. => [See page 277](#)

#### WARNING

**Do not keep starting the engine for a long time in a poorly ventilated place or an enclosed place. The engine exhaust contains harmful gases, which can make people comatose and even suffocate.**

### 5.1.3 Vehicle locking

1. Park the vehicle steady and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the gear to "P".
3. Release the brake pedal, press down the START/STOP button, and turn off the vehicle.

#### NOTE

After the vehicle is turned off, the radiator fan may continue to operate for a period of time.

#### CAUTION

- When parking, the parking brake should be applied, and the vehicle, all lamps, and other electrical devices should be turned off.
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to take your valuables and remote control key with you, and confirm that the sunroof, windows, doors, and liftgate are all locked.
- Before locking the vehicle, ensure that no one and no other living beings are inside.

### Emergency power off

If you must stop the vehicle in an emergency, press down the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle as much as possible. Then, press and hold the START/STOP button or quickly press the START/STOP button three times to turn off the vehicle and park it in a safe location.

After powering off for a few seconds, you can restart the vehicle by following these steps:

- After switching the gear to “P”, press down the START/STOP button to start the vehicle.

#### ⚠WARNING

**It is strictly prohibited to power off the vehicle while it is in normal operation, as this may cause damage to the vehicle, lead to a failure of safety systems and power steering, and result in a traffic accident.**

### 5.1.4 Gear description



The gearshift lever positions are “P, R, N, D.” When the vehicle power is in the “ON” position, changing the gear will display the corresponding gear information on the instrument cluster module (ICM).

#### ⚠WARNING

The “R” or “P” gear can be engaged only when the vehicle is completely stationary, otherwise the transmission will be damaged.

### P: Parking gear



- After the vehicle is completely stopped, press this gear to realize parking.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### NOTE

- The instrument shows the current gear display information. Please check it carefully.
- When the vehicle is not started, operating the gearshift lever will not allow entry into the desired drive gear "D" or reverse gear "R".
- When the gearshift system fails and "P" position cannot be moved out, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

### **R: Reverse gear**

- Switch this gear when reversing.
- To bring the vehicle to a complete stop, when the gear is in "P", "N", or "D", press down the brake pedal and push the gearshift lever forward to switch to "R".

### **N: Neutral gear**

- When the gear is in "P", press down the brake pedal, and push the gearshift lever forward to the first resistance position; the gear will switch to "N".
- When the gear is in "D", press down the brake pedal, and push the gearshift lever forward to the first resistance position; the gear will switch to "N."
- When the gear is in "R", press down the brake pedal, and push the gearshift lever forward to the first resistance position; the gear will switch to "N".

### **D: Drive gear**

- Shift into this gear during normal driving.
- Depress the brake pedal and pull the gearshift lever backward to shift from "P", "N", or "R" position to "D" position.

### **Driving mode**

- Energy-saving mode: In this mode, the power response is gentle, allowing for greater mileage.
- Comfort mode: In this mode, the power response is moderate, providing a comfortable driving experience and moderate mileage.
- Sport mode: In this mode, the power response is quick, offering more driving enjoyment and maximizing acceleration.

### Driving mode selection



1. With the vehicle power set to the "ON" gear, you can toggle the driving mode (D-MODE) switch up or down to cycle through "Energy-saving mode → Comfort mode → Sport mode → Energy-saving mode." The target driving mode is cyclically switched.

### NOTE

- In addition to the methods mentioned above, you can also select and switch driving modes using the  buttons on the bottom toolbar of the AV system control panel or the "Energy Management" app in the application menu.
- To remember the current driving mode, you need to enable the "Remember Current Vehicle Mode" function in the AV system settings. Once enabled, the vehicle will default to the current driving mode the next time it is started.

### Driving mode setting

- Method 1: Set the current driving mode parameters through the AV system application menu: "Energy Management → Driving Mode → Driving Mode Settings".
- Method 2: By toggling the driving mode (D-MODE) switch, the AV system will display the "Driving Mode" interface. Click on "Driving Mode Settings" to set the current driving mode parameters.

## 5. Driving guide

### Energy models

The energy modes include: Intelligent Hybrid, Electric First, and Battery Saver.

- Intelligent Hybrid: Recommended for users where charging is not convenient, as it intelligently allocates power based on multiple factors.
- Electric First: Recommended for users where charging is convenient, as it prioritizes the use of the powertrain battery. When the battery is low, the system will start the engine based on the vehicle's usage conditions.
- Battery Saver: Select this mode when it is necessary to conserve battery power. In this mode, battery power settings can be configured. When the battery level falls below the set threshold, the system will start the engine based on the vehicle's usage conditions.

### Energy model options

- Method 1: You can quickly switch energy modes by clicking the control panel button  on the bottom toolbar of the AV system to access the control panel interface.
- Method 2: Select the energy mode through the AV system application menu: "Energy Management → Energy Mode".

### NOTE

- If the external temperature is low and the vehicle's air conditioning is set to heating, the engine may start in Electric First mode.
- In Battery Saver mode, the fuel consumption displayed on the instrument cluster module (ICM) may temporarily increase.
- When the vehicle is at idle speed and the energy mode is set to Battery Saver, the vehicle will not execute the intended battery-saving function or respond to the battery-saving settings when stationary, and the engine may start. The battery-saving function will only be executed when the vehicle speed exceeds a certain threshold.
- To remember the current energy mode, you can enable the "Remember Current Vehicle Mode" function in the AV system settings. Once enabled, the vehicle will default to the current energy mode the next time it is started.

5.2 Brake system

5.2.1 Service brake

Under some driving conditions and weather conditions, squeaks, screams or other noises may be heard from brakes when the brake pedal is depressed for the first time or lightly stepped on, or braking noise during light or moderate braking, especially for new vehicles (as their brakes have undergone running-in), which is normal, and does not constitute a failure symptom of brake system nor has effects on the braking safety and performance.

**CAUTION**

- If there is metal friction rasp, the brake lining may be worn to the limit. Please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair as soon as possible.
- If the steering wheel vibrates or twitches continuously during braking, go to GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair as soon as possible.

**NOTE**

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal during driving, otherwise the brake will heat up to an abnormally high temperature, and the brake linings and brake discs will wear excessively, increasing the braking distance.
- Continuous application of the brake will cause the brake overheat and result in a temporary loss of braking performance.
- Under normal driving conditions, the brake linings will wear down, and dust from the brake linings will accumulate on the wheels. This wheel dust is unavoidable and will not affect braking performance.
- If rust and corrosion exist because the brake linings and brake discs are not used or used rarely, noise may be heard from brakes for the first use. This is normal. It is recommended that braking be carried out several times in a safe area and under good road conditions to clean the brake linings and brake discs.

Brake booster

The brake booster is used to increase the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal. If the brake booster does not work properly due to a fault, or when the vehicle is towed, the force on the brake pedal must be increased to compensate for the assist power loss of brake booster.

**WARNING**

- **Never turn off the vehicle and let it coast on inertia, as this can easily lead to an accident! Because the brake booster does not work at this moment, the braking distance will be greatly increased.**
- **If the brake booster is not working (for example, when the vehicle is being towed), the brake pedal must be depressed with a much greater force than normal.**

## 5. Driving guide

### Braking effect and braking distance

The braking effect and braking distance are mainly depended on the driving environment, road conditions and driving style.

Worn brake linings do not provide effective braking. The wear rate of the brake linings primarily depends on the vehicle's usage conditions and driving style. If the vehicle is frequently driven in urban areas, on short trips, or used for racing, it is recommended to increase the frequency of inspecting the thickness of the brake linings within the maintenance cycle specified in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.

After wading through water, during heavy rain, or after washing the vehicle, the brake linings may become damp or freeze (in winter), leading to reduced braking performance. In this case, it is necessary to gently press the brake pedal to generate heat through the brake friction, evaporate the moisture, and restore braking effectiveness.

#### ⚠WARNING

**A new tire and brake lining having not undergone running-in do not have the best adhesion and friction characteristics.**

- **The new tires do not have the best adhesion, so you must drive carefully within the first 500 km to prevent accidents!**
- **During the initial 200 to 300 kilometers, new brake linings do not possess optimal friction characteristics, resulting in slightly reduced braking effectiveness; therefore, a break-in period is necessary. The braking effect can be compensated by increasing the force applied to the brake pedal. New brake linings must also be subject to running-in.**
- **During driving, do not get too close to other vehicles or bring the vehicle to a situation where emergency braking is necessary. Take care especially when driving with a new tire and new brake lining having not undergone running-in, for fear of accidents!**

#### ⚠WARNING

**When the brakes are damp, frozen, or when the vehicle travels on salt-treated roads, braking may be delayed, resulting in increased braking distances. Therefore, it is essential to exercise caution to prevent accidents.**

- **A longer braking distance and a fault in the brake system will increase the accident rate.**
- **Lightly depress the brake pedal to check the brake.**
- **Lightly depress the brake pedal to dry the brake or remove ice or anti-skid salt from the brake.**

### ⚠WARNING

**When the brake is overheated, braking effects will reduce, increasing the braking distance!**

- Take care to avoid overheating brakes.
- When the vehicle is descending, the load on the brakes increases, making it more susceptible to overheating.
- Do not keep depressing the brake pedal. Otherwise, the brake will overheat and the braking distance will increase. Brake the vehicle intermittently according to road and traffic conditions.

### ⚠WARNING

- **The brake fluid must be changed every two years. If the brake fluid stays in the brake system for a long period, air resistance may occur in the pipeline during braking, reducing the braking effect significantly and impair driving safety, and even causing failure of the brake system, resulting in an accident thereby!**
- **If the front spoiler is out of standard or damaged, it will block the cooling airflow to brakes, causing brakes to overheat and reducing the braking effect.**

### 5.2.2 Electric park brake system/EPB system

The driver can apply or release the parking brake by operating the EPB system button. On an incline, the auxiliary start function can be used. When parked and with the seat belt fastened, pressing down the accelerator pedal will automatically release the electronic parking brake (EPB), providing convenient driving assistance for the driver.

### iNOTE

- The EPB selects different clamping force strategies for various inclines and can hold the vehicle on slopes up to 30%. Parking on slopes greater than 30% carries a risk of rolling backward; in such cases, the EPB will reapply the brake, which is considered normal behavior.
- If the vehicle continues to slide after the EPB has engaged on a slope below 30%, please press the brake pedal and drive the vehicle to a flat area to stop safely. It is recommended to promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

## 5. Driving guide



### Application of static parking brake

- When the vehicle is stationary, pull up the electric park brake (EPB) system button in the direction of the arrow or press down the "P" gear button. The button indicator lamp and the indicator lamp (P) on the instrument cluster module (ICM) will come on, indicating that the electric park brake has been applied.
- When the gearshift lever is moved from a non-"P" position to the "P" position, the electric park brake (EPB) will be automatically applied.

### NOTE

- When the vehicle power is in the "OFF" gear, the electric park brake (EPB) can also be applied.
- After the vehicle is parked steadily, the EPB should be applied first.
- When EPB is applied, running noise will be generated, which is normal.
- If there is a trailer attached or if the vehicle is parked on a steep slope (greater than 30%), and the vehicle continues to slide after the EPB has reapplied the brake, please press the brake pedal and drive the vehicle to a flat area to stop safely.
- After the EPB is engaged, it can ensure that the vehicle remains stationary on a 30% slope for 5 minutes without sliding. If any sliding occurs within those 5 minutes, the EPB will reapply the brake.
- Be sure to apply the EPB during parking.

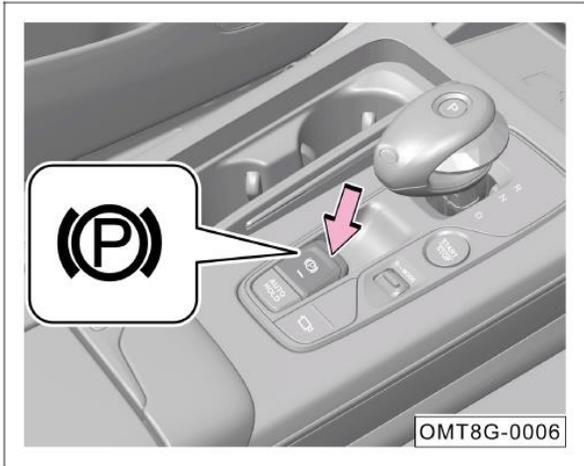
### CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, especially when parked on an incline, shift the gearshift lever to the "P" position, apply the electric park brake (EPB), and ensure that the vehicle does not move.

### WARNING

**When the vehicle is running, do not apply the EPB for speed reduction unless necessary, as the EPB only applies brake force to rear wheels, which is likely to cause traffic accidents.**

Release static parking brake



- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear and not in "P", press the brake pedal and press the EPB button; when the button indicator lamp and the indicator lamp (P) in the instrument cluster go out, it indicates that the electric park brake (EPB) has been released.
- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" position, close the door, fasten your seat belt, and shift the gear from "P" to a non-"P" position; the EPB will automatically release, and the indicator lamp for the electric park brake (EPB) in the instrument cluster will go out, indicating that the electric park brake has been released.

- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" position, close the door, fasten your seat belt, and with the gear in "D" or "R," press down on the accelerator pedal; the EPB will automatically release, and the indicator lamp (P) in the instrument cluster will go out, indicating that the electric park brake has been released.

**iNOTE**

- If the brake pedal is not pressed and the EPB button is pressed, the electronic parking brake will not release, and the instrument cluster module will display a warning message accompanied by a beeping alarm.
- When the EPB is released, running noise will be generated, which is normal.
- When the gearshift lever is in the "P" position, the static parking brake cannot be released, and the instrument cluster module will display a warning message.

**iNOTE**

- When the vehicle's battery power is insufficient, the system cannot release the electric park brake. If conditions allow, use jumper cables for emergency starting, then proceed to release the parking brake. Please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.
- If the electric park brake (EPB) is not used for an extended period, the system will automatically perform a check, and you may hear operational noise.
- Press and hold the EPB button while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn off the vehicle power, which enables the "OFF" tow truck function.

## 5. Driving guide

### Application of dynamic emergency braking



- If the vehicle's service brakes fail while driving, you can try pulling up the EPB button continuously. Releasing the EPB button or pressing down the accelerator pedal will allow the system to exit emergency braking.

#### NOTE

- When the vehicle is running, if the EPB system button is pulled up, the instrument cluster display will give an alarm message, together with a beep alarm.
- During the vehicle's deceleration, releasing the EPB switch or pressing the accelerator pedal will restore the parking brake to its release state. If you continuously pull up the EPB electric parking brake button until the vehicle stops, the parking brake will remain engaged.

#### CAUTION

Do not use dynamic emergency braking unless necessary, as it is likely to cause traffic accidents. Moreover, the braking distance is longer than braking by depressing the brake pedal, and the service life of the EPB system will be shortened.

#### CAUTION

In the following cases, please operate the EPB button again. If the fault is not eliminated, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

- If the indicator lamp (P) continues to flash red, it indicates that the electric park brake is in a partially engaged/released state or that there is a system fault.
- If the indicator lamp (P) comes on red without the electric park brake being applied, it indicates a system malfunction.
- If the indicator lamp (P) comes on yellow, it indicates that an electronic system fault has been detected, resulting in reduced functionality of the electronic parking brake (EPB).

### AUTO HOLD

#### On and Off



- When the vehicle is started, the driver's side door is closed, and the driver's seat belt is fastened, pressing the AUTO HOLD button will cause the button indicator lamp to come on, activating the AUTO HOLD function. Press the button again, so that the button indicator lamp goes out and the AUTO HOLD function is turned off.

#### Activation

When this function is enabled, it supports automatic brake application and release under stop & go conditions. When the driver brings the vehicle to a stop, the green indicator lamp (Ⓢ) on the instrument cluster module will come on, allowing the vehicle to automatically engage the parking brake, preventing any roll-back during starting.

#### Exit

The AUTO HOLD will disengage under the following conditions, and the parking brake will not be engaged:

1. Pressing the accelerator pedal during starting.
2. Turning off the vehicle power while driving.
3. The EPB is manually released.
4. The AUTO HOLD button is pressed when the brake pedal is depressed.

For the sake of safety, the AUTO HOLD will be disabled and the parking brake will be locked under one or more of the following conditions:

1. Vehicle poweroff.
2. The driver's side door is opened or the seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stopped.

#### **i**NOTE

The system's switch status has a memory function; when the vehicle is started, the driver's side door is closed, and the driver's seat belt is fastened, the system's switch status will be the same as it was when the vehicle was last powered off.

#### **⚠**CAUTION

When driving into a mechanism such as a vehicle washing device that transports the vehicle with a conveyor belt, be sure to disable the AUTO HOLD, otherwise the vehicle cannot move or may run off the path.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.3 Electronic service brake system

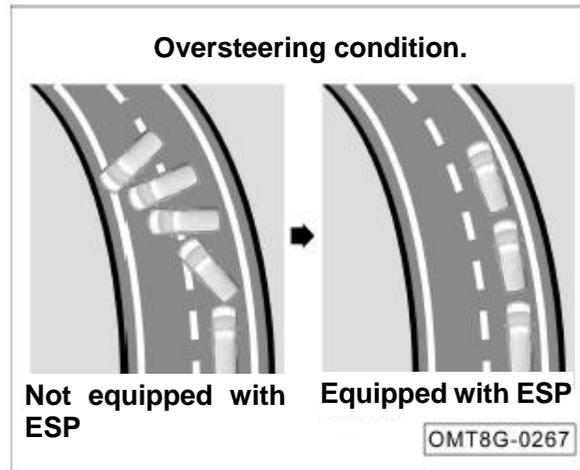
#### 5.3.1 ESP

(ESP)

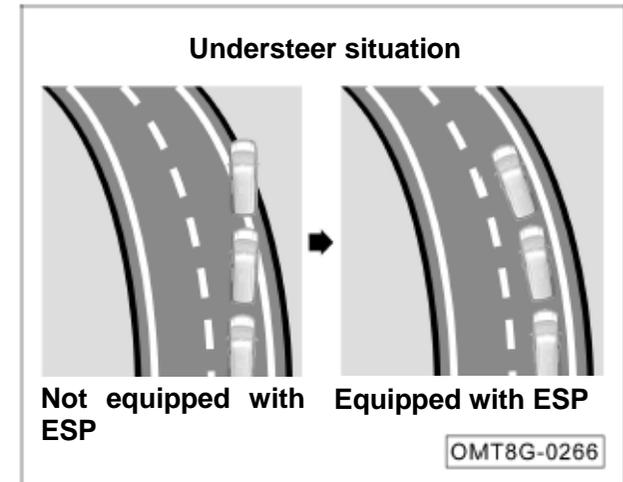
ESP can effectively reduce the risk of sideslip.

The ESP system determines the driver's intention based on information such as steering wheel angle and vehicle speed, continuously comparing it with the actual driving conditions of the vehicle. If the vehicle deviates from the normal driving route (such as sideslip), ESP will correct it by applying brake force to the corresponding wheels.

The ESP restores the vehicle to a stable driving state by generating rotational force through braking.



- If the vehicle is prone to oversteering (i.e., fishtailing), the system primarily applies brakes to the front wheel on the outside of the curve.



- If the vehicle is tending towards understeer (i.e., a larger turning radius), the system primarily applies braking to the inner rear wheel of the curve.
- When a vehicle without ESP experiences sideslip and deviates from its normal driving path, a vehicle equipped with ESP can adjust the brake force based on the amount of sideslip to prevent deviation from the route.

**On and Off**

ESP is on by default when the vehicle is running. Access the AV system interface, click the driving control panel button  on the bottom toolbar to enter the driving control panel, and tap the 'BCM' soft key to disable the ESP (only turning off TCS). At this time, the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module will come on and display an alarm message.

The ESP electronic stability system is only active when the vehicle is in operation. For safety during driving, the electronic stability system ESP should be enabled. The ESP function can be deactivated in the following special circumstances:

- When the vehicle is equipped with tire chains.
- When the vehicle travels on roads covered with deep snow or on soft grounds.
- When the vehicle is trapped on muddy roads, etc., and you need to move it back and forth.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Improper operation or modification of the vehicle (e.g., modifications to the brake system or components affecting wheel and tire performance) will impact the functionality of the electronic stability program (ESP).

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Be sure to adjust your speed according to weather, road, and traffic conditions. Do not take risks by relying on the additional safety features provided by the system, as this may lead to a traffic accident.**
- **ESP cannot exceed the physical limits of road traction; extra caution is particularly necessary when driving on slippery surfaces or towing a trailer.**
- **Drivers must adjust their driving style at all times according to road and traffic conditions.**
- **ESP cannot reduce the risk of accidents that may arise from improper driving behaviors, such as excessive speed or following too closely.**

**Traction control system (TCS)**

TCS, or the traction control system, is a traction control system that determines whether the driving wheels are slipping based on the rotation speeds of the driving wheels and the driven wheels. When the rotation speed of the driving wheels exceeds that of the driven wheels, it suppresses the rotation speed of the driving wheels to prevent slipping. When the vehicle brakes on a smooth road, the wheels will slip, even making the direction out of control. Similarly, during starting or rapid acceleration, the driving wheels may also slip, which can lead to a loss of steering control and pose a danger on slippery surfaces like ice and snow. The TCS is used to automatically control the driving force during vehicle acceleration, so as to keep the slippage of tires within a reasonable range and maintain the driving stability of the vehicle.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.3.2 Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) is an active safety device. When the vehicle is braking, if the front wheels are locked, the vehicle will be unable to make a turn. The driver cannot perform the necessary steering maneuvers to avoid obstacles, pedestrians, and navigate curves during braking. If the rear wheels lock up, the vehicle's braking stability deteriorates, and even a small lateral force (such as crosswinds) can cause the car to skid, potentially leading to a spin or other dangerous situations. In addition, when the wheels are locked, local severe friction of tire will significantly shorten the tire life.

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) installed in the vehicle adds an electronic control device to the existing brake system. Its function is to automatically adjust the wheel brake force during the vehicle's braking process, preventing wheel lock-up and thereby achieving optimal braking performance, significantly enhancing driving safety.

### Advantages of ABS

- Give full play to the effectiveness of brakes and shorten the stopping time and distance.
- Effectively prevent the vehicle from sideslip and drift during emergency braking, delivering good driving stability.
- Achieve steering during emergency braking, delivering good steering control.
- Avoid severe friction between tires and the ground, reducing the wear of tires.
- ABS is composed of wheel anti-lock electronic control system and ordinary brake system. The anti-lock electronic control system consists of the sensor, the control unit and the actuator.

### ABS anti-lock brake system self-diagnosis.

- The ABS anti-lock system control unit has self-diagnosis and failure protection functions. When the vehicle power is set to "ON", the system performs a self-test. If the system is not functioning correctly, the ABS indicator lamp  remains on, and the ABS operation is terminated, reverting to conventional braking. It is recommended to visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair as soon as possible.

### CAUTION

- Improper operation or modification of the vehicle (such as modifications to the brake system or components related to wheel and tire performance) can affect the functionality of the ABS.
- Tires must be of the specified size; if the tire size is incorrect or if there is inconsistency in the sizes of all tires, the ABS will not function effectively.

### WARNING

**Be sure to adjust your speed according to weather, road, and traffic conditions. Do not take risks by relying on the additional safety features provided by the system, as this may lead to a traffic accident.**

### Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

As a part of ABS, EBD balances the distribution of brake force on the front and rear wheels according to the vehicle load during normal braking.

### Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

The hydraulic brake assist (HBA) system can help the driver perform emergency braking; it determines the need for full braking based on the speed at which the driver presses the brake pedal. As long as the driver keeps the pedal pressed to the bottom, the system will automatically increase the brake force until the ABS activation threshold is reached. If the driver relaxes the brake pedal, the system will reduce the brake force to the specified value.

#### WARNING

**HBA can improve your driving safety, but it is still subject to the limitations of laws of physics. Please adjust your driving speed according to the road conditions and traffic regulations.**

### 5.3.3HHC

#### (HHC)

The Hill-start Hold Control (HHC) system is an active safety system that is an extension of the electronic stability program (ESP) system through software enhancements. It is primarily designed to assist the driver in starting smoothly on steep slopes.

When the vehicle is stationary, the HHC detects whether the vehicle is on a slope through the longitudinal acceleration sensor. Subsequently, when the vehicle starts the slope from the stationary state (through forward traveling or reversing), the HHC will automatically enter the working state. During starting, when the driver releases the brake pedal, the system maintains the previous brake pressure to ensure the vehicle remains stationary. As the driving torque increases, the brake pressure gradually decreases, preventing the vehicle from rolling backward during the interval between releasing the brake pedal and pressing the accelerator pedal, thereby enhancing the safety and reliability of starting on inclines.

### Working conditions

- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The EPB is not pulled up.
- Under the premise of meeting the above basic conditions, the hill-start hold control (HHC) system activates when the driver further presses the brake pedal while the vehicle is stopped.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### 5.3.4 Hill descent control/HDC (HDC)

The Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is a subsystem of the electronic stability program (ESP). During the descent, if the driver does not press the brake pedal, HDC actively applies brake force through the ESP to achieve deceleration while going downhill.

#### On and Off

- Click the control panel button  on the bottom toolbar of the AV system to enter the control panel interface. Then click the 'Hill Descent Control' soft key to activate the hill descent control (HDC), and the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module will stay illuminated.
- Click the button again to turn off the HDC, and the indicator lamp on the instrument cluster module will go out. 

### HDC speed control

The HDC function operates within a speed range of approximately 11 km/h to 38 km/h. Within this speed range, the vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing or releasing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal. The system will use the speed at the moment the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is released as the reference. When HDC is in operation, the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module flashes to indicate that HDC is active.

### HDC malfunction

- In certain special conditions, such as going down a long slope, the HDC function may temporarily become unavailable due to excessive brake temperature.
- At this time, the instrument will display a message saying "Brake system overheating, please drive gently", and the driver should pay attention to safe driving. If functionality needs to be restored, the vehicle must be stopped to allow the brake temperature to cool down.

### 5.3.5 Cooperative regenerative brake system (CRBS)

CRBS (Cooperative Regenerative Brake System) is a system composed of motor feedback torque and hydraulic brake torque that together create the driver-required brake force. When the driver presses the brake pedal, the motor feedback torque and hydraulic brake torque continuously assist in controlling to meet the driver's braking request.

### 5.3.6 Comfort stop (CST)

When the vehicle is decelerated to a stop in a non-emergency situation, the integrated brake control system can reduce suspension pitch and impact at the moment of stopping by controlling the braking pressure of the four brakes, providing the driver with a smooth parking sensation.

#### iNOTE

This function can be turned on or off through the AV system settings.

## 5.4 Driver assistance system

### 5.4.1 Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control, abbreviated as ACC, can automatically adjust the following distance to the vehicle ahead while cruising.

ACC uses a MMW sensor installed at the front of the vehicle and an intelligent front camera (IFC) on the windshield glass to detect the relative distance and speed between the vehicle ahead and the host vehicle traveling on the same path.

- When there is a vehicle ahead, if the vehicle in front comes to a stop, ACC controls the host vehicle to automatically stop in line with the front vehicle; if the front vehicle starts moving again, ACC controls the host vehicle to automatically start moving again within a short period. After following for a certain period, you can pull up the multifunction 'OK' lever or press the accelerator pedal to resume following and start moving.
- When there is a vehicle in front and its speed is lower than the target speed set by the driver, ACC controls your vehicle at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- When no vehicle is in front, ACC controls vehicle to travel at the target speed set by the driver.

#### iNOTE

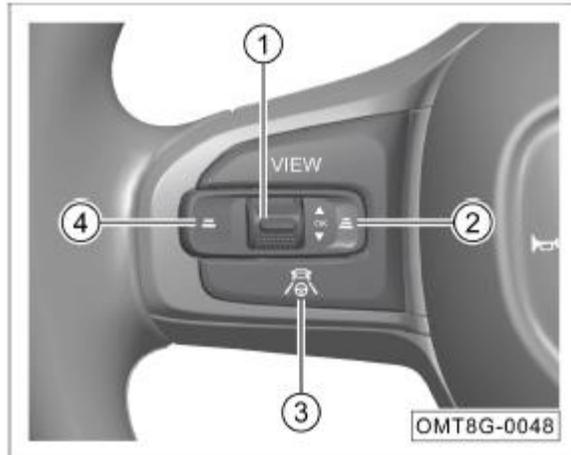
Precautions for the use of the radar and intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor. => See [page 198](#)

#### ⚠WARNING

- **ACC is not a safety system, obstacle detector, collision warning system, or collision avoidance system; it is a comfort system. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and bears full responsibility for it.**
- **The ACC must be used cautiously according to the visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions at the time. The driver must always keep control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the speed of the vehicle and the distance from other vehicles.**
- **The ACC system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver must always be responsible for ensuring that the vehicle is traveling at a safe speed and maintaining an appropriate distance from other vehicles.**

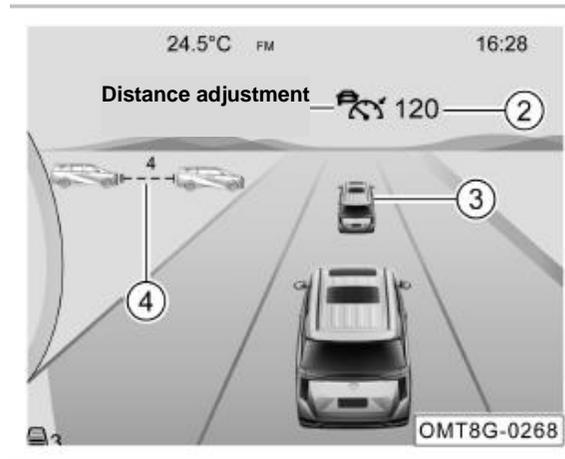
## 5. Driving guide

### Control buttons



- ① : Multi-function "OK" lever
- Restore ACC/acceleration (up-toggle)
  - Confirmation/Setting (Press)
  - Deceleration (down-toggle)
- ② : Distance increase button for following vehicle
- ③ : Activate/deactivate ACC (short press)/switch Cruise mode (press and hold)
- ④ : Distance decrease button for following vehicle

### Interface description



When ACC is activated, the instrument interface automatically switches to the intelligent driving theme. When in the intelligent driving theme interface, the buttons on the left side of the steering wheel respond as follows:

- ① ACC indicator lamp:
- The adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on gray indicates that ACC is in a suppressed or standby state with a target vehicle ahead; the adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on blue indicates that ACC is operational with a target vehicle ahead.
  - The adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on gray indicates that ACC is in a suppressed or standby state with no target vehicle ahead; the adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on blue indicates that ACC is operational with no target vehicle ahead.

- ACC indicator lamp If the yellow indicator lamp comes on, it indicates that ACC is faulty. In that case, go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

- ② Indicates the set cruising speed.
- ③ indicates the detected vehicle ahead.
- ④ Set cruising distance to the vehicle ahead.

When the braking ability of the ACC is insufficient to maintain a proper distance from the vehicle ahead, the system will issue a "Please take over immediately" alert, and the instrument panel will display a warning message along with an audible alarm. At this point, the driver should apply the brake pedal as required by the system to reduce speed.

### Start ACC

- Press the control button briefly, and the corresponding blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster module will come on, indicating that the vehicle has entered ACC control mode.

### NOTE

- The minimum cruise target speed can be set to 15 km/h.
- When the transmission gearshift lever is in other positions than D, ACC cannot be activated.

### Deactivating ACC

ACC can be deactivated by:

- Open the driver's side door.
- Unbuckle the driver's side seat belt.
- Press the brake pedal.
- Setting the gearshift lever to a position other than D.
- Press the button  (the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument cluster module turns gray, exiting ACC while retaining the set speed).
- Operate the EPB system buttons.
- Turn off the ESP system.
- When the HDC system is activated.

The following actions can restore adaptive cruise mode by toggling the multifunction "OK" lever upward:

- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Press  button.
- Gear is in a non-forward gear (requires gear to be in D).
- operating the EPB button (the EPB should be released).
- Turn off the ESP system (it must be reactivated later).

### Resuming ACC

When the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument cluster module is gray, the adaptive cruise control function can be reset through the following operations:

- Push the multifunction "OK" lever toggle up, and the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument cluster module will come on in blue. The vehicle speed will then be restored to the last set cruising speed memory value, and the cruise control state will be entered.
- If the cruising speed has not yet been set, the system will set the current speed as the cruising speed (if the current speed is less than 15 km/h, the cruising speed will be set to 15 km/h).

## 5. Driving guide

### Increasing cruising speed

To increase the vehicle speed, please do the following:

- Press the accelerator pedal to reach the target speed and then pull up  the multifunction "OK" lever (while keeping the accelerator pedal pressed), which will allow cruising at the higher set speed.
- Briefly pull up  the multifunction "OK" lever; each press increases the speed by 5 km/h.
- Long-press  the multifunction 'OK' lever; the cruising speed will increase by 5 km/h continuously until the button is released.

#### NOTE

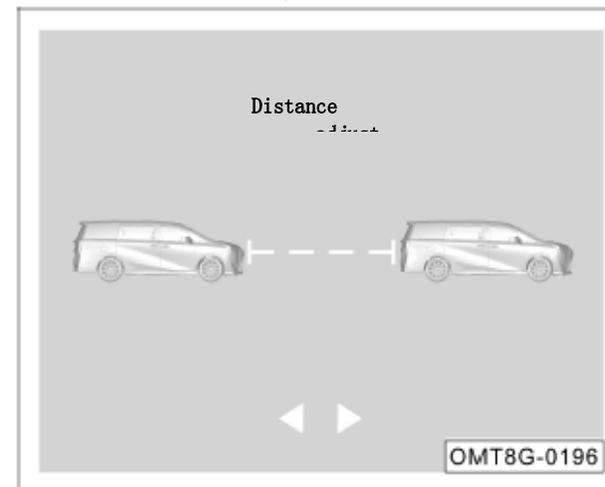
When the accelerator pedal is pressed for acceleration, the vehicle will temporarily exit cruise control system and accelerate according to the driver's intention; once the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will resume ACC cruise control and the set cruising speed.

### Decreasing cruising speed

To reduce the vehicle speed, do the following:

- Briefly pull down  the multifunction "OK" lever; each press will decrease the speed by 5 km/h.
- Long press  the multifunction "OK" lever; the cruising speed will continuously decrease by 5 km/h until the button is released.
- During cruising, press the steering wheel button  (ACC exits), coast or gently brake to the target speed, then press the button  briefly to cruise at the target speed.

### Adjust ACC following distance



After the vehicle power is switched to the "ON" gear, the system opens at the distance from the preceding vehicle set to the last memory position (the fourth gear has the longest following distance).

By pressing the button  or key , you can switch the following distance gear relative to the preceding vehicle, with each press changing to the next position in the order of "First → Second → Third → Fourth" and "Fourth → Third → Second → First". At the same time, the instrument cluster will display the same number of cross bars as the ordinal number of the gear.

### Activating ACC after following stop

In the process of following a vehicle in front, the vehicle will also be stopped if that vehicle is stopped. ACC will keep the vehicle stationary through active pressurization via the ESP during a period of time after following stop. After a period of time, the ACC will keep the vehicle stationary by activating EPB. When the preceding vehicle departs, the ACC of this vehicle is activated under the following three conditions:

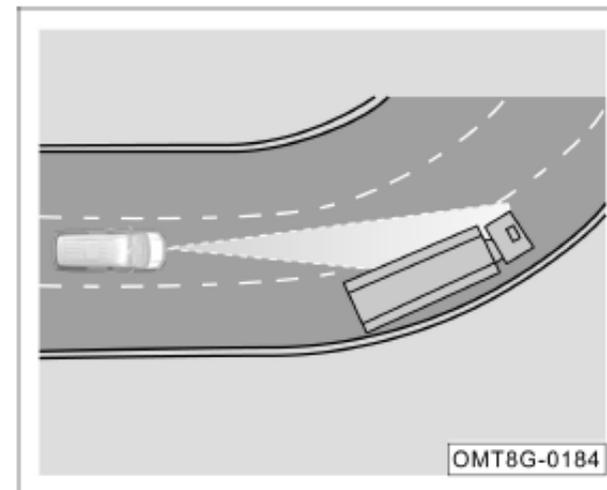
1. If the adaptive cruise indicator lamp is blue, after the preceding vehicle departs, the ACC can actively resume and drive the vehicle again.
2. If the adaptive cruise indicator lamp  is gray and the EPB is not engaged, the instrument panel will display "Cruise Waiting". If there is a vehicle ahead, the driver can reactivate the ACC by either toggling the multifunction "OK" lever up or pressing the accelerator pedal. If there is no vehicle ahead, to ensure safety, the driver can reactivate the ACC by pressing the accelerator pedal.
3. If the adaptive cruise indicator lamp  comes on gray and the EPB is engaged, the driver must first release the EPB. Once the EPB is released, toggling the multifunction "OK" lever up will allow the ACC to resume and drive the vehicle again.

### System limitations

ACC is limited by physical laws and has certain system constraints. In some driving environments, the driver may experience delayed responses from the ACC or find that it does not control the vehicle as expected. Therefore, the driver must always be ready to take control of the vehicle.

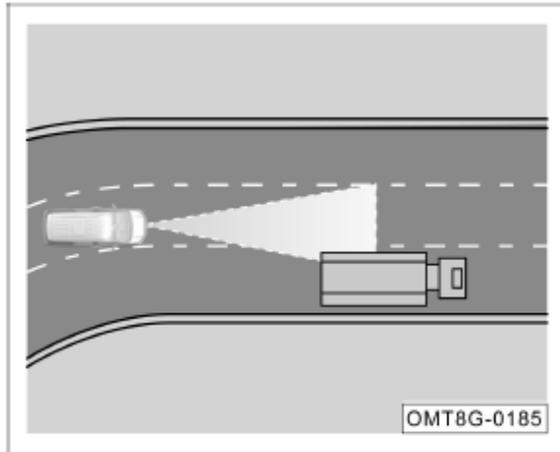
The following situations may affect the functionality of the MMW radar system sensor. In these situations, the driver must remain particularly alert:

1. Decelerating to stop. If the vehicle in front performs an emergency braking and stops, the ACC will also decelerate or issue a note to take over. The driver must actively intervene in braking based on the note to take over, bringing the vehicle to a complete stop.

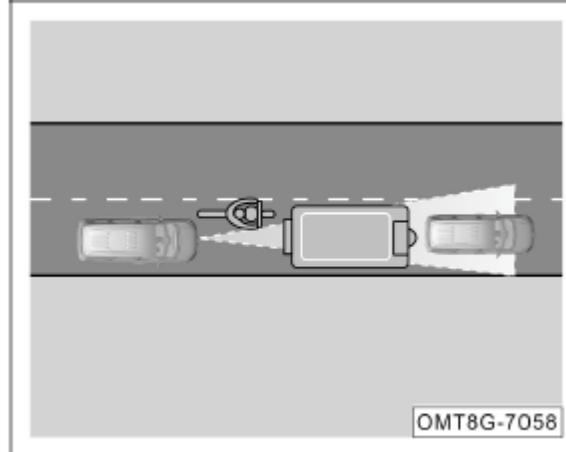


2. Driving through a curve. When navigating a curve, the MMW radar sensor or intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor may not detect the vehicle in front within the same lane or may react to vehicles in the adjacent lane. In this case, ACC may have no reaction to the vehicle ahead, or apply the brake to reduce the vehicle speed. Depress the brake pedal or manually cancel ACC to exit the ACC system.

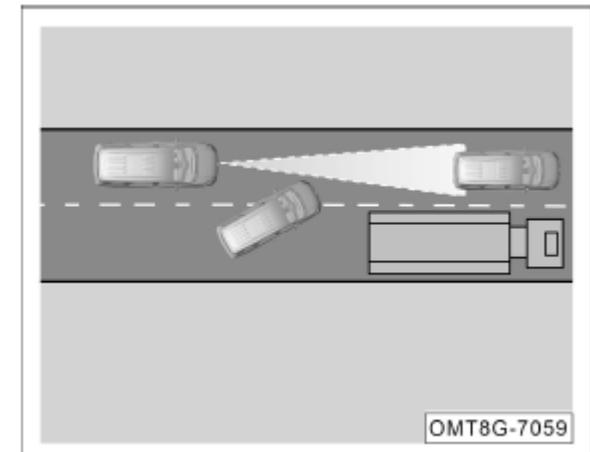
## 5. Driving guide



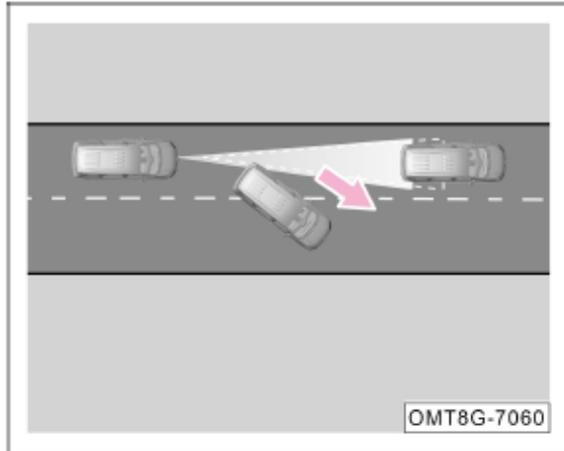
3. Driving out of a curve. When exiting a long curve, the MMW radar sensor may react to vehicles in the adjacent lane and initiate braking for the vehicle, as the system will have pre-calculated the driving lane. This braking process can be interrupted by pressing down on the accelerator pedal.



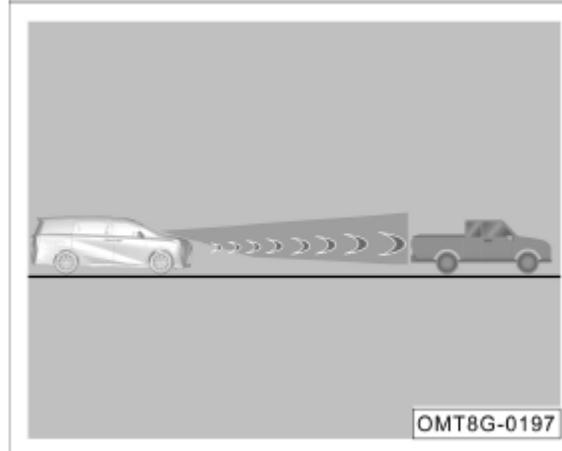
4. Narrow vehicles and Z-shaped traffic in front. The radar sensor can only detect narrow vehicles in front or vehicles traveling left or right when they enter the detection range of the MMW radar, while the system cannot recognize vehicles outside the sensor's detection range. The ACC system has difficulty recognizing narrow vehicles such as motorcycles. Additionally, there is a risk that the ACC system cannot accurately identify the distance to modified vehicles and those with irregular transport; therefore, it is not recommended to use such vehicles as target vehicles in front.



5. When another vehicle changes the lane. When a vehicle in the adjacent lane merges into your lane, if the vehicle has not entered the front detection range, the MMW radar sensor may not detect it, resulting in a delayed response from the ACC.



6. When the target vehicle suddenly cuts out, a stationary vehicle appears at close range, leading to a delayed response from the MMW radar sensor and braking actuator, resulting in an issue with untimely braking response.



7. ACC should not be used in urban traffic congestion or in conditions of poor visibility (such as at night, in backlight, rain, snow, or dense fog). The ACC system may not apply braking measures for pedestrians or animals, narrow vehicles such as bicycles, motorcycles, or e-bikes, low-profile tow trucks, approaching or stationary vehicles, and slow-moving or stationary trucks/small pickups. The driver needs to remain particularly vigilant and be ready to take over the vehicle at all times.

8. Influencing factors that may deteriorate the sensor function.
- Torrential rain, fog, ice and snow, or mud can all impair the function of the MMW radar sensor, leading to a temporary shutdown of the ACC. At the same time, the instrument cluster display shows the following text messages: "Medium range radar is obstructed" and "Cruise operating conditions not met". At this time, the ACC and forward collision mitigation (FCM) system are unable to function.
  - In low-temperature and high-altitude areas, due to temperature differences or frost, the front windshield glass may become frosted or fogged, obstructing the view of the intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor. The instrument cluster display will then show the following text messages: "IFC view obstructed" and "Cruise operating conditions not met". At this time, the ACC and forward collision mitigation (FCM) system are unable to function.
  - Under high-temperature conditions, the ACC system cannot be used; it can be reactivated once the temperature decreases.

## 5. Driving guide

---

9. Brake overheating. If the brake becomes overheated due to emergency braking or when the vehicle descends a steep slope, the ACC will temporarily turn off, and the instrument cluster display will show the following text message: "Cruise operating conditions not met." After that, ACC can no longer be activated. The ACC can only be reactivated when the brake temperature drops to a reasonable degree.

### iNOTE

- Never bump against the MMW radar sensor. If the sensor is misaligned due to bumping, the system performance will still deteriorate even after correction and even the system will be shut down.
- If the surface of the MMW radar sensor or intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor is dirty or covered by heavy rain, ice and snow, or mud, the ACC may not function, and the instrument cluster display will show the following notes: "Medium range radar is obstructed" and "IFC view obstructed". After the dirt is cleaned off the sensor surface, ACC function will be reset and return to normal.
- Do not casually spray paint or apply decorative items such as stickers to the front bumper or main front emblem, as this may lead to a decline in the performance of the MMW radar sensor.
- ACC will not respond to people, animals and vehicles crossing laterally or driving towards the vehicle in the same lane.

### iNOTE

- When driving through crossroads, speed bumps, steep roads and zebra crossings, or at changing lanes, highway access, ramps or construction sections, it is required to exit ACC for manual driving, lest the vehicle should be automatically accelerated to the set speed, causing traffic accidents.
- The ACC system can automatically drive the vehicle out after a brief stop or upon receiving confirmation from the driver (via the control button or accelerator pedal). During this time, the driver must ensure that there are no obstacles or other road users, such as pedestrians or bicycles, directly in front of the vehicle.
- If the ACC fails to function properly, do not continue using it; it is recommended to promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

### iNOTE

- ACC may not react under certain circumstances. For example, when vehicle approaches a stationary obstacle such as a broken-down vehicle or a vehicle stuck in traffic jams, or when a vehicle traveling in the same lane approaches vehicle.
- ACC can only provide limited brake force, and thus cannot be used for emergency braking.
- Do not inadvertently place your foot on the accelerator pedal, as this will cause the ACC to no longer apply braking to the vehicle. The driver pressing down on the accelerator pedal may lead to excessive speed and distance control.
- When the vehicle is traveling in heavy rain or snow such that ACC is difficult or unable to identify the vehicle ahead, it is required to switch off the ACC.
- The ACC may react in advance in certain situations. If a vehicle in the adjacent lane shows a tendency to merge into your lane, the system will anticipate this and initiate deceleration. Drivers should always pay attention to the traffic conditions on the road.

### iNOTE

- When ACC is on, the ACC status displayed by the instrument cluster display may be overwritten by other functions (e.g., during a call).
- After ACC is activated, when the system automatically applies braking to the vehicle, there will be a sound different from manual braking, or the brake pedal will automatically press down, which is a normal phenomenon. This sound and the pedal movement are caused by the operation of the brake system, so there is no need to worry.
- After the vehicle is completely powered off, the stored cruise speed will be deleted.
- You can press down on the accelerator pedal at any time to increase the speed. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system will revert the speed back to the previously set cruising speed.
- Entering a tunnel may cause the MMW radar sensor and intelligent front camera (IFC) to enter a blind mode, and the ACC may temporarily turn off.

### △WARNING

- **The ACC function cannot address all driving scenarios and traffic, weather and road conditions.**
- **The ACC function is only a driver assist function. and cannot replace your attention and judgment. It is your responsibility to maintain a safe distance and speed, and you must be ready to intervene if the ACC fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.**
- **For safety reasons, do not use ACC in urban driving, traffic congestion, winding roads, and poor road conditions (such as icy surfaces, fog, loose gravel, heavy rain, and the potential for hydroplaning).**

## 5. Driving guide

### ⚠ WARNING

- Do not use ACC when driving in roadless areas or on dirt roads. ACC can only be used on flat paved roads such as asphalt and cement.
- The takeover note from the ACC only alerts the driver to vehicles that have been detected by its MMW radar sensor and intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor; therefore, it may not issue a warning, or if it does, there may be a certain delay. Never wait for an alarm to be given and step on the brake when the situation requires.
- The ACC is not a collision avoidance system. If your vehicle is getting closer and closer to the vehicle ahead at a speed higher than that of the vehicle ahead and the braking effect of ACC is unable to stop the vehicle safely before a collision with the vehicle ahead, the driver must depress the brake pedal to reduce the vehicle speed.

### ⚠ WARNING

ACC does not respond or responds only to a limited extent to the followings:

- Large speed difference with the vehicle ahead.
- Driving in different lanes, lane changes or driving on curves with small radius.
- Pedestrians, animals, bicycles, tricycles, stationary vehicles or unexpected obstacles.
- Complex traffic conditions.
- Oncoming traffic or cross traffic.
- Low tow trucks, trucks or vehicles with irregular/irregular features.

Therefore, be sure to notice traffic conditions and respond accordingly. Do not wait for the system to identify the target or apply the brake, but apply the brake as needed.

### 5.4.2 Integrated Cruise Assist (ICA) system

Integrated cruise assist is abbreviated as ICA. ICA can automatically adjust the distance to the vehicle ahead while cruising and keep the vehicle centered in the lane (hereinafter referred to as "steering assist"), applicable at cruising speeds of 0 to 130 km/h.

ICA detects the relative distance and speed between the vehicle and other vehicles on the path ahead using the MMW radar sensor installed at the front of the vehicle and the intelligent front camera (IFC) mounted on the front windshield glass, as well as the lane markings on the road detected by the intelligent front camera.

ICA can improve driving comfort and provide a more relaxed driving experience, such as long-distance driving in smooth traffic on the highway.

### i NOTE

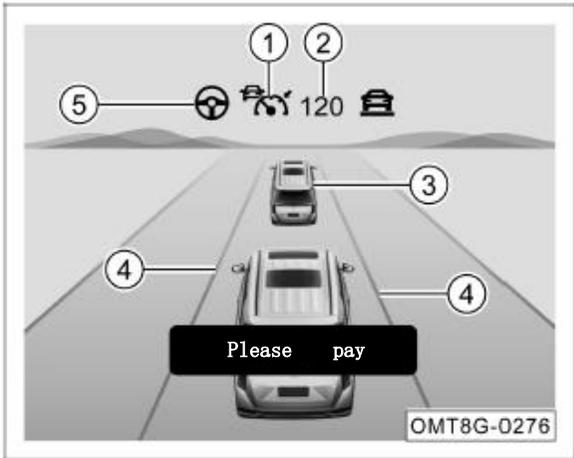
Precautions for the use of the radar and intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor. => See [page 198](#)

**Operation Instructions**

- The cruise assist mode can be switched via the AV system; selecting "Integrated Cruise" activates the ICA function, while selecting "Adaptive Cruise" disables the ICA function.
- After selecting Integrated Cruise Assist, you can activate the ICA by operating it in the same manner as the ACC. => See page 158

iNOTE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The cruise control mode can be switched when ACC is turned off/on or activated.</li> <li>• When ICA has a specific fault not affecting ACC, the cruise control mode will automatically jump back to ACC. At this time, the driver cannot choose to enter the ICA mode, but ACC can still work normally.</li> <li>• ICA has a cruise control mode memory function. After the vehicle is started, the cruise control mode will be the same as that before vehicle power-off last time.</li> </ul>

**Instrument display**



- ① ACC indicator lamp:
  - The adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on gray indicates that the ACC is in a suppressed or standby state with a target vehicle ahead; the adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on blue indicates that the ACC is active with a target vehicle ahead.
  - The adaptive cruise indicator lamp glowing gray indicates that the ACC is in a standby state with no target vehicle ahead; the adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on blue indicates that the ACC is active with no target vehicle ahead.

- The adaptive cruise indicator lamp coming on yellow indicates a fault in the ACC; you should promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.
  - ② Indicates the set cruising speed.
  - ③ Indicates the detected vehicle ahead.
  - ④ Indicates the lane marking.
  - When the system does not detect valid lane markings, it will not display; when detected, it will show gray, and when the ICA function is activated or the lane departure assist (LDA) steering function is engaged, it will display blue. When the lane departure assist (LDA) warning is triggered, it will display red.
  - ⑤ Indicates the ICA function indicator lamp.
  - If a gray ICA indicator lamp appears on the display, it indicates that the ICA function is activated and in standby mode. At this point, simply follow the ACC activation procedure, and the vehicle will activate the ICA function, coming on the blue ICA indicator lamp .
- The ICA function relies on lane markings set on the road. After the ICA function is activated, the ICA indicator lamp may still be gray.

## 5. Driving guide

Once the system detects valid lane markings, the steering assist will automatically activate, and the steering assist indicator lamp will turn blue.

Before activating the ICA, please pay attention to the following caution; otherwise, the function cannot be activated, and the display will show a note indicating that the cruise control function conditions are not met. For more precautions, refer to the ACC section. => See page 158

- Close the car door.
- Fasten the seat belt correctly.
- The vehicle is in drive gear.
- Release the brake pedal.

### Interrupt steering assist

The ICA function's steering control can be temporarily interrupted by the following operation: – Continuously turning the steering wheel.

- Turn signal lamp is turned on.
- Turning on the hazard warning lamp.
- Manually changing lanes.

Performing the above operations will cause the steering assist indicator lamp on the display to change from blue  to gray  , indicating that the steering assist has been temporarily deactivated. Once the above operations are stopped, the ICA function will automatically resume when conditions are met.

### Steering assist

In AUTO mode, the ICA will automatically activate when valid double lane markings are detected and the ACC is enabled.

The ICA function will keep the vehicle driving in the center of the lane markings on both sides.

The ICA function will be suppressed and issue a steering assist function prompt under the following circumstances:

- There are no lane markings on the road or the lane markings are unclear.
- The curvature of the lane markings is too high (sharp turn).
- The takeover prompt is given by the system when driver's hands are off the steering wheel for a long time.
- The lane is too wide or too narrow.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 130 km/h.

After the function is suppressed, the ICA function will automatically reactivate as soon as the activation conditions are met again.

### iNOTE

When the steering assist is in effect, the driver can still turn the steering wheel to control the vehicle. When the driver feels that the torque applied by the system is improper, he/she can control and drive the vehicle as his/her attention at any time.

**Hands-on detection and prompt**

When the ICA detects that the driver has been without hands on the steering wheel for an extended period, the system will issue a takeover prompt. There will be flashing hands  above the ICA indicator lamp, along with a text prompt. If the driver still does not take over, the prompt will escalate, displaying the above image on the instrument cluster module along with an alarm sound. In some models, seat vibration alerts may also be triggered.

The driver shall hold the steering wheel with hands immediately after receiving the takeover prompt. Do not panic and avoid turning the steering wheel sharply unnecessarily. When the ICA system detects the torque applied to the steering wheel, it recognizes that the driver is gripping the steering wheel, and the takeover prompt is canceled. The ICA function is automatically reactivated.

Please note that if the takeover prompt for the steering wheel is issued and the driver does not take over for a period of time, the steering assist function of the ICA will be interrupted.

**i NOTE**

The condition that the driver's hands are lightly holding the steering wheel may be misinterpreted by the ICA as the steering wheel out-of-hand. In this case, the driver only needs to hold the steering wheel tightly or shake the steering wheel slightly, so that the system can detect the torque applied to the steering wheel. Afterwards, the takeover prompt will be cancelled.



The ICA can only utilize the limited braking capability of the driving brake system. When the system requires driver intervention for braking, the instrument cluster module will display an alarm message accompanied by an alarm sound.

When the driver receives the takeover prompt, he/she should immediately step on the brake pedal for proper braking.

After pressing down the brake pedal, the ICA function will be canceled. If the emergent situation is resolved and you need to reactivate the ICA, simply press the button  or push up the multifunction "OK" button to restore the ICA function.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### Others

To restore the ICA function, adjust the cruising speed and set the following distance, using the same operating methods as with the ACC for starting after stopping behind the vehicle ahead. For more information, please refer to the ACC section => [See page 160](#)

### Functional limitations

The capabilities of the steering system and brake system that the ICA function can utilize are limited, so the ICA function cannot maintain an appropriate following distance in all road conditions, nor can it keep the vehicle within the lane in all road conditions.

The ICA system may incorrectly detect lane markings or fail to detect lane markings altogether, and it may also incorrectly detect target vehicles or fail to detect target vehicles ahead.

When the ICA system is activated and indicates it is working, it may be affected, malfunction, or fail to operate under the following conditions:

- Poor visibility due to weather conditions such as rain, snow, fog, or sandstorms.
- Dirt, damage, fog, or obstructions in the area of the intelligent front camera on the front windshield glass.
- Direct sunlight, headlights from oncoming vehicles, or reflections from water on the road can impair visibility.
- Abrupt changes in lighting conditions, such as entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Poor lighting conditions at night.
- Non-standard lane markings.
- Special lane marking colors, such as in construction zones.
- Lane markings are not clearly visible, such as when they are too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt, brake marks, snow, or standing water.
- There are no lane markings, or the color of the lane markings is similar to that of the road surface or curb.
- Projections of isolation strips or other objects on lane markings.
- The distance to the vehicle ahead is too close, or the vehicle ahead is obstructing part or all of the lane markings.
- Construction facilities and other objects obstructing the lane markings.
- There are markings or objects on the road similar to lane markings, such as tire tracks, other markings printed on the road surface, curbs, lane joints, etc.
- The number of lanes increases or decreases.
- Lane markings are complex and intricate.
- More than two lane markings on the left and right sides of the vehicle.
- Too wide or narrow lanes.
- Short-term changing lane markings, such as on-ramps and off-ramps.
- The curvature of the lane markings is too sharp or changes drastically (such as in S-bends).
- Driving on steep, inclined or curved roads.
- The road surface is uneven, icy, or flooded, etc.
- Severe shaking of the vehicle.

The speed assistance of ICA is similar to ACC. For more limitations and operating conditions, please refer to the ACC section => [See page 161](#).

Under the following circumstances, the steering assistance control performance of the system may be affected:

- The vehicle is overloaded.
- The tire pressure is abnormal.
- The road is uneven.
- There is strong crosswind.
- The driver modifies the parts related to vehicle control.

- The parts related to vehicle control are replaced with non-genuine parts.
- The parts related to vehicle control are improperly assembled.

**⚠WARNING**

- The driver needs to judge whether the operating conditions of ICA can be met in certain traffic environments. In urban traffic, at intersections, on surfaces with water accumulation or snow, during adverse weather conditions, on mountain roads, on undulating roads, and at highway entry and exit points, please do not use ICA. Do not use integrated cruise assistance (ICA) when the vehicle is connected to a trailer.
- Misuse of the integrated cruise assist or negligence may cause an accident, and the driver is always fully responsible for driving, even if the integrated cruise assist system is being used.
- Compliance with traffic safety regulations, and safe and civilized driving are always the responsibility of the driver, even if the integrated cruise assist system is being used.

**⚠WARNING**

- The ICA is only a driving assistance function, which can not deal with all road, traffic and weather conditions. The driver is always fully responsible for driving, and should always pay attention to the road conditions and actively control the vehicle.
- Before using the ICA, the driver must read through all chapters on this function in the user manual to understand the system limitations of this function.
- The ICA is not a collision avoidance system. When the system is not properly controlled, the driver must intervene in.
- The integrated cruise assist system cannot cover all driving conditions and cannot replace the driver. The driver must always hold the steering wheel and actively control the vehicle. When the integrated cruise assistance system does not provide adequate assistance or provides improper assistance, the driver should intervene promptly.

**⚠WARNING**

The integrated cruise assist system has limitations, such as:

- Inclement weather, lane marking damage and many other reasons may cause missing or false identification of lane markings, so that no steering assistance or unnecessary steering assistance is generated when needed.
- The ICA can only use limited capability of steering system, so it cannot cover all driving conditions.
- The integrated cruise assist system does not operate in all traffic conditions. In situations such as sharp curves with high curvature of lane markings or when encountering sections without lane markings, the steering assist may suddenly deactivate.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.4.3 Forward Collision Mitigation (FCM) system

The forward collision mitigation (FCM) system uses the MMW radar installed at the front of the vehicle and the intelligent front camera (IFC) mounted on the front windshield glass to detect the relative distance and speed between objects in the path ahead and the vehicle. It assesses the pre-collision risk level by integrating the driver's other actions (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal) and issues alerts to timely remind the driver to take action when a collision risk is detected. If a collision is imminent, the system automatically brakes the vehicle. If the driver is braking but the brake force is insufficient to avoid the collision, the system will automatically increase the braking force to prevent or mitigate the collision.

#### Detectable objects:



- Vehicle
- two-wheeled vehicle
- pedestrian

#### **i**NOTE

Refer to the precautions for the use of the medium range radar (MRR) and intelligent front camera (IFC) sensors. => [See page 198](#)

### FCW

Detecting objects ahead using the MMW radar installed on the front bumper and the intelligent front camera (IFC) on the front windshield glass, and providing a NOTE to the driver about an imminent collision.

When the forward collision mitigation (FCM) system triggers an alarm, there are three types of alerts:

#### 1. Distance alarm

When the forward collision mitigation (FCM) system triggers a distance alert, the forward collision warning (FCWS) indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster will flash, accompanied by a corresponding animation on the display.

#### 2. Approaching alarm

When the forward collision mitigation (FCM) system triggers a pre-alert, the forward collision warning (FCWS) indicator lamp on  the instrument cluster will flash, while the display will emit an audible alarm and show an animation.

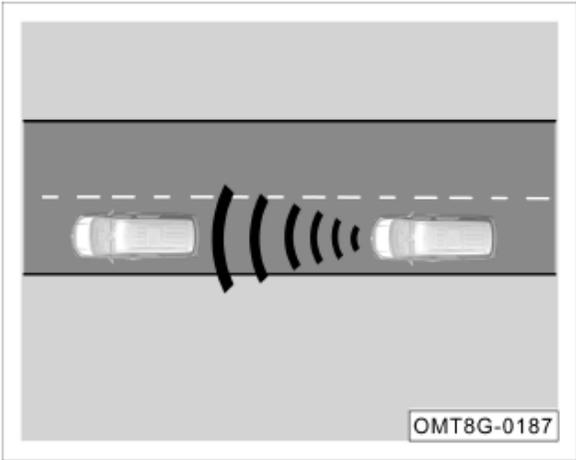
#### 3. Short braking

A short brake is triggered when the vehicle is at a high risk of collision with a moving target vehicle, aimed at better alerting the driver to take immediate braking action.

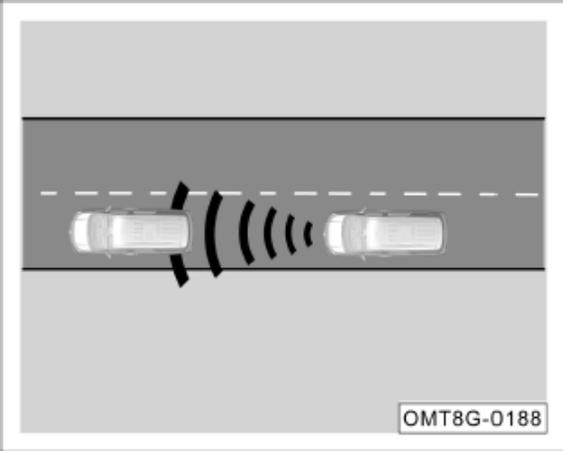
**Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)**

The vehicle prepares to enter an emergency braking state for an imminent collision based on the detection of objects in front by the MMW radar mounted on the bumper and the intelligent front camera on the front windshield glass, providing assistance during braking and triggering the autonomous emergency braking (AEB) function.

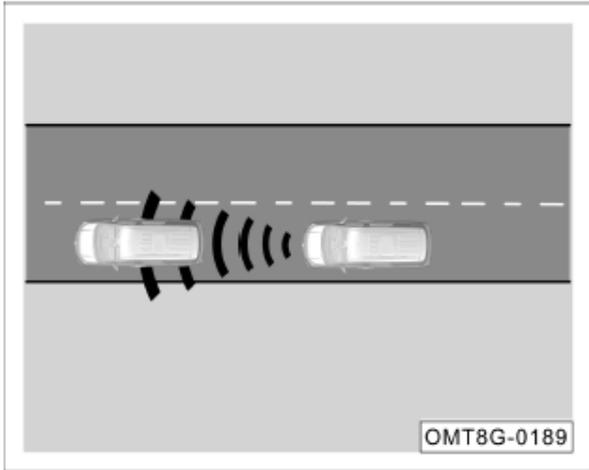
**Levels of autonomous emergency braking**



- Level 1 braking: Short braking is applied when approaching the vehicle ahead.



- Level 2 braking: Slight automatic emergency braking is applied in the case of further approach.



- Level 3 braking: Full braking is applied automatically when a rear-end collision is inevitable.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### On and Off

- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, the forward collision warning function and the autonomous emergency braking (AEB) are activated automatically.
- The forward collision warning and autonomous emergency braking (AEB) functions can be turned on or off through the AV system settings.
- When turning off the forward collision warning and autonomous emergency braking (AEB), the multifunction touchscreen display will pop up a confirmation window. Click 'Confirm' or 'Cancel' to confirm the switch operation.

### NOTE

- The forward collision warning distance can be set to "Far", "Medium", or "Close" through the AV system. The forward collision warning distance has a memory function that recalls the last set warning distance.
- Once the forward collision warning and autonomous emergency braking are turned off, the system will no longer issue alarms or apply brakes for vehicle and pedestrian targets.
- After the forward collision warning or autonomous emergency braking is turned off, when the vehicle power is switched from the "OFF" gear to the "ON" gear, the forward collision warning and autonomous emergency braking will default to automatically turning on.

### System limitations

The forward collision mitigation system has physical and system limitations. For example, the forward collision warning and autonomous emergency braking functions may be inadvertently triggered or delayed due to driver interference in certain situations. Therefore, the driver must always be alert and take over control if necessary.

The following conditions may cause delays or prevent the forward collision mitigation system from functioning:

- When the front vehicle has a very high ground clearance, such as a semi-trailer, etc.
- The rear of the vehicle ahead is low, such as a low-platform trailer.
- When the front vehicle has an irregular shape, such as a tractor or a dump truck.
- When there is a sudden change in ambient light, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- The rear of the vehicle ahead is small, such as an empty truck.
- The detected object ahead makes sudden acceleration or deceleration, or turns.

- When a detectable object suddenly cuts in front of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle in front is a uniquely shaped bicycle, such as a tandem bicycle.
- Driving at extremely high speeds.
- Driving on slopes.
- Driving on narrow curves.
- When the accelerator pedal is pressed down hard or the vehicle accelerates rapidly.
- The assist function is turned off or abnormal.
- The ESP function is manually turned off.
- The vehicle enters ESP control state.
- When the surface of the area where the intelligent front camera is located or the surface of the radar sensor is dirty or obstructed by foreign objects.
- The vehicle is in reverse.
- The vehicle is in chaotic traffic conditions.
- When the vehicle body is towing other vehicles.
- Pedestrians are standing on a traffic island or in a curve.
- When pedestrians are fully or partially obscured by other objects, such as workers carrying a ladder or pedestrians holding umbrellas.
- Pedestrians dressed in unusual costumes or wearing masks, such as carnival attire.
- When visibility is poor, such as at sunset, during the night, in icy or snowy conditions, heavy rain, fog, or backlighting.  
Situations that may trigger system activation when no collision is imminent:
  - A detectable object pattern is present in front of the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is overtaking or changing lanes with a vehicle to the right or left.
  - The vehicle is overtaking a vehicle preparing to turn right or left.
  - A detectable object is present at the curve entrance.
  - The vehicle changes lanes while overtaking a detectable object.
  - The vehicle approaches a detectable target on a winding road or while changing its driving route.
  - Driving under gantries, billboards, road signs, etc.
  - When there are metal objects such as manhole covers or steel plates in front of the vehicle.
- Approaching objects such as utility poles, guardrails, or trees near the roadside.
- When passing through grass, branches, banners, or other objects that may come into contact with the vehicle.
- When driving near objects that reflect radio waves.

### ⚠WARNING

**The autonomous emergency braking (AEB) function must be turned off in the following situations:**

- **The vehicle is towed.**
- **The vehicle is on the hub test bench.**
- **When the radar sensor or intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor malfunctions.**
- **There is an external force (such as rear-end collision) acting on the radar sensor.**

## 5. Driving guide

### ⚠WARNING

- The FCM can improve the driving safety, but it is still subject to the limitations of laws of physics, and thus shall never be used for risky driving. The driver must always be ready to apply the brake to reduce the vehicle speed or avoid obstacles.
- The forward collision mitigation (FCM) system only issues warnings and mitigates collisions for vehicles/pedestrians detected by the radar and intelligent front camera (IFC) sensors, so it may not respond, or its response may have some delay. Do not wait for the forward collision mitigation (FCM) system to operate; the driver must apply the brake if necessary.
- The forward collision mitigation (FCM) system only provides warnings to the driver to avoid collisions and offers limited braking to reduce collision impact; it cannot autonomously prevent vehicle accidents or injuries to individuals. The driver must maintain full control of the vehicle at all times and is fully responsible for the vehicle's speed and distance from other vehicles.

### ⚠WARNING

- When the FCM is turned on, the driver must always keep control of the vehicle during driving, and take full responsibility for the speed of the vehicle and the distance from other vehicles.
- Never ignore the illuminated warning lamp and instrument display reminders, otherwise traffic accidents and serious injuries may occur.
- Therefore, be sure to pay attention to traffic conditions and do not rely too much on AEB. The AEB is only a driving aid. The driver should be responsible for keeping a proper distance from the vehicle in front, controlling the vehicle speed and braking in time. Prepare for braking or steering if necessary.

### iNOTE

- Pressing the accelerator pedal or turning the steering wheel will terminate the forward collision warning alerts and the braking intervention of the autonomous emergency braking (AEB) system.
- In complex driving situations (for example, when the vehicle is running on a circuitous road), FCW and AEB may implement unnecessary alarms and brake interventions.
- When the AEB is triggered, the vehicle will be braked, and the brake pedal may vibrate or become hard, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When affected by factors such as electromagnetic field interference, the target's own reasons or the environment, detection will be interfered and the performance will be degraded.

#### 5.4.4 Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

Traffic sign recognition is abbreviated to TSR. The Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit signs on the road ahead using the intelligent front camera (IFC) mounted on the front windshield glass, while also integrating data from the AV system's navigation. It provides speed limit information and alerts the driver when the speed limit is exceeded.

##### On and Off

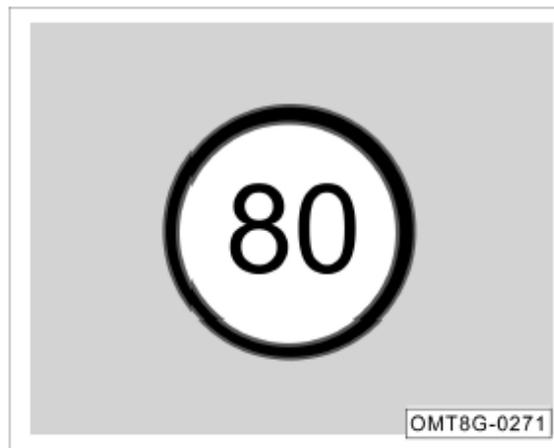
Enable or disable the traffic sign recognition (TSR) feature through the AV system settings interface.

When this feature is enabled, if the navigation system or intelligent front camera (IFC) detects a speed limit sign on the road ahead, the speed limit value will be displayed on the instrument cluster module (ICM). If the current speed exceeds the speed limit by a certain threshold, the speed limit sign icon on the ICM will continue to flash.

##### NOTE

The system has a switch status memory function, so when the vehicle is started, the switch status will be the same as it was when the vehicle was last powered off.

##### Display interface description



If the instrument cluster displays the above icon, it indicates that the speed limit conditions of the road have been detected, including but not limited to standard speed limit signs, combined speed limit signs, and lane-specific speed limit signs.

When the vehicle's actual speed slightly exceeds the speed limit value indicated on the instrument cluster, the speed limit sign on the instrument cluster will flash for a period of time.

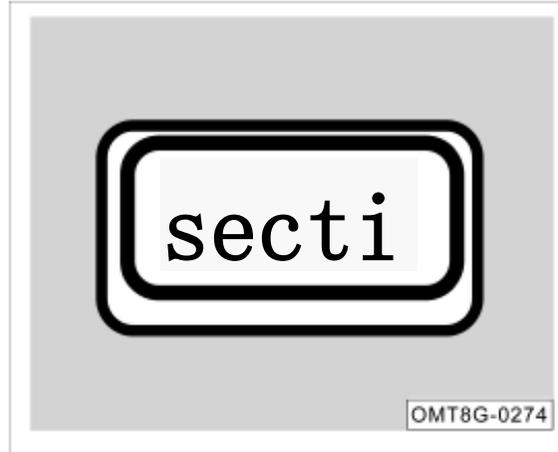
##### WARNING

**To avoid frequent distractions to the driver, if the speed limit remains unchanged and the vehicle continues to exceed the limit, the overspeed alert will only be triggered once; drivers are advised to drive cautiously, pay attention to their speed, and not to overly rely on this feature.**

## 5. Driving guide



If the instrument displays the above icon, it indicates that the current road has speed monitoring by electronic eyes.



If the instrument displays the above icon, it indicates that the current vehicle is about to enter or is in a section with interval speed monitoring.

### Functional limitations

The TSR, even activated, may involve wrong or failed detection of speed limit sign due to inevitable environmental factors and conditions. The system may be affected or fail to work under the following conditions:

- The intelligent front camera is obstructed or disturbed by strong light.
- At night or in the tunnel with weak light, the headlamp is not turned on or the headlamp cannot fully illuminate the speed limit sign.
- The speed limit sign is partially or completely obscured.
- The speed limit sign is worn, blurred or stained.
- The speed limit sign is not properly placed, such as twisted and tilted.
- The speed limit sign is obstructed by the vehicles in the adjacent lane or obstacles.
- The speed limit has been changed due to temporary road construction.
- Navigation data is not updated online in time or inaccurate.
- The road is not standardized, and other road signs are misidentified as speed limit signs.

- Road speed limit information for other vehicles is output due to inaccurate navigation and positioning.

△WARNING

- **The TSR function can only recognize the speed-related signs, not other road signs.**
- **The TSR can only recognize the maximum speed limit for this road. Do not rely on the TSR to determine the appropriate driving speed, but always drive within the safe speed range according to the speed limit and road conditions.**
- **The TSR can not work under all conditions. The driver shall always assume the ultimate responsibility for safe driving and comply with applicable laws and road traffic rules.**

#### 5.4.5 Lane departure system

The lane departure system is designed to reduce accidents caused by unintentional lane departures.

The lane departure system uses the intelligent front camera (IFC) mounted on the front windshield glass to detect lane markings on the road. It analyzes the driver's driving behavior and vehicle motion state, issuing a WARNING or intervening with the steering wheel to assist in correction when the vehicle unintentionally drifts from the lane due to fatigue, distraction, or phone use. Generally, a warning will be issued or turning of steering wheel will be intervened in when the front wheels cross a lane marking.

When the driver selects the assist mode as "Steering" or "Steering and Warning" and the lane departure system's operating conditions are met, the system will monitor the torque on the steering wheel. When the driver takes his hands off the steering wheel for a long time, the system will send an alarm to the driver.

#### On and Off

Enable or disable the lane departure assist function through the AV system settings interface.

When the function is enabled, the button will change to the on state, and the lane departure system indicator lamp  will illuminate on the instrument panel; when the function is disabled, the button will change to the off state, and the lane departure system indicator lamp will extinguish.

## 5. Driving guide

---

The system has a switch status memory function, so when the vehicle is started, the switch status will be the same as it was when the vehicle was last powered off.

### Select lane departure assist (LDA) mode

When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear and the lane departure assist function is enabled, the lane departure assist mode can be selected through the AV system.

1. Steering
  - When "Steering" is selected, the system only intervenes in turning of steering wheel to assist in corrective steering adjustment.
2. WARNING
  - When "Warning" is selected, the system only issues a warning
3. Steering and warning
  - When "Steering and warning" is selected, the system will both issue a warning and intervene in turning of steering wheel to assist in corrective steering adjustment.

The system has a lane departure assist mode memory function; after the vehicle is started, the lane departure assist mode will be the same as the selection made when the vehicle was last powered off.

### Alarm prompt

Lane departure warning alerts are triggered only when the assist mode is set to "Warning" or "Steering and Warning".

- When the instrument indicates a speed greater than 65 km/h and the system detects at least one valid lane marking on either side, the blue status indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster module/ICM will come on. This indicates that the system meets the activation conditions and will issue a lane departure warning when the vehicle drifts. When there is only one lane marking on one side, the system will only provide a warning for that side.

When the indicator lamp  is blue, if the vehicle deviates from the lane under any of the following conditions, the system will not issue a warning, and the indicator lamp will turn white.

- The brake pedal is slammed for deceleration.
- Turning on the turn signal lamp on the corresponding side.
- Turning on the hazard warning lamp.
- Turning the steering wheel quickly.
- This is a short time since the last alarm.
- Continuously driving on the lane marking.
- The system prompts the driver to take over if his/her hands are off the steering wheel.

When the indicator lamp  is blue, if none of the aforementioned actions are taken and the vehicle deviates from the lane (such as when the driver unexpectedly drifts from the lane due to fatigue, distraction, or phone use), the system will issue a warning to the driver, displaying a red lane marking prompt on the instrument cluster module/ICM, accompanied by an audible alarm.

### Steering assist

Lane departure correction assistance prompts are triggered only when the assist mode is set to "Steering" or "Steering and Warning".

When the instrument indicates a vehicle speed greater than 60 km/h and the system detects at least one valid side of the lane markings, The indicator lamp  of the instrument cluster module comes on in blue. This indicates that the system may intervene in turning of steering wheel to assist in corrective steering adjustment. When only one side of the lane edge is detected, the system will only assist in correction for that side.

When the indicator lamp  is blue, if the vehicle deviates from the lane under any of the following conditions, the system will not intervene with steering wheel correction assistance.

- The brake pedal is slammed for deceleration.
- Turning on the turn signal lamp on the corresponding side.
- Turning on the hazard warning lamp.
- Turning the steering wheel quickly.
- This is a short time since the last alarm.
- Continuously driving on the lane marking.
- The system prompts the driver to take over if his/her hands are off the steering wheel.

When the system intervenes with steering wheel correction assistance, the driver will feel the system applying torque to the steering wheel, and the instrument cluster module will display a blue lane line prompt.

### Takeover prompt



When the lane departure system detects that the driver has had both hands off the steering wheel for an extended period, the system will issue a takeover prompt, the instrument cluster module will display the above figure, accompanied by an audible alarm. In some models, a seat vibration alert may also be triggered.

The driver shall hold the steering wheel with hands immediately after receiving the takeover prompt. Please remain calm and avoid making sudden movements with the steering wheel unnecessarily. When the lane departure system detects the torque applied to the steering wheel, it recognizes that the driver is holding the steering wheel, and the takeover prompt is canceled. The lane departure system automatically reactivates.

### NOTE

The condition that the driver's hands are lightly holding the steering wheel may be misinterpreted by the system as the steering wheel out-of-hand. In this case, when the system issues a steering wheel hands-on reminder, the driver only needs to hold the steering wheel tightly or shake the steering wheel slightly, so that the system can detect the torque applied to the steering wheel. Afterwards the hands-on reminder will disappear.

### Other prompts

When the system detects that the intelligent front camera (IFC) is blinded, a text reminder stating "Forward Camera View Obstructed" will pop up on the instrument cluster module (ICM).

Typically, this is caused by dirt on the front windshield glass or direct sunlight shining on the intelligent front camera (IFC) from a low angle. The lane departure system will not be damaged as a result and does not require inspect and repair.

The driver can try to wipe the front windshield glass with water spray.

When the system detects a fault, the instrument cluster module will display a reminder: "Please inspect the lane departure assist system." text reminder, and the indicator lamp  will come on in yellow.

## 5. Driving guide

---

Please proceed to a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair as soon as possible.

### Functional limitations

Even when the lane departure system is activated and operational, it may incorrectly detect or fail to detect lane markings due to unavoidable environmental factors and conditions. The system may be affected or fail to work under the following conditions:

- Poor line of sight caused by, e.g., snow, rain, fog or water spots.
- The front windshield glass is dirty, fogged up, or there is an obstruction in front of the intelligent front camera on the front windshield glass.
- Excessive heat around the intelligent front camera (IFC) due to direct sunlight.
- Light glare of due to direct sunlight, oncoming vehicles, reflected light from road water-logging, etc.
- Sudden changes in outdoor brightness, such as entering/exiting tunnels.
- Failure to turn on headlamps at night or in the dark tunnel.
- No lane marking, or difficulty in distinguishing the lane marking color from the road surface color.
- Unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or dirt/snow-covered lane markings.
- Increased or decreased number of lanes or complicated lane markings.
- More than two lane markings on the left and right sides of the vehicle.
- Marks or objects similar to lane markings on roads.
- Projections of isolation strips or other objects on lane markings.
- Short-term change of markings, such as at ramps or motorway exits.
- Driving on steep slopes or curved roads.
- Close distance from the vehicle ahead or lane markings blocked by the vehicle ahead.
- Severe shaking of the vehicle.

In the following situations, the performance of the system's steering wheel intervention for corrective assistance may be affected: – Vehicle overload.

- The tire pressure is abnormal.
- The road is uneven.
- There is strong crosswind.
- The driver modifies the parts related to vehicle control.
- The parts related to vehicle control are replaced with non-genuine parts.
- The parts related to vehicle control are improperly assembled.

#### **i**NOTE

When the lane departure system intervenes in turning of the steering wheel for corrective steering adjustment, the driver may still turn the steering wheel to control the vehicle. When the driver feels that the correction torque applied by the system is improper, he/she can control and drive the vehicle according to his/her intention at any time.

### 👁 CAUTION

- When the lane departure system detects an unconscious departure from the lane, it will issue a warning or intervene in the steering wheel for corrective steering adjustment. Do not panic or turn the steering wheel fiercely if unnecessary.
- When the lane departure system detects that the driver's hands have been off the steering wheel for an extended period, it will issue a warning. Do not panic, and avoid making unnecessary sudden movements or shaking of the steering wheel. The driver can hold the steering wheel tightly with both hands for normal driving.
- When you select the lane departure assist mode as "Warning", the system will not issue steering intervention or takeover alerts. When the mode is set to "Steering", the system will not issue warning alerts.

### ⚠ WARNING

- **The lane departure system is only an assistive system and cannot actively control the vehicle to change lanes or maintain lane position. The driver is always responsible for monitoring road conditions and actively controlling the vehicle. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and maintain control of the vehicle.**
- **Improper use or negligence of the lane departure system may lead to accidents. Do not rely on the lane departure system or attempt dangerous driving with its assistance.**

### ⚠ WARNING

- The lane departure system may not always recognize lane lines and lane edges. Poor weather, inadequate night lighting, water accumulation or snow on the road, damaged or blurred lane markings, and shadows projected onto the road may lead to missed or incorrect recognition of lane lines or lane edges.
- This may cause missed and false triggering of the function, so the driver must concentrate on observing the road and traffic conditions and drive carefully

## 5. Driving guide

### ⚠WARNING

- **Avoid strong impacts on the intelligent front camera, exposure to moisture or heat, and do not disassemble the components on your own. Do not place reflective objects on the instrument panel, as these items can not only dazzle the driver but may also reflect light into the field of view of the system's intelligent front camera (IFC), affecting its normal operation.**
- **Do not tint the vehicle's front windshield glass or add non-compliant layers; any external objects that obstruct the line of sight of the intelligent front camera (IFC) may affect the normal operation of the system.**
- **Be cautious of impacts to the bumper or vehicle body, and avoid modifications, as these may affect the normal operation of the lane departure system.**

### ⚠WARNING

- **When the system cannot detect lane lines and determines that the driver is intentionally leaving the lane (such as detecting a rapid steering wheel movement) or the speed is  $\geq 130$  km/h or  $\leq 60$  km/h, the system will not issue warnings or steering interventions even if the vehicle departs or leaves the lane.**
- **The LDW can only adjust limited steering angle, so it can't promise that the vehicle will be driven back into the lane under any circumstances.**
- **The sounds inside the vehicle or external noise may prevent you from hearing the audible alarm, so it cannot be guaranteed that you will be alerted to warnings issued by the lane departure system under all circumstances.**

### 5.4.6IHC

The intelligent headlight control (IHC) system uses an intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor located at the top edge of the front windshield glass to detect traffic and environmental factors in real-time, automatically switching between low beam and high beam. For example, when driving on poorly lit roads at night, if the driver activates the intelligent headlight control (IHC) function, the system will automatically come on the high beam when it determines the conditions for activation are met; when the system detects a vehicle approaching from the front, it will automatically switch the high beam to low beam.

#### Activating IHC

1. With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, activate the intelligent headlight control (IHC) function through the AV system settings interface.

### **i**NOTE

This setting has a memory function; after the vehicle is started, the on/off state will be the same as it was when the vehicle was last powered off.

2. Turn the lamp switch to the position to activate the automatic headlamp.
  - After the intelligent headlight control function is activated, it remains in standby mode. When the conditions to turn on the high beam are not met, or the driver has not manually activated the high beam, the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster shows white.
  - When the intelligent headlight control is activated and the conditions to turn on the high beam are met, the system automatically switches to the high beam, and the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster comes on blue.

### Turn off the intelligent headlight control/IHC

The intelligent headlight control/IHC will turn off if any of the following conditions are met:

- Turn the lamp switch to a position gear other than the designated one.
- Enter the AV system settings interface to turn off the intelligent headlight control/IHC function.
- Vehicle power off

### iNOTE

- The high beam and high beam flash function can be manually turned on or off at any time.
- In situations with heavy fog, heavy rain, or other conditions that may cause glare, it will request to turn on the low beam.

### IHC suppression conditions

The high beam will be suppressed in the following cases:

- The driver manually turns on the high beam.
- The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h.
- The fog lamps are turned on.
- The wiper is set to the HI gear position for a sustained period.
- The ambient brightness exceeds the threshold.
- Detected streetlights, nearby vehicles ahead, or oncoming traffic.

The system will not automatically come on the high beam in the following situations:

- Aggressive driving, sharp turns, activation of ABS or ESP, etc.

- The vehicle speed is below 35 km/h.
- Turn signal lamp is turned on.

### Functional limitations

When the IHC is activated, the automatic switching of high beam and low beam may be delayed or even unavailable when:

- The windshield glass surface in front of the IFC is covered with ice, snow, fog, dirt, sticker or other objects.
- There are highly reflective objects on dimly lit streets.
- Encountering pedestrians, bicycles, etc., on poorly lit roads or along the roadside.
- The light of the front oncoming vehicle is blocked by a crash barrier, a high central road fence, a green belt, etc.
- The brightness of the tail lamps of the lead vehicle is low or does not comply with national standards when the vehicle is following the lead vehicle.
- The vehicle encounters another half-covered incoming vehicle in case of sharp turns/mountain roads/low-lying ground.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope or bumpy road.

## 5. Driving guide

- The vehicle is driving in a heavily rainy, snowy or foggy day.
- The IFC is damaged or its power supply is cut off.

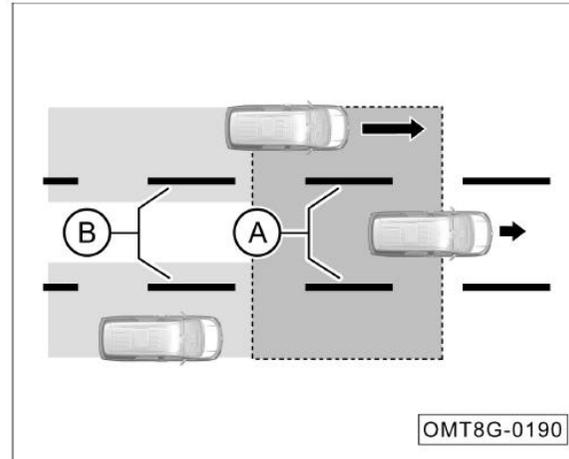
### ⚠WARNING

**The IHC is a driver assistance function, which can help you select the lighting way best suitable for the actual condition. The driver shall always be responsible for manual switching between the high and low beams under the traffic and environmental conditions.**

- The IHC may not be able to correctly identify all driving environments and cannot work normally in some environments.
- If the IFC is blocked by dirt, stickers, ice and snow, etc., the IHC may not work.
- If the vehicle lighting system is changed (for example, the headlamp is modified), the IHC performance may be degraded or the function may not be available.

### 5.4.7 Blind spot detection (BSD) system

The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses radar installed at the rear of the vehicle to detect vehicles in the blind spot of the exterior rearview mirrors and the area behind the blind spot. When a vehicle is detected approaching quickly, the system will alert the driver with a visual signal from the exterior rearview mirrors.



- A: Blind spot in the adjacent lane.
- B: Area behind the blind spot.

### On and Off

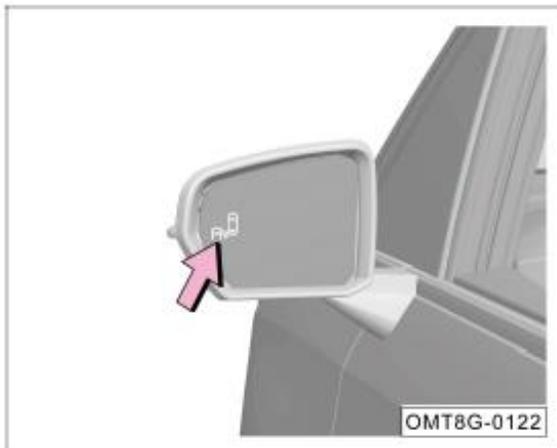
When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, the blind spot detection function can be turned on or off through the AV system settings interface.

If the system is functioning normally, the indicator lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror will briefly come on, and the function status indicator lamp on the instrument cluster module will turn green. If a fault is detected in the system, the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster will turn yellow, and the instrument cluster module display will show a fault message. When the system is off, the indicator lamp goes out.

### iNOTE

The switch status and mode selection of the system have a memory function. After the vehicle starts, the switch and mode selection status will be the same as when the vehicle was last powered off.

### Warning types



The BSD system alerts the driver via the yellow indicator lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror, whose illuminance can be adjusted automatically according to the ambient light.

#### CAUTION

When the vehicle starts or the system is activated, the yellow indicator lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror will come on for 2 seconds, indicating that the function is properly activated.

### Working conditions

Under the following three conditions during driving (vehicle speed >15 km/h):

- Another vehicle enters the blind spot from the rear or from one side.
- Another vehicle approaches this vehicle quickly from the rear of the adjacent lane.
- Another vehicle enters the blind spot from the front and it stay in the blind spot longer than a certain period of time.

The BSD system issues an alarm and the indicator lamp on left/right exterior rearview mirror comes on, and if the turn signal lamp on the same side is activated in this case, the indicator lamp flashes to alert you that it is risky to change lane.

#### CAUTION

When the vehicle overtakes another vehicle ahead at a very high speed, the alarm will not be activated for the vehicle in the blind spot as the time that the vehicle stays in the blind spot is too short.

### False alert

When there are no vehicles in the blind spot, the system may still issue a warning. The following situations may cause the system to issue false alarms:

- The vehicle is near a road guardrail.
- The vehicle is near a highway concrete wall.
- The vehicle is in a building area.
- The vehicle is passing a sharp turn around a building.
- The vehicle is near shrubs and trees.

#### CAUTION

The false alarm, if triggered, just lasts for a short time and can be corrected automatically.

## 5. Driving guide

### Radar sensor



The BSD radar sensors are installed as shown above.

#### CAUTION

Please ensure that the area around the rear bumper sensors is not covered by ice, snow, or other objects.

If any sensor is interfered, the system performance will be degraded and the instrument cluster module will display a prompt "BSD sensor is blocked" and issue an alarm. The system will automatically return to normal if any of the following conditions is met:

- Two vehicles are detected on both sides of the vehicle.
- The driver turns off the power and restarts the vehicle.

If the sensor is still obstructed after restarting the vehicle, the system will remind you again that the sensor is obstructed and will issue an alarm. If a prompt "Please check side assist system" is displayed on the instrument cluster module, it indicates that the system is faulty, so please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair in time.

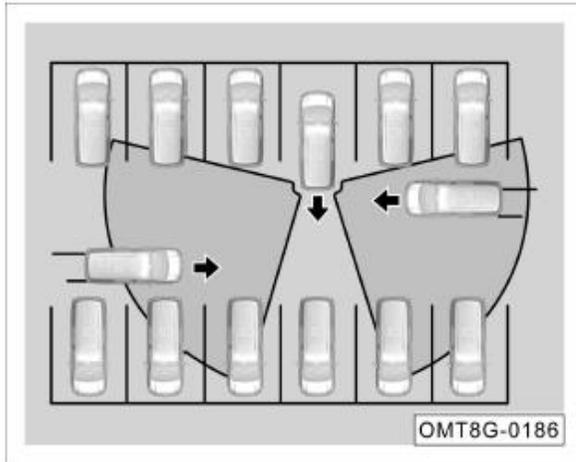
In certain situations, the blind spot detection (BSD) system may not function properly or may be inactive:

- The detected target is too small, such as bicycles, electric scooters, etc.
- When the target is stationary.
- During severe weather conditions, such as heavy rain or snow.
- When driving on curves, slopes, or similar roads.

#### △WARNING

- **The BSD system is a driver assistance system that cannot be substituted for the driver to observe the external traffic conditions or to make judgments.**
- **In order to ensure safety, the driver must not rely entirely on the BSD radar, and must correctly use the interior rearview mirror and the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides.**

#### 5.4.8 Rear Crossing Traffic Alert (RCTA) system



The rear vehicle cross traffic alert function uses blind spot radar installed at the rear of the vehicle to detect the blind spots on both sides at the rear. When the vehicle is reversing, if a vehicle is detected approaching quickly, the system will alert the driver using visual signals from the exterior rearview mirror and the surround view monitor (SVM). If necessary, the system will actively brake to reduce the risk of collision.

#### ⚠WARNING

- **RCTA is a driver assistance system that cannot replace the driver to monitor external traffic conditions or make judgments.**
- **In order to ensure safety, the driver must not rely entirely on the BSD radar, and must correctly use the interior rearview mirror and the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides.**

#### On and Off

With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, the rear crossing traffic assist feature can be turned on or off through the AV system settings interface.

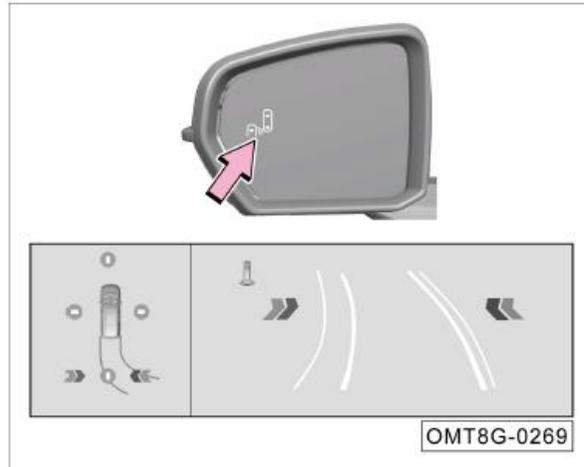
When the vehicle is started or the user activates the feature, the rearview mirror indicator lamp will come on for 2 seconds, indicating that the system is functioning normally.

#### NOTE

The system has a switch status memory function, so when the vehicle is started, the switch status will be the same as it was when the vehicle was last powered off.

## 5. Driving guide

### Warning types



- Visual reminder: A yellow indicator lamp on the exterior rearview mirror and a flashing red arrow will appear on the side of approaching traffic in the surround view monitor, alerting the driver. The indicator lamp  can automatically adjust its brightness according to external lighting conditions.
- Audible reminder: An alarm sound will also serve as a supplementary alert.
- Active braking: When the braking mode is activated and the collision risk continues to increase, the system will actively apply the brakes. The driver can choose the desired alarm method in the AV system.

### NOTE

The rear vehicle crossing assist feature can be activated through the AV system settings. Once activated, the alarm method can be selected as "WARNING" or "WARNING and brake".

### Working conditions

The following conditions need to be met for function activation:

- The system operates when the vehicle is in reverse with the gear in "R."
- The vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h.
- The function switch is in the ON position, and the function is free of faults.

When the radar detects that the vehicle is reversing and a vehicle is rapidly approaching from the rear sides, posing a potential collision risk, alerts will be issued in the following ways:

- The yellow indicator lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror on the dangerous side flashes.
- In the surround view monitor, a red light bar flashes on the dangerous side at the rear of the vehicle.

- The system will emit an audible alarm as an additional reminder.
- When the driver selects the assist mode as "Warning and Braking", the system will actively engage the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.

### CAUTION

This function cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.

### False alert

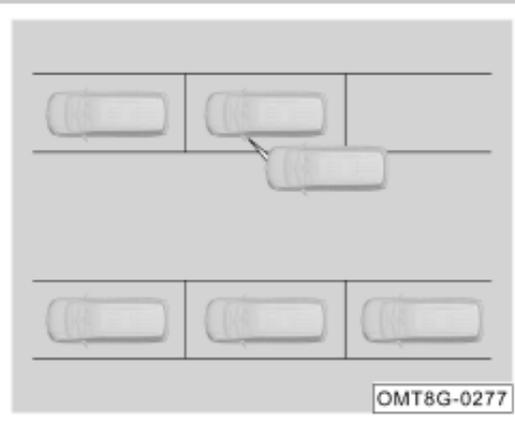
When there are no vehicles in the detection area, the system may still issue an alarm. The following situations may cause false alarms:

- The vehicle is near a road guardrail.
- The vehicle is near a highway concrete wall.
- The vehicle is in a building area.
- The vehicle is passing a sharp turn around a building.
- The vehicle is near shrubs and trees.
- The vehicle is parking too close to vehicles behind.
- The vehicle is parking in an indoor parking lot.

### CAUTION

The false alarm, if triggered, just lasts for a short time and can be corrected automatically.

### 5.4.9 Door Opening Warning (DOW) system



The door opening warning function uses blind spot radar installed at the rear of the vehicle to detect adjacent lanes when the vehicle is parked. When a vehicle is detected approaching quickly, and there is a risk of opening the door, the system will alert the driver through visible signals on the exterior rearview mirror and an audible alarm.

### WARNING

- **DOW is a driver assistance system, which cannot replace the driver to monitor external traffic conditions or make judgments.**
- **In order to ensure safety, the driver must not rely entirely on the BSD radar, and must correctly use the interior rearview mirror and the exterior rearview mirrors on both sides.**

#### On and Off

With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, enter the AV system settings interface to activate or deactivate the door opening warning function.

## 5. Driving guide

### NOTE

The system has a switch status memory function; after the vehicle starts, the system status will be the same as when the vehicle was last powered off.

### Warning types

1. The door opening warning system alerts the driver through the yellow indicator lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror, which can automatically adjust its brightness according to external lighting conditions.
2. When the radar detects an approaching vehicle from the side rear during door opening, the system will trigger an alarm, and the door ambient lamp will flash red to alert the driver.

### Working conditions

The following conditions need to be met for function activation:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle power is in the "ON" gear position, or switched from "ON" to "ACC" or "OFF" mode within 3 minutes.
- The function switch is in the ON position, and the function is free of faults.

When the radar detects a vehicle approaching from behind in the adjacent lane and there is a potential collision risk when the driver opens the door, the yellow warning lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror will come on. If the driver continues to open the door at this time, the warning lamp  will flash, the door ambient light will flash red for reminders, and a voice prompt will also be issued.

### CAUTION

This function cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.

### False alert

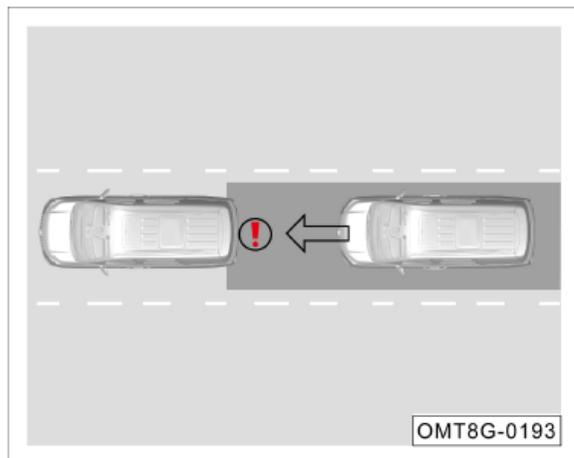
When there are no vehicles in the detection area, the system may also issue a warning. The following situations may lead to false alarms:

- The vehicle is near a road guardrail.
- The vehicle is near a highway concrete wall.
- The vehicle is in a building area.
- The vehicle is near shrubs and trees.
- The vehicle is parking too close to vehicles behind.
- There are larger vehicles behind the vehicle.

### CAUTION

The false alarm, if triggered, just lasts for a short time and can be corrected automatically.

## 5.4.10 Rear approach alert system



The rear vehicle approaching assist function uses blind spot radar installed at the rear of the vehicle to monitor targets directly behind the vehicle in real time. When the driver is driving normally on the road and a target is rapidly approaching from behind in the same lane, the system issues a warning and sends a rear-end collision alert signal to the approaching vehicle.

## CAUTION

The rear vehicle approaching assist is only an auxiliary function and cannot replace the driver's monitoring of external traffic conditions. The driver should always remain vigilant of the surrounding environment.

**On and Off**

With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, the rear vehicle approaching assist feature can be turned on or off through the AV system settings interface.

## NOTE

The system has a switch status memory function; after the vehicle starts, the system status will be the same as when the vehicle was last powered off.

**Warning types**

The rear vehicle approaching assist feature prompts rapidly approaching vehicles from behind by actively activating the hazard lamps to flash quickly.

**Working conditions**

The following conditions need to be met for function activation:

- The vehicle is started and is in a non-reverse gear.
- The function switch is in the ON position, and the function is free of faults.

When the radar detects a vehicle approaching rapidly from behind in the same lane, the function will activate to prompt the trailing driver to reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

## CAUTION

- This function cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- When the rear vehicle moves too fast, this function may not give an alarm in time.
- This function does not trigger an alarm when the driver has turned on the hazard warning lamp switch.

## 5. Driving guide

### False alert

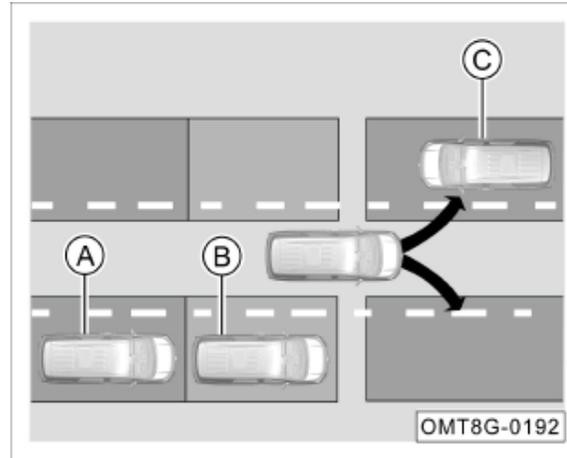
When there are no vehicles in the detection area, the system may also issue a warning. The following situations may lead to false alarms:

- The vehicle is parking in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is on uneven terrain.
- The vehicle is in a building area.
- The vehicle is near shrubs and trees.

#### CAUTION

The false alarm, if triggered, just lasts for a short time and can be corrected automatically.

### 5.4.11 Emergency lane keeping alert system



- A: Area behind the blind spot.
- B: Blind spot in the adjacent lane.
- C: The opposing area of the adjacent lane.

The emergency lane keeping assist feature utilizes blind spot radar installed at the rear of the vehicle, the intelligent front camera (IFC), and MMW radar. The system continuously monitors the adjacent lane areas in front and behind the vehicle. When the vehicle drifts out of its lane and there is a collision risk with vehicles in the adjacent lane, it will alert the driver and actively assist in keeping the vehicle within its lane to reduce the risk of collision.

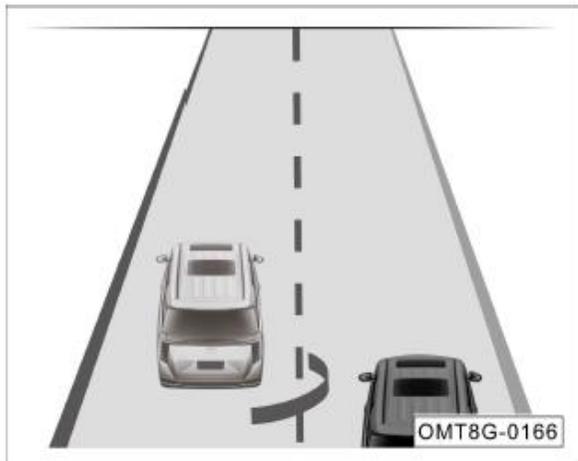
### On and Off

With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, the emergency lane keeping assist feature can be turned on or off through the AV system settings interface.

#### iNOTE

- When the driver activates the emergency lane keeping assist feature, the blind spot detection function will be automatically enabled.
- The system has a switch status memory function; after the vehicle starts, the system status will be the same as when the vehicle was last powered off.

## Warning types



- Visual reminder: An alarm display will appear in the instrument cluster, the lane line on the dangerous side will turn red, and the hazardous target vehicle will be highlighted in red. If the conditions for blind spot monitoring alarms are met at this time, the indicator lamp  on the exterior rearview mirror will come on.
- Steering assistance: The system will actively control the steering wheel to keep the vehicle within its lane, and the driver will feel the torque applied by the system on the steering wheel.

## Working conditions

The following conditions need to be met for function activation:

- The vehicle is in drive gear and the speed is greater than 65 km/h.
- The blind spot detection (BSD) system is in the activated state.
- The blind spot detection (BSD) system and the lane departure system are both fault-free.

When a risk of lane change is detected, the system actively controls the steering and issues a reminder on the instrument cluster.

## CAUTION

- The emergency lane keeping assist is merely an auxiliary function and cannot replace the driver's monitoring of traffic conditions; the driver should always remain vigilant of the surrounding environment.
- The driver should always keep their hands on the steering wheel and actively control the vehicle.

## CAUTION

- The system may not function properly if road conditions do not meet the requirements for the LDW system. => See page 182
- When the medium range radar (MRR) cannot operate normally, this function will also be inoperative.
- When the blind spot detection (BSD) function cannot operate normally, this feature may also be inoperative.
- When the function detects that the driver's hands are off the steering wheel for a long time, it will issue a warning. Do not panic or turn the steering wheel fiercely if unnecessary. The driver can hold the steering wheel tightly with both hands for normal driving.
- When the function intervenes with steering assistance, the driver can still turn the steering wheel to control the vehicle. When the driver feels that the correction torque applied by the system is improper, he/she can control and drive the vehicle according to his/her intention at any time.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### False alert

When there are no vehicles in the detection area, the system may still issue an alarm. The following situations may cause false alarms:

- Poor line of sight caused by, e.g., snow, rain, fog or water spots.
- Dirt or fog on the windshield glass, or obstruction in front of the IFC on the windshield.
- Excessive heat around the intelligent front camera (IFC) due to direct sunlight.
- Light glare of due to direct sunlight, oncoming vehicles, reflected light from road water-logging, etc.
- Sudden changes in outdoor brightness, such as entering/exiting tunnels.
- Failure to turn on headlamps at night or in the dark tunnel.
- No lane marking, or difficulty in distinguishing the lane marking color from the road surface color.
- Unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or dirt/snow-covered lane markings.
- Too wide or narrow lanes.
- Increased or decreased number of lanes or complicated lane markings.

- More than two lane markings on the left and right sides of the vehicle.
- Marks or objects similar to lane markings on roads.
- Short-term change of markings, such as at ramps or motorway exits.
- Driving on steep slopes or curved roads.
- Close distance from the vehicle ahead or lane markings blocked by the vehicle ahead.
- Severe shaking of the vehicle.
- The vehicle passes by road barriers, concrete walls on highways, trees, and shrubs.
- The vehicle passes over speed bumps or pothole-ridden surfaces.
- The vehicle passes through densely built-up areas.
- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or curved roads.
- The medium range radar and the rear left and right blind spot radars are covered with dirt or rain and snow.

In the following situations, the performance of the system's steering wheel intervention for corrective assistance may be affected: – Vehicle overload.

- The tire pressure is abnormal.
- The road is uneven.
- There is strong crosswind.
- Parts related to vehicle control are modified or replaced with non-genuine parts.
- The parts related to vehicle control are improperly assembled.

### CAUTION

The false alarm, if triggered, just lasts for a short time and can be corrected automatically.

### 5.4.12 Rear collision mitigation system\*

The rear collision mitigation system is an assistive function designed to help the driver mitigate or avoid the sudden risk of collision between the vehicle's rear and obstacles while reversing.

#### On and Off

With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, the rear collision mitigation function can be turned on or off through the AV system settings interface.

#### NOTE

- At low speeds, the rear collision mitigation system may bring the vehicle to a sudden stop, maintaining the brakes for several seconds before automatically releasing them. At higher speeds, this function may unavoidably present a collision risk; in this case, the driver should take control of the vehicle.
- If the driver operates the accelerator pedal during emergency braking, the system can only apply the brakes for a few seconds and will require an interval of several minutes before the emergency braking function can be triggered again.
- After the rear collision mitigation system is triggered, the instrument cluster module will display "Emergency braking has been activated" and "Please take control of the vehicle".

#### CAUTION

The rear collision mitigation system is merely a driving aid and may not detect grass, curbs, or low obstacles in all situations.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.4.13 MMW radar and intelligent front camera

#### MMW radar

The MMW radar is installed in the center of the front bumper grille to monitor traffic conditions and can detect vehicles in front of the vehicle within a certain range.

The MMW radar must be adjusted and calibrated in the following situations:

- The bracket for the MMW radar has been removed and installed.
- The MMW radar has been removed and installed.
- The toe-in or rear wheel camber is adjusted during the four-wheel alignment.
- The vehicle has a collision.

#### NOTE

- The adjustment and calibration of the MMW radar require the use of specific special tools. For adjustments and calibration of the MMW radar, please make sure to visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for the relevant work.
- When the MMW radar malfunctions or is misaligned, it will affect the normal operation of related driving assistance functions.

#### Special instructions on MMW radar

The MMW radar is installed at the front of the vehicle, and no other obstacles are allowed within the detection range of the MMW radar. Do not install obstacles such as license plate frame when installing the front license plate. Otherwise, it will affect the detection performance of the MMW radar, potentially rendering the driving assistance-related functions inoperable.

#### CAUTION

- If the MMW radar is dirty, obstructed by the license plate frame, or covered by heavy rain, snow, mud, etc., the related functions may become inoperable, leading to instrument-related function disablement or fault alerts. The functions can return to normal after cleaning the dirt.
- When there is strong reflection from ultrasonic waves detected by the MMW radar (e.g., in a parking lot), the related functions of the MMW radar may be affected.
- Do not paste or add stickers, driving assistant lights, license plate frames or other similar objects in front of and around the MMW radar; otherwise, it may affect the relevant functions of the MMW radar.
- It is recommended that the snow on the sensor is removed with a brush and the ice on the surface is removed with an insoluble de-icer spray.

**ⓘ CAUTION**

- Repairing the front body of the vehicle may cause a change in the orientation of the MMW radar, affecting the functions related to the MMW radar. Therefore, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for maintenance in time.
- If the MMW radar is damaged or its orientation changes, please turn off the functions related to the MMW radar and promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop to recalibrate the MMW radar.
- The orientation of the MMW radar may change due to vibrations, such as when the area near the front bumper radar collides with a curb or flower bed. Changes in the sensor orientation may affect the performance of radar-related functions and may even lead to system malfunctions.

**Intelligent Front Camera (IFC)**

A smart front camera is installed above the front windshield glass to detect the surrounding environment, with a maximum pedestrian recognition distance of 80 m (under ideal lighting and environmental conditions). The minimum detection height for pedestrians is 0.8 m. The intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor must be calibrated in the following situations:

- The front windshield glass or the bracket of the intelligent front camera (IFC) has been disassembled and replaced.
- The intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor has been disassembled and replaced.

**ℹ NOTE**

- Calibration of the intelligent front camera (IFC) requires the use of specific special tools and equipment. If calibration of the intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor is needed, it is recommended to visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for the related work.
- When the intelligent front camera (IFC) is malfunctioning, misaligned, or obstructed, it may affect the normal operation of related driving assistance functions.

## 5. Driving guide

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Poor lighting conditions, such as nighttime, backlighting, heavy rain, fog, snow, or mud, may affect the intelligent front camera (IFC), leading to interruptions or reduced performance of driving assistance functions. In severe cases, this may cause complete deactivation of the functions, and the instrument cluster will display related warning messages for driving assistance features.
- The field of view of the intelligent front camera (IFC) may be affected by obstructions such as dust, deposits, water mist, ice, snow, or mud on the front windshield glass. In these cases, this may cause the driving assistance functions to become inoperative. If this occurs, please clean the area around the intelligent front camera on the front windshield glass, or activate the air conditioning (A/C) defrosting or defogging functions. After clearing the obstructions, the functions will resume normal operation.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- If the interfering factors affecting the intelligent front camera (IFC) are removed, the pedestrian detection system (PDS) will resume normal operation.
- Low light conditions at sunset or night may affect the functioning of PDS. Do not block the sight around the IFC with stickers or opaque objects; otherwise, the PDS function may not work properly.
- Before driving, please ensure that the area around the intelligent front camera (IFC) is unobstructed.
- Keep the field of view of the intelligent front camera (IFC) sensor on the front windshield glass clear.

### 5.4.14 Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The TPMS monitors the tire pressure and temperature and displays current tire pressure and temperature information on the instrument cluster module. In case of tire anomalies such as low pressure, high pressure, rapid air leakage and high temperature, the instrument cluster module will show warning messages.

If the vehicle is stationary for more than 7 days or the battery is disconnected, the pressure and temperature values displayed on the instrument cluster module (ICM) will show "---" with the vehicle power in the "ON" gear. After driving at a speed exceeding 25 km/h for a few minutes, the current tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on the instrument cluster module.

### Alarm description

- If the tire pressure is higher than 330 kPa, the TPMS indicator lamp comes on, and the alarm message on the instrument cluster display indicates that the tire pressure is high; when the tire pressure drops below 300 kPa, the fault is eliminated and the TPMS indicator lamp goes out.
- If the tire pressure value is below 75% of the normal set value, the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator lamp will come on, and the text alert on the instrument cluster display will indicate that the tire pressure is low. When the tire pressure (cold tire pressure) is inflated to the normal set value, the fault is cleared, and the TPMS indicator lamp will turn off.
- If the tire pressure value continues to decrease by more than 30 kPa/min, the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator lamp will come on, and the text alert on the instrument cluster display will indicate that the tire is leaking. When the vehicle power is cycled back on, the fault is cleared, and the TPMS indicator lamp will turn off.
- If the tire temperature exceeds 85°C, the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator lamp will come on, and the text alert on the instrument cluster display will indicate that the tire temperature is high. When the tire temperature drops to 80°C, the fault is cleared, and the TPMS indicator lamp will turn off.

### CAUTION

After replacing the tire pressure sensor or rotating the tires, you do not need to go to the GAC Motor authorized shop to for re-learning and calibration, and the TPMS can automatically complete the learning and calibration in the next few driving cycles, provided that the tire pressure sensor is correctly installed for the model.

### 5.4.15 Seat vibration note\*

The seat vibration note system provides haptic feedback to the driver through a vibration motor located inside the driver's seat cushion. When the seat vibration note function of the vehicle is activated, and the vehicle is in motion with a certain collision risk, the system will trigger the seat vibration note.

#### On/Off Seat vibration note

The seat vibration note function of the vehicle is disabled by default. With the vehicle power in the "ON" gear, the alert type can be set to "audible alert" or 'audible alert and seat vibration' through the AV system.

When the setting is "audible alert", it indicates that the seat vibration note function is off, and only an audible alert will be issued when necessary; when the setting is "audible alert and seat vibration", the system will enable the seat vibration note function. If there is a risk during driving, the vehicle will issue an audible alert accompanied by seat vibration.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### NOTE

This setting has a memory function. After the vehicle is started, the selected alert type will remain the same as it was when the vehicle was last powered off.

#### **Trigger seat vibration note**

The following situations may trigger the seat vibration note. The driver should promptly observe the road conditions and take control of the vehicle when the seat vibration is activated:

- A vehicle is present in the blind spot, but the driver still activates the turn signal lamp in an attempt to change lanes.
- During reverse, vehicles or pedestrians are approaching on both sides, posing a collision risk.

### WARNING

- **The seat vibration note function is merely an auxiliary reminder. The driver should not rely on the seat vibration notes and should respond promptly to potential vehicle risks.**
- **The driver is always responsible for the safety of the vehicle.**

## 5.5 Parking Assist System (PAS)

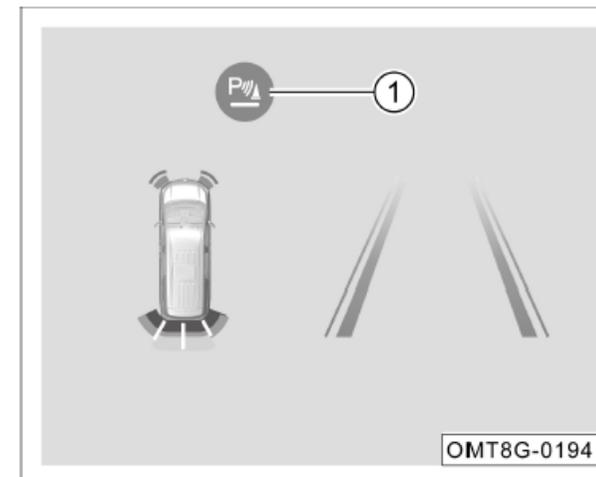
### 5.5.1 Reversing Parking Aid/RPA

The system uses radar sensors to send and receive ultrasonic waves, calculating the distance between the vehicle and obstacles based on the ultrasonic waves sent and reflected back by the obstacles.

#### On and Off

- When the vehicle power is in the "ON" position, release the parking brake and shift the gearshift lever into "R ". When the speed is less than 10 km/h, the reversing parking aid (RPA) system will activate.
- When the vehicle's forward speed is less than 10 km/h, the front ultrasonic sensors activate; when the forward speed exceeds 12 km/h, the front ultrasonic sensors deactivate; and when the forward speed drops from above 12 km/h to below 10 km/h, the front ultrasonic sensors reactivate (applicable only to models equipped with front ultrasonic sensors).

- When the speed exceeds 12 km/h, the front\* and rear ultrasonic sensors deactivate; shifting the gearshift lever out of "R", applying the parking brake, and turning the vehicle power off will deactivate the reversing parking aid (RPA) system.



- During reverse, when the reversing parking aid (RPA) system is activated, pressing soft key **P**  ① can turn the alarm sound on or off (applicable only to certain models). After restarting the vehicle, the alarm sound for the reversing parking aid (RPA) system is enabled by default.

#### **i**NOTE

It is recommended to activate the alarm sound for the reversing parking aid (RPA) system when performing reverse maneuvers.

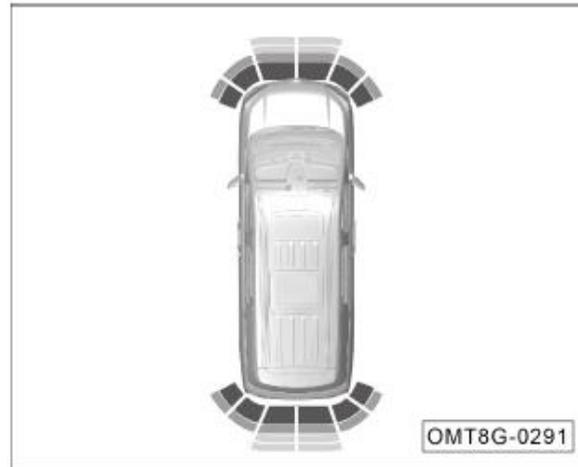
## 5. Driving guide

### Dynamic view \*

Type 1:



Type 2:



The dynamic indicator icon displayed on the left side of the screen shows the distance to obstacles both in front of and behind the vehicle. In the illustration, the vehicle radar bar colors transition from outer to inner as red, orange, yellow, and green. As obstacles get closer to the vehicle, the color lines will gradually change from the outer layer to the inner layer.

The change of the dynamic view is synchronized with that of the distance audible alarm.

### ⚠WARNING

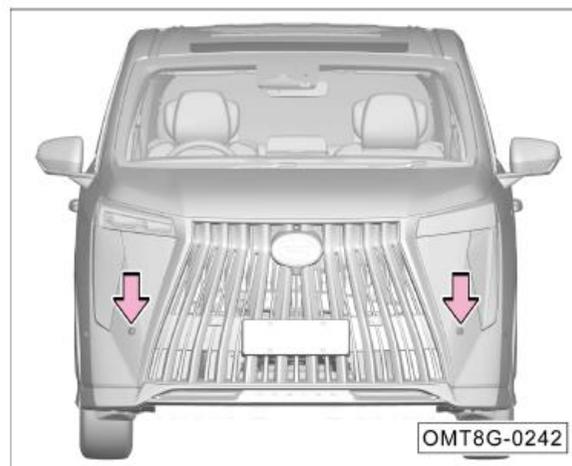
- The RPA cannot take the place of the driver's observation of the surrounding environment. The driver shall focus on safe reversing and position adjustment according to the practical conditions.
- The RPA sensors have blind spots while they are detecting obstacles. During reversing, the driver shall observe the surrounding environment carefully to avoid scratches or collisions.
- When the vehicle is reversing at a narrow place or on an uphill slope, the RPA sensors may not detect railings, trees or slope surfaces, which is normal.
- When the reversing speed is fast, the detection accuracy of the radar sensors will decrease. It is recommended that the speed not exceed 10 km/h. When the RPA sends the continuous audible alarms, it indicates that the vehicle is extremely close to the detected obstacle, and reversing shall be stopped immediately to prevent an accident.

### WARNING

- When cleaning the radar sensors with the high-pressure cleaner, it shall be short-time and gentle, and the distance between the nozzle and the sensors shall be at least 30cm.
- If water drops are on the surface of the RPA sensor on the rear bumper, the sensitivity of the sensor will reduce. Wiping off them can restore the sensitivity of the radar.
- The surface of some subjects may not reflect the signal from the radar sensors, so the radar sensors cannot detect such subjects or people wearing such clothing.
- Noise sources outside the vehicle may interfere with the radar sensors, preventing it from detecting any target.
- The radar sensors are precision components. Do not disassemble or repair them without permission. Otherwise, GAC Motor will not assume any responsibility for the damage arising therefrom.

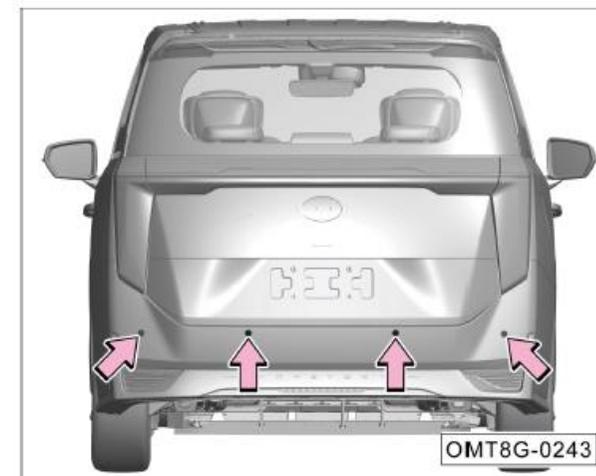
### Distribution of radar sensors

Non-fusion parking models



The front ultrasonic radar sensors are mounted on the front bumper. There are only two front ultrasonic radar sensors installed at the front bumper, positioned near the corners, allowing them to detect only the localized area near the corners. This results in a significant blind spot directly in front of the vehicle (some models do not have front ultrasonic radar sensors).

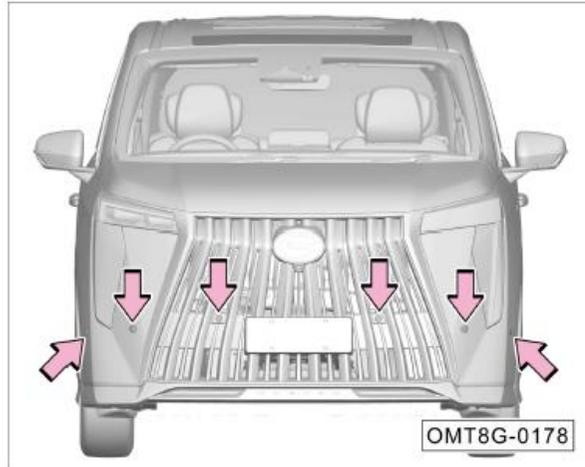
Non-fusion parking models



The rear ultrasonic radar sensors are mounted on the rear bumper.

## 5. Driving guide

Fusion parking models



The front ultrasonic radar sensors are mounted on the front bumper cover.

Fusion parking models



The rear ultrasonic radar sensors are mounted on the rear bumper.

### CAUTION

- Always keep the surface of the RPA sensors clean and never cover an RPA sensor.
- Keep the RPA sensors on the bumper clean and protect them from freezing to ensure the RPA sensors operate properly.
- When cleaning the radar sensor surface, use a soft wet cloth to avoid scratching the surface.

### 5.5.2 Around View Parking System (AVPS)\*

The around view parking system (AVPS) provides the driver with real-time images of the vehicle's surroundings, reducing blind spots. It can also predict the vehicle's movement trajectory based on parameters such as steering wheel angle and vehicle dimensions, overlaying this information onto the surround view monitor (SVM) to help the driver understand the vehicle's direction and assess the safety of reversing.

The around view parking system (AVPS) consists of four cameras, a display, and the "Parking Image" app running on the AV system. By capturing images from the front, rear, left, and right sides of the vehicle and using image processing algorithms to stitch them together, a 360° overhead view of the vehicle's surroundings is created and displayed through the AV system.

#### On and Off

1. The around view parking system (AVPS) can be activated and deactivated using the gearshift lever when the vehicle power is in the 'ON' position:
  - When the gear is shifted to "R", the around view parking system (AVPS) automatically activates.
  - When the gear is shifted out of "R" and there are no related actions from the driver, the system will automatically exit after approximately 30 seconds by default.
2. The around view parking system (AVPS) can be activated and deactivated using the button when the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear:
  - Click the AV system menu icon  to enter the application menu interface, then tap the "Parking Image" soft key to activate the around view parking system (AVPS). In the surround view interface, click the "x" soft key to exit the around view parking system.
  - Press the secondary instrument panel. Press the button  and the button indicator lamp will come on, activating the around view parking system (AVPS); pressing the button again will turn off the indicator lamp and exit the around view parking system.
3. Activate and deactivate using the "left/right turn signal lever". When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear:
  - Move the "left/right turn signal lever" to the "left turn" or "right turn" position to activate the around view parking system (AVPS); moving the "left/right turn signal lever" to the "middle" position will automatically exit the around view parking system.
  - This function can be set to "On" or "Off" in the "Settings" option of the surround view interface.

## 5. Driving guide

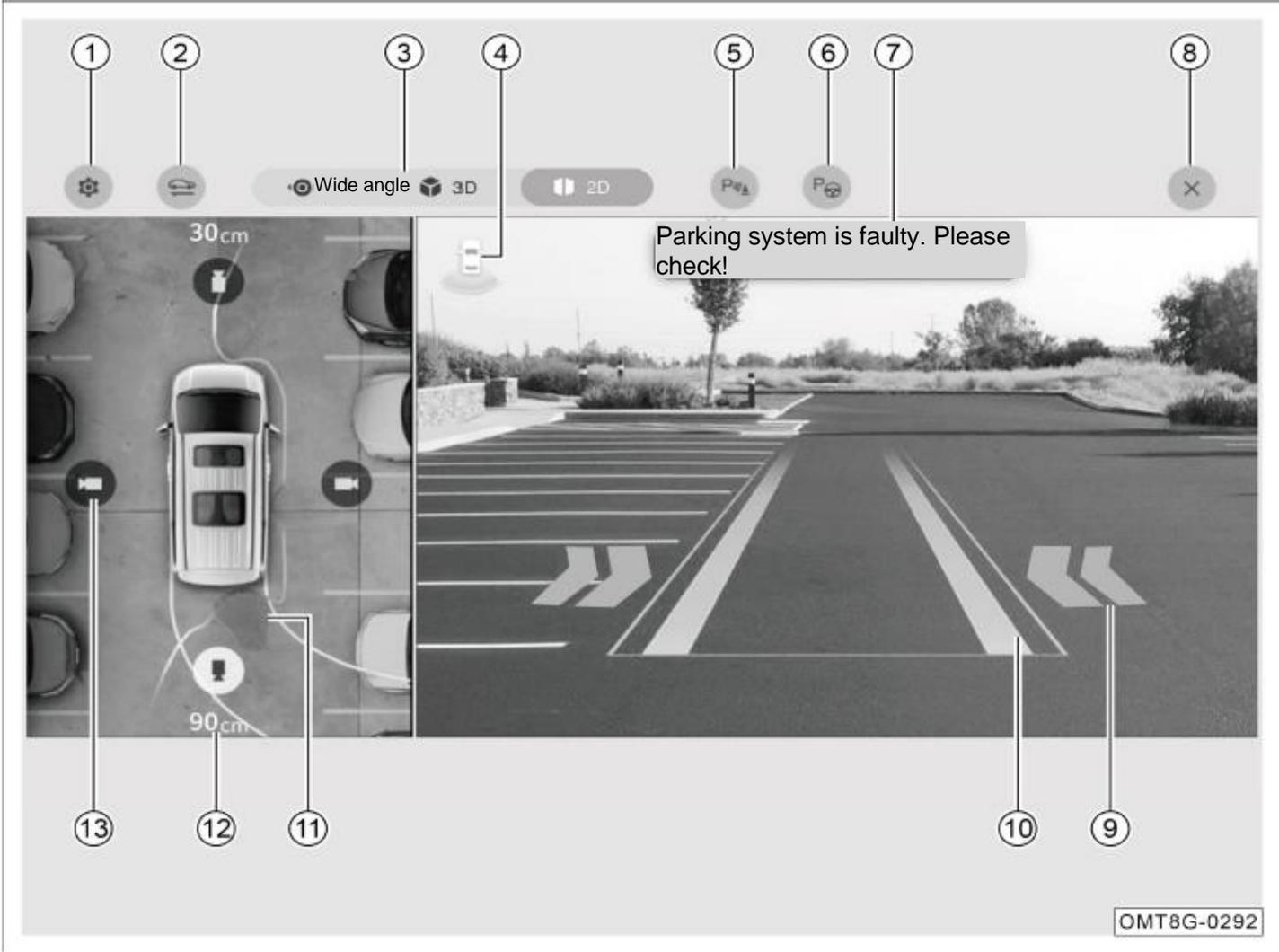
---

4. It automatically activates and deactivates when "radar detects obstacles". When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear:
  - When the radar detects an obstacle, the around view parking system (AVPS) automatically activates; when the radar no longer detects the obstacle, the system automatically exits.
  - This function can be set to "On" or "Off" in the "Settings" option of the surround view interface.
  - This function is only applicable to models equipped with front radar.

### iNOTE

- When the around view parking system (AVPS) is activated, the AV system begins to display images captured around the vehicle, along with auxiliary lines and radar NOTE information on the screen.
- If the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 20 km/h, the system will automatically deactivate.
- The system will automatically switch off when the vehicle (running at a speed of zero) is in non-"R" gear and the system is activated for more than 30 s.
- If the AV system is not completely activated, the system cannot function properly.

Interface description



- ① Settings
- ② Reversing trajectory\*
- ③ 2D/3D/Wide View Switching
- ④ Current perspective
- ⑤ Radar audible alarm switch
- ⑥ Fusion parking button
- ⑦ Message pop-up window
- ⑧ Exit
- ⑨ Rear cross traffic alert\*
- ⑩ Trajectory
- ⑪ Radar-sensing area
- ⑫ Radar distance display
- ⑬ View direction switching

## 5. Driving guide

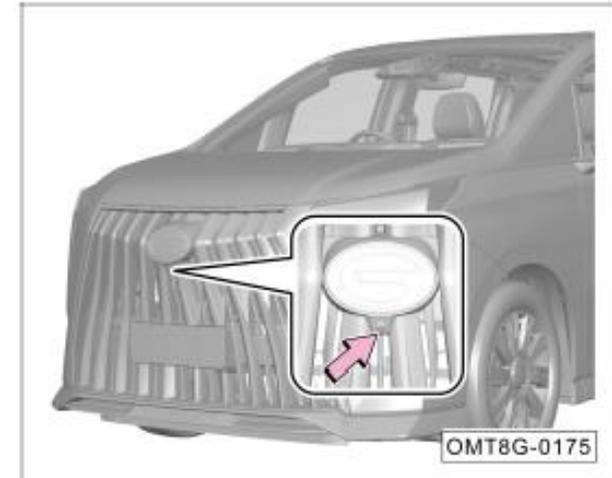
### iNOTE

- When the transmission gearshift lever is in the "R" position, the image display area defaults to a rearview single view.
- When the transmission gearshift lever is in a position other than "R", the image display area defaults to a front view single image.
- The message pop-up is displayed only when there is a message and does not appear at other times.

### iNOTE

- When the left turn signal lamp is activated, the image display area switches to a left view single image; when the right turn signal lamp is activated, the image display area switches to a right view single image.
- In the surround view interface, the viewing angle can be manually switched using the 'View Direction Switch' soft key, and the image display area will show the corresponding view.
- The 3D vehicle model is for reference only; please refer to the actual vehicle.

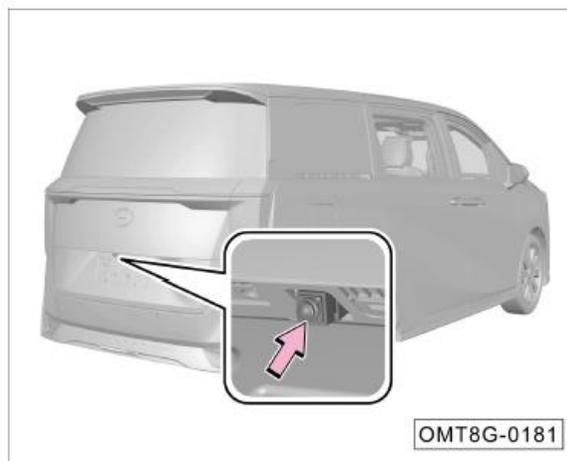
### Layout of cameras



The front camera is installed below the front grille emblem.



The left/right camera is installed on the left/right exterior rearview mirror respectively.



CCD camera is installed next to the license plate lamp.

### CAUTION

- Please keep the camera surface clean.
- Do not wash the camera with high-pressure cleaner for a long time, and keep a distance of at least 30 cm from the camera during cleaning.

### 5.5.3 Reversing trajectory\*

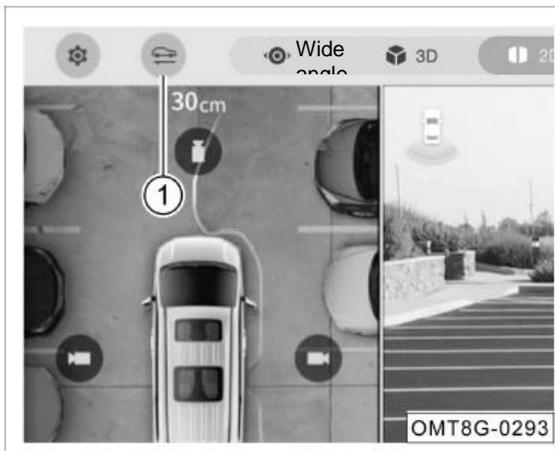
The reversing trajectory function assists the driver in automatically reversing the vehicle along its original forward path for a certain distance. When the vehicle is moving at a speed not exceeding 30 km/h, the system will automatically record the last segment of the vehicle's forward trajectory (up to 50 meters). When the user activates the reversing trajectory function through the soft key on the AV system, voice activation, or a custom one-button control button on the steering wheel, the system can automatically control the vehicle's steering wheel, powertrain, and brakes to reverse the vehicle back to the starting position of its original route. During the reversing process, if the system detects obstacles such as pedestrians or vehicles, it can identify them using sensors and automatically apply the brakes. In special circumstances, the system will prompt the driver to take control to ensure safety.

## 5. Driving guide

### CAUTION

- This function is only a driving assistance function; the driver remains fully responsible for the safety of the driving.
- Please ensure that this function is used without violating road traffic regulations.
- The vehicle may not always detect objects in the reversing path; the driver should continuously pay attention to the surrounding environment. In case of any abnormalities, the driver should promptly take control of the vehicle by braking or steering.
- For certain static obstacles, as well as vehicles, pedestrians, and other moving objects that suddenly enter the path, there is a risk that the vehicle may not be able to recognize them; the driver must take control of the vehicle promptly.
- Due to factors such as mechanical clearance and tire pressure that affect control accuracy, there may be some deviation in the reversing path, and it cannot be guaranteed to return exactly along the original route.

### Turn on reverse trajectory



1. After the engine is started or the vehicle is in the READY state, access the AV system's around view parking interface.
2. Click the reversing trajectory soft key ① in the upper right corner to enter the reversing trajectory function.
3. If the usage conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically begin to reverse; please follow the system prompts to proceed.

### Limitations

Including but not limited to the following situations, the reversing trajectory function may not operate properly and could even pose safety risks:

- Poor visibility (such as at night, during heavy rain, snow, fog, or low light conditions) may interfere with the operation of the sensors.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors or IFC sensors are dirty or obstructed (such as being covered by mud or ice/snow).
- The sensors are affected by other electrical devices or equipment that can produce ultrasonic waves.
- The vehicle is unable to recognize uneven road surfaces.
- Improper disassembly or modification of the vehicle.
- There is a possibility that the vehicle cannot recognize the following obstacles: objects in the blind spots of the ultrasonic radar or IFC sensors, such as low objects, children, pets, and suspended objects; and objects that do not reflect radar sensor signals well, such as thin or pointed objects.

The above conditions do not cover all limitations; please ensure you monitor the vehicle at all times during use.

Improper operation or delayed monitoring may result in damage to the vehicle.

### Fault or interruption resolution

- After a vehicle fault or interruption, normally, clicking the reversing trajectory soft key ① again will re-enter the function.
- In some cases, if clicking the soft key still does not allow entry into the reversing trajectory function, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

### iNOTE

The following situations during the reversing trajectory process may cause the function to pause or exit. After exiting, re-entering this function will allow the vehicle to automatically complete the reverse along the remaining path.

- The driver presses the brake pedal.
- Obstacles are detected in the reversing path.
- The driver's seat belt was not fastened.
- The exterior rearview mirror is not extended.
- Any door (including the liftgate) or the engine hood is open.
- The driver presses the exit button.
- The driver intervenes with the steering wheel, accelerator pedal, gear, or electronic parking brake (EPB).

### iNOTE

The following situations during the reversing trajectory process may cause the system to clear the memorized route. After exiting and re-entering this function, the vehicle will not be able to complete the reverse along the remaining path.

- Vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.
- The deviation between the reversing trajectory and the memorized trajectory is significant.
- System failure.
- The steering wheel angle is too large.
- Abnormal engine shutdown, etc.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.5.4 Fusion Parking System\*

The fusion parking system can automatically search for parking space information on the left/right sides of the vehicle using ultrasonic sensors and IFC cameras around the vehicle, detecting nearby vehicles, pedestrians, obstacles, and more.

The fusion parking system can automatically plan and calculate the parking trajectory while controlling the vehicle's steering, speed, and gear to automatically park the vehicle in or out of a parking space.

#### ⚠WARNING

- Please read this Owner's Manual carefully before using the fusion parking system.
- This system provides only driving assistance functions and cannot replace the driver for parking. The driver is still fully responsible for safe driving.
- Please ensure that this system is used without violating road traffic regulations.

#### ⚠WARNING

- When using this system, please look for a legal, appropriate, and safe parking location.
- This system may not always detect objects in the parking space, so be sure to visually inspect and confirm that the parking space is suitable and safe.
- This system may not always detect vehicles, pedestrians, and obstacles; there is also a risk that the system may not stop in time for suddenly intruding vehicles, pedestrians, and other moving objects. Therefore, during the use of this system, the driver should constantly pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and be ready to take control at any time to ensure safe driving.

#### ⚠WARNING

- The vehicle is equipped with radar only at the front and rear, creating blind spots on the sides. If an obstacle enters the vehicle's side, this system cannot detect it. The driver must actively observe, and if there is a risk of collision, the driver should take control of the vehicle in a timely manner.
- During the use of this system, the driver should pay attention to the vehicle's trajectory changes to avoid collisions with pedestrians and other obstacles.

### System Limitations

Includes but is not limited to the following situations, where the fusion parking system may pose safety risks and may not operate normally:

- Narrow parking spaces.
- Parking spaces contain the following objects: objects that do not effectively reflect ultrasonic sensor signals, and objects that are outside the detection range of the ultrasonic sensors, such as column-like objects, sharp objects, strip or sheet-like objects, suspended objects, and low objects like wheel locks.
- The road has a steep gradient.
- Poor visibility (due to conditions such as nighttime, heavy rain, heavy snow, fog, etc.).
- When the curb height is low, the system may be unable to detect the curb.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors or surround view cameras are dirty or obstructed (such as covered with mud or snow).
- Weather conditions (such as heavy rain, snow, fog, extreme heat, or extreme cold) interfere with the operation of ultrasonic radar and surround view cameras.
- The sensors are affected by other electrical devices or equipment that can produce ultrasonic waves.
- Tire pressure is too high or too low.
- When the parking lines are unclear or lack contrast with the ground, the system may be unable to recognize the parking space.
- When the driving passage is narrow, the system may be unable to recognize the parking space.
- When there are vehicles or other obstacles within the parking space but positioned further inside, the system may mistakenly identify it as an available parking space.
- The vehicle is unable to recognize uneven road surfaces.
- Improper disassembly or modification of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is equipped with tire chains or using a spare tire.
- When the vehicle is equipped with a tow hitch.
- When the load exceeds the vehicle's dimensions.
- Note: The above does not list all limitations.

### CAUTION

- Once parking begins, be careful not to touch the steering wheel or gearshift lever; otherwise, the fusion parking system will exit.
- During the activation of this system, please follow the prompts on the center console display for parking operations.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h, this system cannot accurately search for parking spaces.
- This system does not always guarantee a complete search for parking spaces or successful parking. If no parking space is found or parking is unsuccessful, you can restart the fusion parking system to attempt parking again.
- Due to factors affecting control accuracy, such as mechanical clearance and tire pressure differences, there may be a certain deviation in the final position each time the vehicle parks in or out.

## 5. Driving guide

### NOTE

Troubleshooting issues of faults/interruption:

- After a vehicle fault or interruption, the system can typically be re-entered to use the fusion parking system.
- In some cases, the vehicle must be turned off and restarted. If the fusion parking system cannot be accessed after all systems have cooled down and restarted, please visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection.

### Turn on the fusion parking system

Method 1:



- After starting the vehicle, press the fusion parking button  on the assistant instrument panel to activate the fusion parking system.

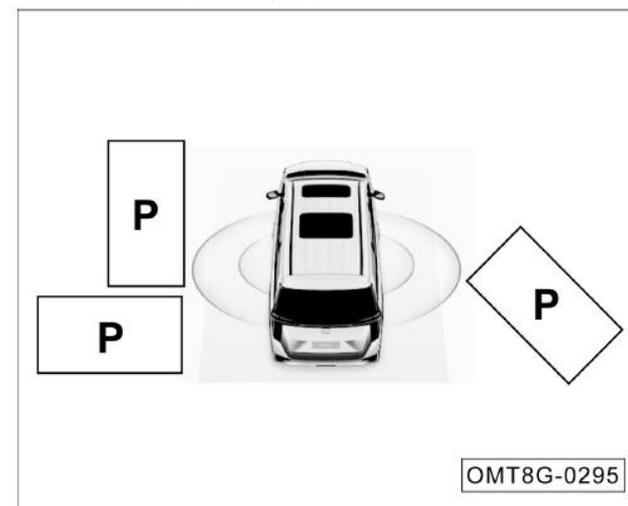
Method 2:

- After starting the vehicle, click the "Smart Parking" soft key in the AV system application menu to activate the fusion parking system.

Method 3:

- After starting the vehicle, when the around view parking system is activated, click the icon  on the AV system around view parking interface to activate the fusion parking system.

### Search for a parking space

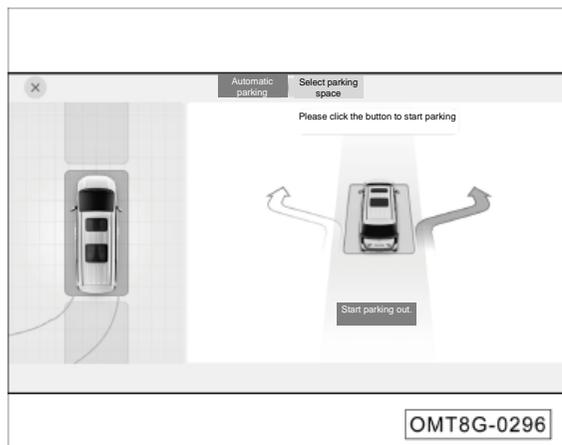


Please keep the vehicle within a side distance of 0.5 to 2 meters from the parking space and maintain a speed not exceeding 25 km/h; the fusion parking system will automatically search for a parking space.

You can also choose to open the fusion parking system first and then follow the system prompts to search for a parking space.

The fusion parking system supports searching for vertical parking spaces, parallel parking spaces, and angled parking spaces.

## Select the exit direction



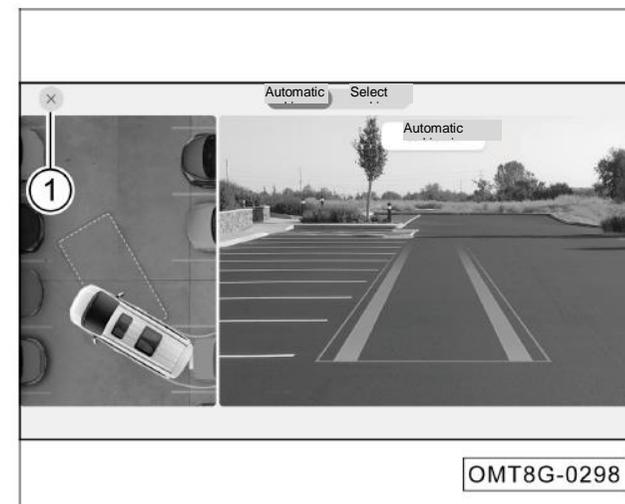
The automatic parking out function can only be activated when the vehicle is stationary and the gear is in the "P" position, within the parking space.

The automatic parking out function can be activated by clicking the arrow on the AV system or by using the turn signal lamp lever to select the parking out direction.

## iNOTE

- The fusion parking system consists of automatic parking in and automatic parking out functions, which are activated based on the system's automatic judgment.
- Due to system limitations, the fusion parking system may not always be able to completely search for the correct parking space. If no parking space is found or an incorrect space is identified, the system can be restarted to attempt again.
- The required length for parallel parking spaces in the fusion parking system is  $\geq 6.5$  m, and the required width for vertical parking spaces is  $\geq 3.2$  m.
- When searching for a parking space, the distance between the vehicle body and the space should be maintained at (0.5~2) m.
- When searching for a parking space, try to keep the vehicle's direction of travel parallel to the boundary line of the space and maintain a straight path.

## Turn off fusion parking system



- Click the soft key ① in the upper left corner of the AV system's fusion parking interface to turn off the fusion parking system.

## 5. Driving guide

### Pause the fusion parking system

After the automatic parking assist system is activated, you can pause parking using any of the following methods, and parking can resume once the pause conditions are no longer present.



- Press the button  on the secondary instrument panel to pause the fusion parking system.
- Press the brake pedal.
- Unbuckle the driver's seat belt.
- Open the other doors of the vehicle except for the driver's door.

### Reason for interruption

After the fusion parking system is activated, situations including but not limited to the following will lead to system interruption and exit. After the system exits, you can choose to reopen the system and attempt parking again.

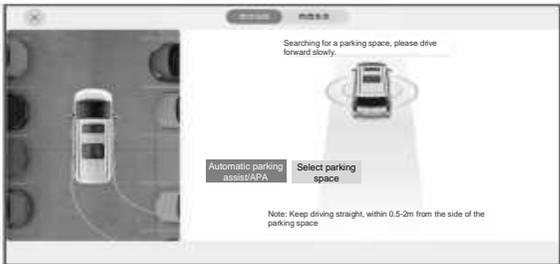
- The driver turns the steering wheel.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver operates the gearshift lever and presses the P button.
- The driver operates the EPB.
- The engine hood is open.
- Pause timeout.
- Pause limit exceeded.
- Parking movement limit exceeded.
- Total parking time exceeded.
- Parking space restricted.
- The ground slope where the vehicle is located is too steep.
- The vehicle is unable to move.
- TCS/ABS and other systems are activated.
- TCS is off.
- System failures, etc.



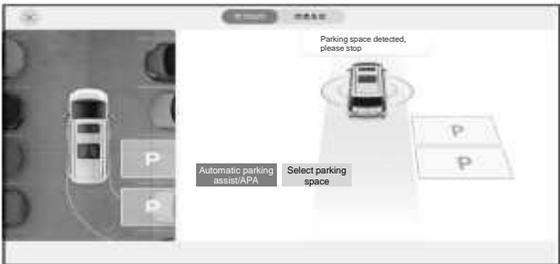
T88-G1 (右舵) \_  
使用说明书 (初稿)

Automatic parking assist/APA Select parking space

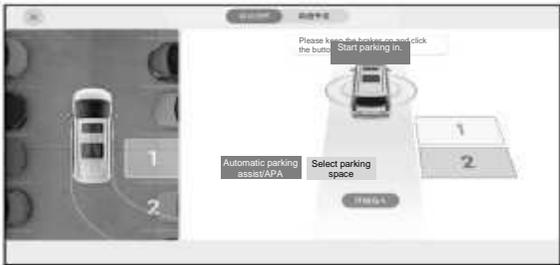
Automatic parking assist/APA Select parking space



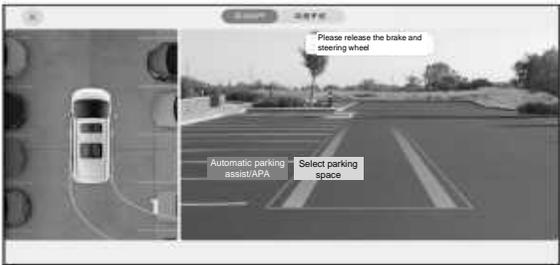
1



2



3



4



5



6

OMT8G-0297

Operation Instructions

Taking automatic parking in as an example:

1. After the vehicle starts, enter through the parking switch; the fusion parking system will automatically select the parking mode based on the current vehicle status.
2. Please drive as instructed to search for a parking space.
3. Once a parking space is found, please stop the vehicle and follow the prompts to switch between different spaces. Then, keep the brake engaged and click "Start Parking" on the screen to activate the fusion parking system.
4. After starting the parking process, release the brake and the steering wheel according to the prompts.
5. After releasing the brake pedal and the steering wheel, please wait for the parking to complete automatically, or you can manually choose to exit. During the activation process, the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment and be ready to take control of the vehicle at any time.
6. Parking completed.

## 5. Driving guide

### 5.6 Electric power steering (EPS)

Electric power steering (EPS) is a power steering system that directly relies on a motor to provide assistive torque. It mainly consists of an integrated torque angle sensor (TAS), motor, reduction mechanism, and electric power steering control unit (ECU).

The ECU controls the motor assist torque output in real time by detecting the driver's torque input, vehicle speed, engine speed and other vehicle status signals, providing the best steering assistance, ensuring the vehicle's low-speed steering agility and high-speed steering stability, and improving driving comfort and vehicle safety.

#### ⓘ CAUTION

After the vehicle undergoes four-wheel alignment, the midpoint position of the torque angle sensor is affected. Therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate the midpoint of the EPS torque angle sensor (TAS), ensuring that the left and right extreme angles of the steering wheel differ by no more than 20°.

### EPS indicator lamp

When the vehicle power is in the "ON" gear, the indicator lamp ⓘ! comes on. After starting the vehicle for a few seconds, the system completes its self-test, and the indicator lamp turns off, indicating that the electric power steering (EPS) system is functioning normally.

If the indicator lamp ⓘ! comes on after starting the vehicle or while driving, it indicates a fault in the electric power steering (EPS) system, and the instrument cluster display will show a text alert: "Please inspect EPS." In this case, you should pull the vehicle over to a safe location, try turning off the vehicle and starting it again. If the indicator lamp does not go out or comes on again while driving, do not continue driving. Please promptly contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspect and repair.

### Steering mode

The steering modes include "Light", "Comfort", and "Sport". The Light mode requires less effort, the Comfort mode requires moderate effort, and the Sport mode requires more effort. The system defaults to

"Comfort" mode. There are three ways to select the steering mode: ① Select the steering mode through the AV system; ② Rotate the Driving Mode (D-MODE) knob, and the AV system will display the 'Driving Mode' interface, where you can set the steering mode through "Driving Mode Settings"; ③ The steering mode is automatically set by switching the driving mode. => [See page 143](#)

#### ⓘ CAUTION

Please select the steering mode while keeping the steering wheel stationary.

### 5.7 Driving skills

#### 5.7.1 Pre-driving safety inspection

##### Routine inspection

- Check the tire for high/low pressure, cuts, bulges, damage or excessive wear.
- Check whether the wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Check whether the front combination lamp, rear combination lamp, and other lamps work properly; check the lighting direction of the front combination lamp.
- Check that the seat belt is free of wear or damage; after fastening the seat belt, ensure it is securely buckled.
- Check that the free travel of the pedal is sufficient.
- Check whether the levels of coolant, engine oil, brake fluid and windshield washer fluid are normal.
- Check the battery terminals for corrosion or looseness, and check the battery case for cracks or deformation caused by expansion.
- Check for leakage of fuel, engine oil, water or other fluids under the vehicle, and pay attention that water drip found after A/C operation is normal.

#### Inspections after starting/during driving

- Check whether the instrument cluster module works properly; check whether any indicator lamp comes on or any alarm message is shown, etc.
- Check whether all control units (such as the lamplight combination switch, wiper combination switch and defroster switch) work properly.
- Check that the vehicle does not deviates to one side during braking on a road without safety risks.
- Check for other anomalies, such as part looseness, leakage and unusual noise.

#### 5.7.2 Driving during running-in period

In order to prolong the service life of the vehicle, the vehicle shall be subject to running-in of certain mileage before it is brought into use. Please comply with the following rules in the running-in period:

- The mileage in the running-in period shall be 1,500 km.
- Choose roads in good condition and drive it at reduced load and limited speed.
- Do not start the engine with full throttle or drive with harsh acceleration.
- Avoid emergency braking in first 300 km.
- Strictly follow the operating procedures and make sure that the engine has reached normal operating temperature. Do not change the oil before regular maintenance.
- Carry out daily maintenance of the vehicle carefully; check and tighten the external bolts and nuts frequently; check the sound and temperature changes of the assemblies generated by operation and adjust them timely.

## 5. Driving guide

### Engine running-in

The mileage in the running-in period of a new engine shall be 1,500 km. Do not perform the following operations within the first 1,000 km of driving mileage:

- Keep the vehicle speed no higher than 3/4 of the maximum allowable speed.
- Do not drive the vehicle with full throttle.
- Avoid running the engine at high speed.
- Do not tow any trailer.

The vehicle mileage between (1000~1500) km allows for gradually increasing the engine rotation speed and vehicle speed to the maximum permissible range.

The internal frictional resistance of the engine at the beginning of running-in is much greater than that after running-in, and all the moving components of the engine can have the best fitting after running-in.

After fully running in, both the service life and the fuel efficiency of the engine can be improved.

### Running-in of tire and brake lining

Within the first 500 km of driving mileage, drive the vehicle at a moderate speed to get the new tires run in fully.

When the new vehicle has a mileage of (200~300) km, the brake lining has not yet reached optimal friction conditions. It is advised to drive at low speeds and avoid emergency braking as much as possible.

#### ⚠WARNING

- **A new tire and brake lining will not have the best adhesion and friction characteristics without running-in. Therefore, drive the vehicle cautiously within the first 500 km to get the tires fully run in to prevent accidents.**
- **The new brake lining after replacement must also be subject to run-in in accordance with the above requirements.**
- **When driving, maintain a proper distance from other vehicles to prevent the occurrence of emergency braking. At this time, the new tires and brake lining have not yet been properly bedded, and emergency braking can easily lead to a traffic accident.**

#### ⚠WARNING

- **If the brake is damp, frozen or the vehicle is driven on a salted road, the braking effect will decrease.**
- **The brake shall be applied according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not depress the brake pedal unnecessarily, which will overheat the brake and lead to long braking distance and excessive brake wear.**
- **Never turn off the vehicle and let it coast, as the brake booster will not work, significantly increasing the braking distance and greatly raising the risk of an accident.**

### 5.7.3 Driving essentials

#### Use the energy-saving driving mode

Compared to normal conditions, using the energy-saving driving mode allows for a smoother generation of torque that corresponds to the amount the accelerator pedal is pressed. In addition, it will minimize the operation of the A/C system (heating/cooling), thereby improving fuel economy.

#### Operate the START/STOP button

If the START/STOP button is not pressed down firmly and briefly, the mode may not switch, or the vehicle may not start.

After the START/STOP button is turned off, if an attempt is made to immediately restart the hybrid powertrain, the hybrid powertrain may not start in certain situations. After the START/STOP button is turned off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the hybrid powertrain.

#### CAUTION

If the vehicle has difficulty starting, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection as soon as possible.

#### Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

- Please drive the vehicle smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and sudden deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will more effectively utilize the motor without consuming engine power.
  - Avoid repeated acceleration. Repeated acceleration will deplete the power battery's charge and increase fuel consumption. Releasing the accelerator pedal slightly during driving can help replenish the battery charge.
  - Ensure to apply the brake pedal promptly and gently when braking. More electrical energy can be regenerated when decelerating.
- During traffic congestion, repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as prolonged waiting at traffic lights, will reduce fuel efficiency. Before departure, please pay attention to traffic reports and avoid traffic congestion whenever possible. When driving in traffic congestion, gently release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to creep forward slowly, while avoiding excessive use of the accelerator pedal. This helps to control excessive fuel consumption.
  - When driving on the main road, you should control and maintain a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar location, allow enough time to release the accelerator pedal and gradually press down on the brake pedal. More electrical energy can be regenerated when decelerating.

## 5. Driving guide

### Precautions under various road conditions:

- When the vehicle is driving on a road with crosswinds and gusts, please decelerate in advance and control the speed and steering wheel.
- Avoid driving on sharp objects or other road obstacle, otherwise it may cause serious damage such as tire burst.
- Reduce the speed and drive at a low speed while driving on a bumpy or uneven road; otherwise the chassis may be scratched, which result in vehicle damage.
- When the vehicle is being driven downhill, decelerate in advance; avoid emergency braking, otherwise the brake system will overheat or be worn prematurely.
- When the vehicle is running on a slippery road, be careful during accelerating or braking; avoid sudden acceleration or emergency braking, otherwise it is likely to cause wheel slip.
- The vehicle shall be driven at a low and constant speed on an icy and snowy road; avoid sudden acceleration or emergency braking; and install tire chains for the wheels as needed.
- Since the engine will automatically start and stop in low temperatures, there's no need to preheat the engine. Additionally, frequent short-distance driving can cause the engine to repeatedly warm up, which increases fuel consumption.

### Precautions when driving over a water-logged road section:

1. Before driving over a water-logged road section, check the depth of water, which shall not be higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body.
2. If driving through water, turn off the A/C before starting the vehicle, reduce speed, then gently press the accelerator pedal without releasing it, to pass through flooded areas at a steady, slow speed.
3. Never park the vehicle in water, and do not reverse or turn off the vehicle while it is in water.
4. After successfully driving through the water-logged road section, gently depress the brake pedal for several times to evaporate the moisture on the brake discs so as to restore the braking performance as soon as possible.

### NOTE

The brake linings and brake discs are soaked in water while the vehicle is washed or driven over a road with deep water logging, and the braking effect will be greatly reduced; the braking distance will be longer than usual and the vehicle may be deviated to one side, and the parking brake cannot hold the vehicle still. In this case, it is recommended to drive the vehicle at a low speed and constantly depress the brake pedal slightly to remove residual moisture in the brake to recover the braking effect to the normal level. And then, normal driving can be resumed.

### Driving essentials in winter

1. Check if the coolant is in good condition and if it has good anti-freeze effect as follows:
  - Fill the cooling system with the coolant of the same type as the original one according to the ambient temperature.
  - Adding unsuitable coolant may cause damage to the engine.
2. Check the battery and cables as follows:
  - A low temperature in chilly days will reduce the capacity of battery, and therefore, fully charge the battery for start-up in winter.
3. Prevent the door lock from being frozen by ice and snow as follows:
  - Spray some de-icer spray or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent the door lock from being frozen.
4. Use washer fluids containing antifreeze:
  - These products are available at GAC Motor authorized shop.
  - The mix ratio of water to antifreeze shall comply with the manufacturer's instructions.
5. Avoid accumulated ice and snow beneath the mudguard:
  - Accumulated ice and snow beneath the mudguard may result in difficult steering. When driving in the cold winter, stop the vehicle regularly and check whether there is ice and snow under the mudguard.
6. It is recommended to bring some necessary emergency items according to the road conditions, such as:
  - Tire chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand or salt, a flashing light, a ploughstaff, connecting cables, etc., which are recommended to be placed in the vehicle.
7. In cold winter months (especially in northern regions), avoid frequently starting the vehicle for short periods and then powering it off. If the engine is often in an alternating heat & cold cycle, the condensed water is likely to form in the engine, and when the condensed water adheres to the engine oil, it may give an illusion of water-in-oil emulsion, and after the engine is restarted and warmed up, this illusion will be shattered; in addition, please change the oil regularly as required in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.
8. When starting the vehicle in low ambient temperatures, the "READY" indicator lamp may take longer to flash. Keep the vehicle stationary until the "READY" indicator lamp comes on steadily; a steady light indicates that the vehicle can be moved.
9. For vehicles equipped with electric sliding doors, if there is ice or snow freezing around the door and rear track, it may prevent the door from opening electrically. In this case, remove the ice before using the electric sliding door.

## 5. Driving guide

### CAUTION

- During driving, do not press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal simultaneously, as this may limit the output of the hybrid powertrain.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal, or press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal simultaneously when parking on a slope.

### WARNING

- **When the vehicle is stopped and the "READY" indicator lamp is on, keep your foot on the brake pedal at all times to prevent rolling.**
- **When the vehicle is driven solely by the drive motor, the driver should pay special attention to pedestrians on the road. Due to the absence of engine noise, pedestrians may misjudge the vehicle's movement. Even if the vehicle is equipped with a pedestrian warning sound system, caution is advised while driving, as nearby pedestrians may not notice the vehicle in a noisy environment.**
- **During normal driving, do not turn off the hybrid powertrain. Turning off the hybrid powertrain while driving will not lose steering and braking control, but the power assist for steering will be lost. This will make steering more difficult, so the vehicle should be safely pulled over as soon as possible.**

### WARNING

- **Do not drive the vehicle off-road. This vehicle is not designed for off-road driving. If off-road driving is unavoidable, please drive with caution.**
- **Do not drive through rivers or other bodies of water. Otherwise, it may cause short circuits in electrical/electronic components, damage the hybrid powertrain, or result in other serious damage to the vehicle.**
- **Emergency braking, sudden acceleration, and steering may cause tire slippage, reducing the vehicle's maneuverability.**
- **Sudden acceleration, engine braking caused by gear shifting, or changes in engine rotation speed may cause the vehicle to skid.**

### WARNING

- After driving through a puddle, gently press the brake pedal to ensure the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake linings may cause the brakes to malfunction. If only one side's brake linings are wet and not working correctly, it may affect steering control.
- If any wheel is off the ground or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc., do not spin the wheels excessively. Otherwise, it may damage the drivetrain components or cause the vehicle to lurch forward or backward, leading to an accident.

### WARNING

- Do not allow the vehicle to move backward when selecting the drive gear, or forward when the gearshift lever is in the R position. Otherwise, it may lead to an accident or cause damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the gearshift lever to the P position while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, it may damage the transmission and potentially cause the vehicle to lose control.
- Do not shift the gearshift lever to the R position while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, it may damage the transmission and potentially cause the vehicle to lose control.

### WARNING

- Do not shift the gearshift lever to the drive gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, it may damage the transmission and potentially cause the vehicle to lose control.
- Shifting the gearshift lever to the N gear while the vehicle is moving will disconnect the hybrid powertrain. When in N gear, engine braking will not function.
- Do not shift the gearshift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. Shifting gearshift lever to any gear other than P or N may cause unintended sudden acceleration, leading to accidents and serious injury or even death.

## 5. Driving guide

---

### 5.7.4 Efficient operation of vehicle

- Before driving, make sure that the parking brake is completely released and the parking brake indicator lamp is off.
- Maintain sufficient tire pressure, as a too low tire pressure can cause premature tire wear and higher fuel consumption.
- Ensure that the wheel alignment is accurate. Otherwise it will cause premature tire wear, increased engine load and higher fuel consumption.
- Do not overload the vehicle, and unload unnecessary items from the vehicle, as excessive load will increase the engine load and the fuel consumption thereafter.
- Accelerate the vehicle slowly and smoothly to avoid rapid acceleration.
- Avoid roads with traffic jams as much as possible, as driving in traffic jam will increase the fuel consumption.
- Drive according to traffic lights, or keep a safe distance from other vehicle to avoid unnecessary parking or emergency braking, which can save fuel and reduce brake system wear.

- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as this can cause premature wear, overheating of the brake lining, and wasted fuel.
- When driving, select good road surface. If driving on uneven roads, control the vehicle speed to avoid collision or scratches.
- If the chassis is stained with objects such as excessive dirt, clean them in time to reduce the vehicle's weight and prevent corrosion.
- Perform regular maintenance on the vehicle to maintain its optimal working condition, as dirty air filter, spark plugs, oil, and grease will reduce the engine performance and increase fuel consumption.
- When starting the engine at a low temperature, drive slowly for a few minutes, and ensure the engine is warmed up before acceleration.
- Do not open windows when driving at high speed.
- Properly use the A/C, etc.

### 5.7.5 Fire prevention

In order to prevent vehicle fires, pay attention to the followings during use:

1. Do not store flammables or explosives in the vehicle:
  - In hot summer days, the inside temperature of vehicles parked in the sun can be as high as 70°C or more. If flammables or explosives such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes are stored in the vehicle, fire and even explosion will be likely to occur.
  - Items with risk of fire such as lithium batteries or power banks left in the vehicle by passengers are also likely to cause fire.
2. Make sure the cigarette butts are completely extinguished after smoking:
  - If the cigarette butts are not completely extinguished, fire may be caused.

3. It is recommended to regularly drive to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspections:
  - Also subject all electric lines of the vehicle to regular inspections. Specifically speaking, check whether the connectors, insulation, and fixed positions of electrical components and harnesses are normal, and handle any problems found during inspection in a timely manner.
4. Do not modify the electrical circuits or install additional electrical components:
  - Installation of additional electrical consumers (such as high-power audio device and Xenon headlamp) will cause excessive load on the electrical line, causing overheating and even fire of harnesses.  
Never use fuses that exceed the rated specifications of the electrical consumer or other metal wires to replace the fuses.
5. Precautions for driving:
  - During driving and parking, especially in summer, be sure to check if there are flammables such as hay, dry branches, leaves and wheat stalks under the vehicle, as they may be ignited by the components heated after long-time driving, such as engine exhaust pipe.
  - Neither park the vehicle next to garbage dumps or in the other places severely plagued by rats, nor place anything that may attract rats, such as snacks, as rats tend to bite and damage the vehicle's harnesses, thus causing fire.
6. Always place a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle, and know its operation method:
  - In order to ensure the safety of the vehicle, place a fire extinguisher in the vehicle, and regularly check and replace it; at the same time, be familiar with the operation method of the fire extinguisher, so as to be prepared for handling any unexpected fire accident.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### 6.1 Maintenance instructions

#### Safety precautions

To avoid potential hazards, please read this section before work and confirm that you have the necessary tools and techniques.

- Make sure that the vehicle is parked on level ground, shut down the engine, and apply the parking brake.
- When cleaning parts and components, use the commercially available de-greaser or parts cleaning agent, instead of gasoline.
- Keep lit cigarettes, sparks, and open flames away from batteries and all fuel system related components.
- When working on batteries or with compressed air, wear goggles and protective clothing.

#### WARNING

**Incorrect vehicle maintenance or driving the vehicle before the problem is solved may cause a traffic accident, resulting in serious injury or death.**

#### Potential hazards of the vehicle

- High Voltage Electric Shock: Do not touch high voltage components to prevent injuries from electric shock.
- Carbon Monoxide: The carbon monoxide in engine exhaust gases is a toxic gas. Always start the vehicle in a well-ventilated area.
- Burns: the engine and exhaust system are at high temperature during operation, which can easily cause burns. Therefore, wait till the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching the related parts and components.

#### CAUTION

This section lists some of important safety precautions. We cannot list all the dangers you may encounter during maintenance work.

### 6.2 Interior maintenance

#### Cleaning and maintenance of instruments and plastic parts

- Clean the surface of instruments and plastic parts with a clean soft cloth and clean water.
- If it cannot be cleaned, it is required to use a special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent for cleaning.

#### CAUTION

Solvent-based cleaning agents can damage plastic parts.

#### WARNING

**Do not use cab sprays and solvent-based cleaning agents to clean the surface of the instrument panel and airbag components. Otherwise, it may loosen the surface and trigger the airbag, which may cause serious injury to passengers.**

**Cleaning and maintenance of carpets**

- Vacuum the dust on the carpet frequently.
- Scrub the carpet regularly with detergent to keep it clean.

**CAUTION**  
Please perform the cleaning in strict accordance with the use instructions of cleaning agents.

**WARNING**

- **Never splash liquids inside the vehicle, such as on the floor and in the trunk.**
- **Do not add water to the foam cleaning agent. The carpet shall be kept as dry as possible.**

**Cleaning and maintenance of leather\***

- Vacuum the dust.
- Clean the leather with a clean soft cloth and clean water.
- Wipe the leather dry with another dry soft cloth.
- If the cleaning methods described above are not enough to clean stains, please combine these methods with special leather cleaning soap or detergent.

**CAUTION**  
If a leather stain remover is used, wipe it dry with a soft dry cloth as soon as possible.

**WARNING**  
**Never leave a soft cloth wet with leather stain remover on any part of the interior trim for a long time. Avoid color fading or breakage of the resin or fiber of the interior trim fabrics.**

**Cleaning and maintenance of seat belts**

- Pull the seat belt out slowly and keep it extracted.
- Pull the seat belt out slowly and keep it extracted.
- After seat belts dry completely, retract the seat belts.

**CAUTION**

- You must wait for the seat belt to dry completely before retracting it. Otherwise, seat belt retractors may be damaged.
- Regularly check all the seat belts in the vehicle to ensure that the seat belts are clean and avoid hindering the normal operation of seat belts.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### **⚠WARNING**

- **If the seat belt webbing, connectors, retractor mechanism or buckles are damaged, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for replacement as soon as possible.**
- **For the inspection and repair of an accident vehicle, seat belts must be replaced, no matter whether they are damaged or intact.**
- **Prevent foreign matter or liquid from entering the seat belt buckle, causing buckles and seat belts to fail to work normally.**
- **In any case, do not disassemble and modify the seat belt without permission.**
- **It is forbidden to use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belts, for fear of damaging the seat belt webbing and impairing the function of seat belt.**

### **Cleaning and replacement of filters**

The vehicle is equipped with an air cleaner, an A/C filter, an oil filter, and a fuel filter. They aim to filter gases or fluids. If they are too dirty or clogged, the normal operation of corresponding systems will be affected. Therefore, it is recommended to regularly clean or replace the filters at the GAC Motor authorized shop according to the provisions of the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.

## **6.3 Exterior maintenance**

### **Vehicle washing**

Washing the vehicle frequently helps to protect its appearance.

Vehicle washing shall be performed in a cool place, rather than under direct sunlight. If the vehicle is left in the sun for a long time, wait till the vehicle's body surface cools down before washing the vehicle.

When using an automatic vehicle washer, be sure to follow the instructions of the operator of the automatic vehicle washer.

### **⚠WARNING**

**Before washing the vehicle, the power supply must be turned off.**

 CAUTION

The paintwork of the vehicle body is strong enough to withstand the washing of the automatic vehicle washer. However, it is important to pay attention to the effects on the paintwork. The structure of the automatic vehicle washer, the cleaning agent, the filtering state of the clean water, and the type of wax solvent that does not meet the requirements may cause damage to the paintwork.

**Manual vehicle washing**

- Rinse the vehicle with plenty of clean water to remove floating dust.
- Prepare a bucket of water and add a special cleaning agent for car washing to it.
- Gently scrub the vehicle with a soft cloth, sponge, or soft brush, and rinse it several times from top to bottom.
- The wheels, door sills and other parts shall be washed finally, and sponges or soft cloth shall be replaced when washing the vehicle.
- After scrubbing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with plenty of water.
- After washing, carefully dry the paintwork of the vehicle using a soft towel or antelope skin.

 CAUTION

When the body has dirt such as asphalt, it needs to be cleaned with special cleaning agent, and then washed with clean water to avoid damaging the surface finish of the body. Check the body for paint peeling and scratches while wiping the body. If any, drive to the GAC Motor authorized shop for touch-up.

When using a steam cleaner or a high pressure cleaner to wash the vehicle, be sure to be very careful. Be sure to wash the vehicle in accordance with the operation instructions and requirements of the steam cleaner or high pressure cleaner. Pay attention to the working pressure, temperature and spraying distance:

- When using a steam cleaner or a high pressure cleaner to wash the vehicle, keep a sufficient water spray distance from the vehicle, and ensure the temperature does not exceed 60°C.
- For models equipped with an electric sunroof, maintain a spraying distance of more than 80 cm during cleaning. The vehicle may be damaged, if the high-pressure cleaner is too close to the vehicle or its pressure or temperature is too high.

- Do not wash the radar sensor or parking assist camera with a high-pressure cleaner for a long time; when washing the radar sensor or parking assist camera, keep a water spray distance of more than 30 cm.

 WARNING

- **When washing the vehicle manually, pay attention to personal safety and beware of angular components at the bottom of the vehicle to avoid being scratched.**
- **When cleaning, pay special attention to the bottom of the vehicle and the inside of the wheelhouse, and do not hurt your hands and arms by sharp components.**
- **When cleaning the vehicle, do not directly flush water into the engine compartment. Otherwise, it will affect the service life of various parts and components in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not use a high-pressure water gun to wash the electrical box.**

## 6. In-service maintenance

### Waxing

Regular waxing can protect the paintwork of the vehicle body and keep the vehicle body clean. In order to effectively protect the paintwork of the vehicle body, it is recommended to apply high-quality hard wax once a year to protect the paintwork against corrosion by external bad environments and to resist light mechanical scratches.

Be sure to wipe the appearance of the entire vehicle dry before waxing. Before waxing the vehicle, please select a high-quality paintwork wax protectant. High-quality wax protectant generally falls into the following two types:

- Car body wax: A wax used to protect the paintwork against damage by external bad environments such as sun exposure and air pollution. This type of wax is generally used for new vehicles.
- Polishing wax: A wax that can restore the gloss of the paintwork that has been oxidized or tarnished. This type of wax is generally used to restore the gloss of paintwork.

### Cleaning and maintenance of external plastic parts

External plastic parts are generally washed with clean water, a soft cloth and soft brushes. If they cannot be cleaned, please use the special solvent-free plastic cleaner approved by our company.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not use solvent-based cleaning agents when washing plastic parts. Otherwise, it is easy to damage the plastic parts.

### Washing of window glasses and rearview mirrors

Clean the window glasses and rearview mirrors with alcohol-based glass cleaning agent, and then wipe the glass surface dry with a clean, lint-free soft cloth or antelope skin.

After curing the surface of the vehicle body, remove the wax residue on the glasses with a special cleaning agent and cleaning cloth. Avoid scratching the wiper blades.

Remove snow from the windows and rearview mirrors using a small brush.

Remove accumulated ice using de-icer spray. Ice removal shovel can also be used, but special care should be taken to avoid damaging components, and ice must be scraped in the same direction during the use.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not scrape back and forth when removing ice buildup.
- Do not use warm or hot water to remove ice and snow from windshield and rearview mirror. Otherwise, the windshields may burst.
- If there are residual rubber, grease and silicone substances on the glass, they must be removed with special window cleaning agent or silicone cleaning agent.

### Cleaning and maintenance of wiper covers

Try to avoid parking the vehicle under a tree frequently for a long time. In case of leaves or other debris on the surface of the wiper cover, please clean them in time.

### Cleaning of wiper blades

- Enter wiper maintenance mode, lift the wiper arm, and carefully wipe off dust and dirt from the wiper blades with a soft cloth.
- After cleaning, gently lower the wiper arm back to the windshield glass.

#### CAUTION

- Be careful when lowering the wiper arm to prevent it from falling and hitting the windshield glass instantly.
- The surface of the wiper blade is coated with a layer of graphite to ensure smooth wiping without scratching noise. Solvent-based cleaning agents, hard sponges and sharp objects can damage the graphite layer. The damage to the graphite layer will increase the wiping noise of the wiper, so it should be replaced in time.
- In winter or cold conditions, be sure to check whether the wiper blade is frozen together with the windshield glass before using the wiper. If so, perform de-icing first. Otherwise, the wiper blade and wiper motor will be damaged.

### Maintenance of sealing strips

Frequent and proper protection of the rubber sealing strips of the doors, windows and other parts of the vehicle is intended to maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. Such protection can also improve the tightness, make the door easy to open, reduce the impact sound of closing the door, and prevent freezing in winter. and prevent freezing in winter.

When performing maintenance on sealing strips, remove dust and dirt from surfaces using a soft cloth. Apply the special protective agent to rubber sealing strips regularly.

### Cleaning and maintenance of wheels

Regularly remove anti-skid salts on the wheels and debris on the brake linings, keep the wheels aesthetic, maintain the surface smooth and prolong the service life of wheels. It is recommended to perform the following operations regularly:

- Remove anti-skid salts on the wheels and debris on the brake linings using acid-free cleaning agents every two weeks.
- Apply high-quality hard wax to the alloy wheels every three months.

#### CAUTION

- Do not maintain the wheel surface with vehicle polish or other abrasives.
- The wheels with damaged protective coating on surface must be repaired in time.
- Using a high-pressure cleaner may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheels, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not spray the tire with cluster nozzles, otherwise, it will cause damage to the tire and cause traffic accidents.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### 6.4 Inspecting and adding of fluids

#### 6.4.1 Fuel

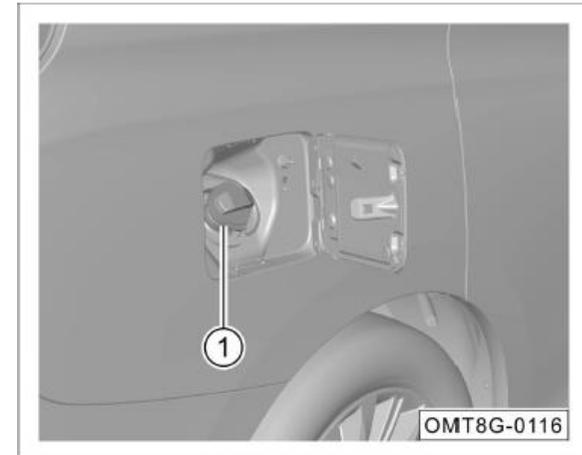
As the amount of fuel decreases when the vehicle is running, the fuel gauge scale will gradually decrease.

When the fuel level is too low, the yellow indicator lamp  flashes, and the instrument cluster module will give an alarm message.

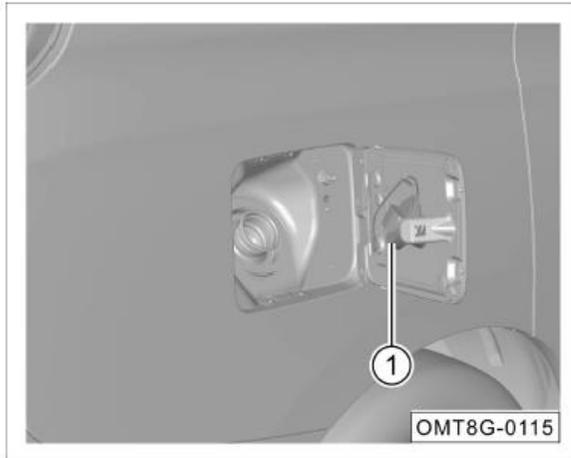
#### Adding fuel



1. While the engine is off and the vehicle is unlocked, press and hold the button  on the right side of the instrument panel. The fuel tank will automatically relieve pressure. Once the pressure relief is complete, the fuel tank flap will pop open, allowing you to refuel.



2. Fully open the fuel tank flap, then slowly rotate the fuel filler cap ① counterclockwise. Before completely removing the fuel filler cap ①, let it remain in place for a moment to allow the fuel tank to release internal fuel vapor pressure, and then remove the fuel filler cap ①.



3. Hang the fuel filler cap inside the fuel tank flap and begin adding fuel.
4. After refueling, tighten the fuel filler cap clockwise until you hear three “clicks”, indicating that the fuel filler cap is securely tightened.
5. After tightening the fuel filler cap, ensure the fuel tank flap is closed. Once the sensor detects that the flap is closed, it will take about 5 seconds to activate the actuator to lock the fuel tank flap.

### NOTE

- After the fuel tank flap is unlocked, the system needs about 30 seconds to relieve pressure. Please wait for the pressure relief to complete before opening the fuel filler cap.
- This model conforms to the China VI emission standards. The China VI fuel supply system design adopts a closed oil and gas recovery system. When refueling, the refueling gun switch may be triggered and the refueling gun may jump even the refueling is not enough due to high ambient temperature or too fast refueling, which is a normal phenomenon. In this case, the refueling should be slowed down.
- When refueling, do not swing the fuel nozzle, as this may cause the nozzle to close prematurely.
- After refueling, be sure to close the fuel filler cap promptly to avoid the engine warning light coming on.
- It is recommended to regularly consume and replenish fuel to ensure the quality of the fuel in the fuel tank.
- Fuel grade: Please check the fuel label on the fuel filler cap (if available).

### CAUTION

- When opening the fuel filler cap, maintain as much distance from the vehicle as possible, as gasoline and gasoline vapors may suddenly spill from the fuel tank under pressure.
- After opening the fuel filler flap, refueling must be completed within 15 minutes; otherwise, the internal valve of the fuel tank will close. Attempting to refuel again at that point may risk fluid spillage or backflow. You will need to press down the fuel tank flap release button again to complete a pressure relief action.
- Using low-grade fuel or substandard fuel may damage the engine or make the engine fail to meet performance requirements.
- Insufficient fuel levels may cause irregular fuel supply to the engine. When the fuel level shows below 1/4, to avoid the risk of stalling due to insufficient fuel supply while on a slope or turning, please refuel in a timely manner.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

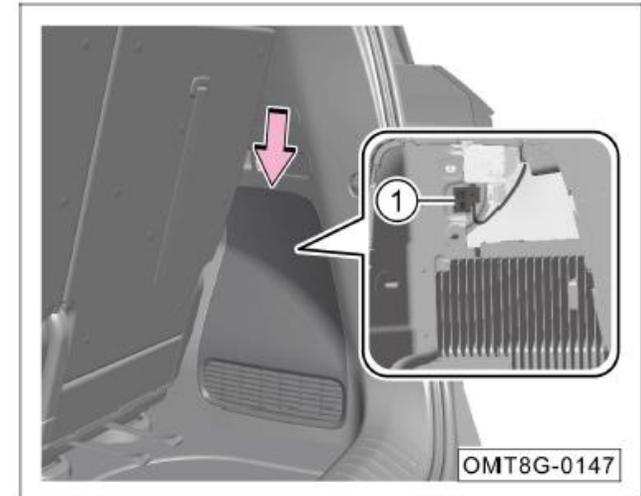
- When refueling, ensure that the fuel nozzle is inserted as deep as possible into the fuel pipe. After the nozzle clicks off the first time when full, do not continue refueling to avoid fuel spillage and potential damage to the vehicle due to overfilling.
- Only use the specified type of fuel filler cap; do not interchange it with caps of different models.

### ⚠ WARNING

- At any time, be sure to shut down the engine when refueling, and pay attention to open flames and fire.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle or fuel filler cap, discharge any static electricity from your body to prevent the risk of fire.
- Please avoid contact of fuel with skin or clothing.
- Please refuel the vehicle according to the vehicle fuel grade. If fuel not complying with the regulations is added accidentally, do not start the engine. Please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop immediately for treatment.

### Emergency release of the fuel tank flap

When the fuel filler flap cannot be unlocked using the button inside the vehicle, you can attempt to manually emergency unlock it by opening the fuel filler flap on the right side.



- Power on the vehicle, open the liftgate, and pry open the trunk's right side maintenance cover in the direction of the arrow. Remove the electronic lock manual unlocking cable that is caught on the inner metal plate.
- Pull the electronic lock manual unlocking cable outward to open the fuel tank flap.

 CAUTION

- After 30 seconds, slowly unscrew the fuel filler cap. If you hear a hissing sound during the unscrewing process, stop until the sound stops before continuing to unscrew. Once the fuel filler cap is opened, you can proceed with refueling.
- From powering on the vehicle to completing refueling, the entire process must keep the vehicle in the powered-on state.
- This is an emergency refueling situation, and there may be high pressure in the fuel tank due to vapor buildup. Carefully loosen the fuel tank cap; if you hear a hissing sound, do not continue to open the cap. Wait for the sound to dissipate before slowly opening it.
- During refueling, difficulties may arise due to high pressure in the fuel tank, such as the fuel nozzle frequently shutting off.
- This refueling method should only be used in emergencies. If this situation occurs, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

6.4.2 Engine oil

Function of engine oil

Engine oil has functions such as lubrication, sealing, cooling, anti-rusting and cleaning.

Specifications of engine oil

The engine has been filled with high-quality engine oil, which can be used in the year-round climate except for extreme cold weather before delivery.

When purchasing engine oil, please check whether the specifications indicated on the outer packaging of the engine oil are suitable for the engine of this vehicle.

 NOTE

- Engine oil grade: SN/GF-5.
- Engine oil viscosity: 0W-20.

 WARNING

**Always use the engine oil approved by our company. If oil of other grades is used, the engine damage caused by this will not be covered under the quality warranty.**

 NOTE

- Be sure to go to the GAC Motor authorized shop to change the engine oil according to the period specified in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.
- If the vehicle is running under severe conditions, fuel with high sulfur content is used, the engine idles for a long time (e.g., a taxi), the vehicle is driven in a high-dust area, the vehicle often tows a trailer, or the vehicle is used in an alpine area, the maintenance cycle shall be shortened and the maintenance times shall be increased.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### Low oil pressure warning lamp

While driving, if the warning lamp  comes on, you must pull over in a safe location and turn off the vehicle. After the engine cools down, perform an inspection of the oil level.

If the oil level is normal and the warning lamp still comes on after starting the vehicle, do not continue to start the vehicle. Contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair promptly.

#### ⚠WARNING

- Ignoring the warning lamp and related warning instructions may damage the engine.
- Low oil pressure warning lamp cannot indicate the oil level, so the oil level must be checked regularly.

### Inspecting the oil level

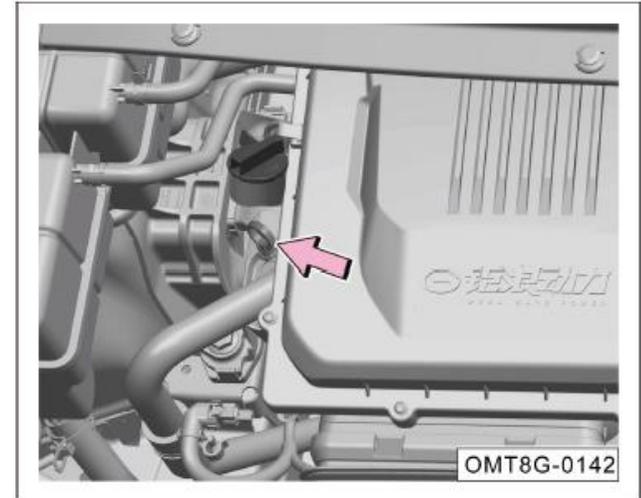
It is essential to regularly inspect the oil level. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake. Turn off the vehicle, and after the engine cools down, open the engine hood to check the oil level.

#### ⚠WARNING

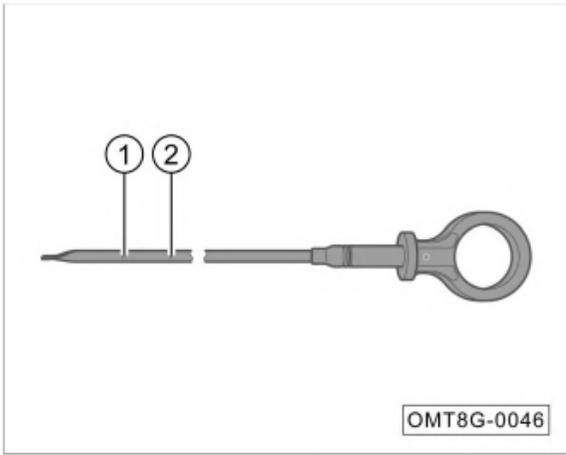
- Be careful when working in the engine compartment.
- The front engine compartment is a high-risk area. Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant instructions before opening the engine hood.

#### ℹNOTE

While checking the oil level, ensure the engine is cold.



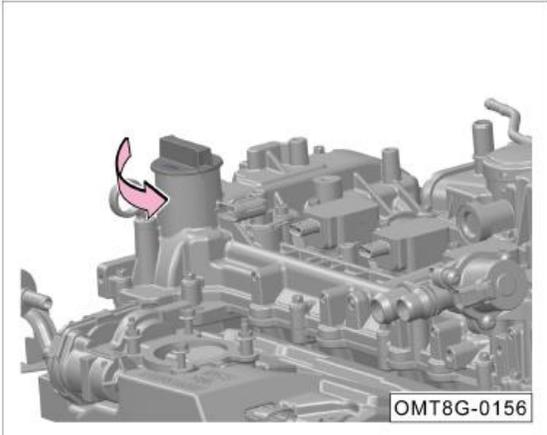
- Pull out the oil dipstick ①.



- Wipe off the oil stains on the dipstick using a clean cloth, and then insert the oil dipstick into the end.
- Pull out the oil dipstick again and read the measured oil level: the oil level should be between the lower limit mark ① and the upper limit mark ②.
- If there is too little engine oil, please add engine oil in time. Otherwise, poor lubrication will damage the engine.

**Adding engine oil**

After checking the oil level, if required, add engine oil following the steps below:



- Unscrew the oil filler cap counterclockwise.
- Add the engine oil in small quantities several times, and check the oil level after each filling.
- When the oil level approaches the upper limit mark ② and is sufficient, stop adding oil. Replace the oil filler cap and tighten it clockwise.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Be careful when adding the engine oil. Do not spill it. If the engine oil gets on your skin, be sure to rinse the skin thoroughly.**
- **If there is too much oil after filling, do not start the vehicle. Please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for assistance as soon as possible, or it may damage the catalytic converter.**
- **After filling, the oil filler cap must be tightened to prevent oil from splashing out when the vehicle is started, which could lead to a fire.**
- **Since engine oil is toxic, it shall be stored in the original container and kept out of children's contact to avoid poisoning due to accidental ingestion.**
- **Do not add other lubricants to the engine oil, otherwise, the engine will be damaged, and the fault caused by adding lubricant is not within the scope of warranty.**

## 6. In-service maintenance

### 6.4.3 Coolant

#### Function of coolant

Coolant has functions such as cooling, anti-freezing and anti-corrosion.

#### Specifications of coolant

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the cooling system has been filled with coolant, which can be used in the year-round climate except for extreme cold weather.

#### NOTE

- Coolant specifications: DF-6, -35°C coolant.
- Be sure to go to the GAC Motor authorized shop to change coolant according to the period specified in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.
- If coolant changes color, shorten the maintenance cycle and go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for change.

The cooling systems installed in this vehicle include: engine cooling system, integrated motor control unit cooling system, intercooler cooling system, and power battery cooling system. Therefore, during routine vehicle inspections, it is essential to check the coolant levels in each of the cooling systems.

#### High engine coolant temperature indicator lamp

If the coolant temperature is too high, the red indicator lamp  will come on in the instrument cluster module, along with a warning message to alert the driver. At this point, you must pull over in a safe location and turn off the vehicle. After the engine cools down, inspect the coolant level.

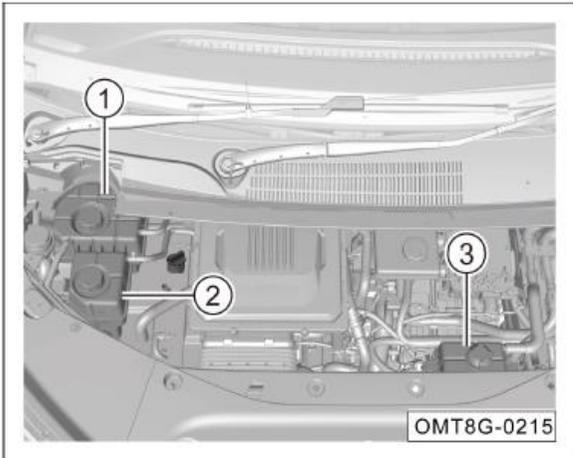
If the coolant level is normal and the indicator lamp still comes on after starting the vehicle, do not continue to start the vehicle. Contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair promptly.

#### Inspecting the coolant level

It is essential to regularly inspect the coolant level. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake. Turn off the vehicle, and after the engine cools down, open the engine hood to check the coolant level.

#### WARNING

- **Be careful when working in the engine compartment.**
- **The front engine compartment is a high-risk area. Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant instructions before opening the engine hood.**
- **If steam or coolant flows out from the engine compartment, do not open the engine hood, for fear of burns; wait till there is no steam or coolant overflowing and the system cools down before opening the engine hood.**



- ① Engine coolant expansion tank.
  - ② Intercooler and integrated motor control unit coolant expansion tank.
  - ③ Power battery coolant expansion tank.
- Inspect the coolant levels in each expansion tank to ensure they are between the upper limit mark "MAX" and the lower limit mark "MIN".

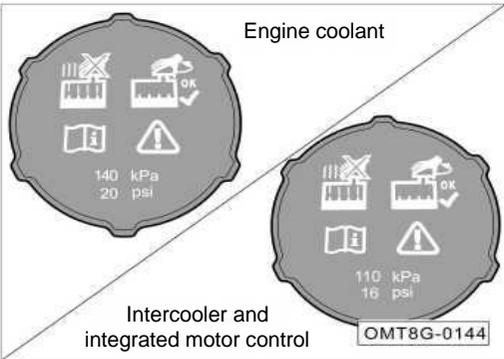
**NOTE**

When the engine is not cooled, the coolant level will be high, and there will be errors in checking the coolant level.

**CAUTION**

When the coolant level is below the lower limit mark "MIN", coolant must be added. If the coolant is too low, it may affect the cooling effectiveness and lead to engine damage.

**Adding coolant**



**Power battery coolant**



## 6. In-service maintenance

After checking the coolant level, if required, add the coolant following the steps below:

- Wrap the expansion tank cap with a thick cloth and unscrew it counterclockwise.
- Add coolant to a level between the upper limit mark “MAX” and the lower limit mark “MIN”.
- Tighten the expansion tank cap clockwise to the lock position.

### CAUTION

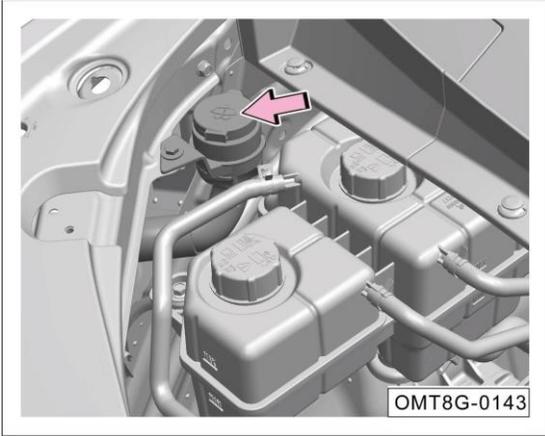
- When the engine is not cooled down, and the cooling system is under high pressure, do not open the expansion tank cap; otherwise you will be scalded by the gushing coolant.
- Coolant can only be added after the engine has cooled down. The coolant level after filling must not exceed the upper limit mark "MAX". Otherwise, when the vehicle is started and the cooling system is under high pressure, coolant will overflow.
- Only fresh coolant is allowed to be added.

### WARNING

- **It is forbidden to mix coolant that is not approved by our company in the original coolant.**
- **In case of emergency, if other coolant or pure water is added, you should go to the GAC Motor authorized shop to clean the cooling system and replace it with a new one.**
- **If the too much coolant is consumed or it is consumed too fast, there may be a leak in the cooling system. In this case, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair in time.**
- **Coolant must be contained in the original container, and kept out of children's contact to avoid poisoning due to accidental ingestion.**

6.4.4 Windshield washer fluid and wiper blades

Adding windshield washer fluid



If the washer fluid level is found to be too low, add the washer fluid into the reservoir in time.

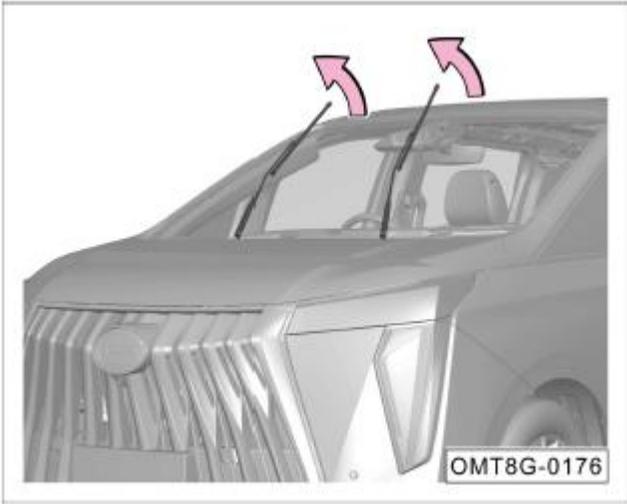
**CAUTION**

Do not mix the windshield washer fluid with other washing liquids, otherwise, it will cause the washer fluid components to decompose and block the windshield washer nozzle.

**WARNING**

- Be careful when working in the engine compartment. Before operation, be sure to carefully read and follow the relevant instructions.
- Do not misuse coolant or any other additives as windshield washer fluid. Otherwise, oil stains will be left on the windshield during cleaning of the windshield, which will affect the visibility and easily cause accidents.
- It is forbidden to use windshield washer fluid with ethanol content exceeding 10%. In high temperature environment, this type of windshield washer fluid will have corrosive effect on lamps and lead to cracking of lamps. It is recommended to use methanol washing solution.

Replacing of front windshield wiper blades



You can enter the wiper maintenance mode in the following two ways:

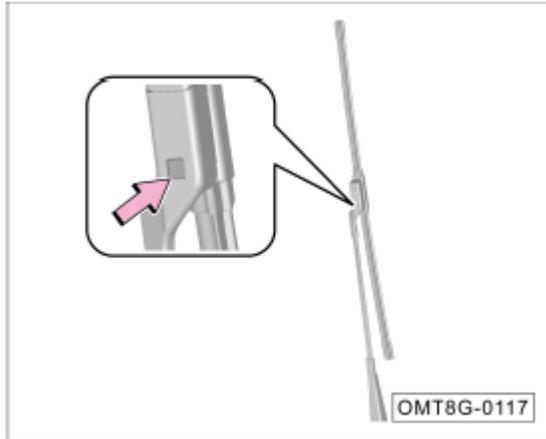
Method 1:

- Switch the START/STOP button to the "ON" gear, and then switch it to the "OFF" gear.
- Within approximately 10 seconds, turn the wiper combination switch to the MIST gear. The wiper arm will operate for half a cycle and then stop, entering wiper maintenance mode.

Method 2:

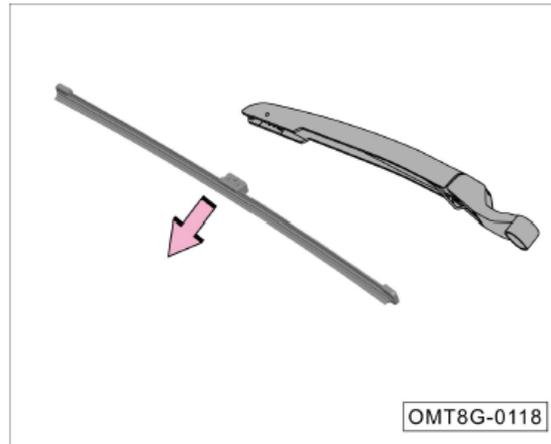
- Access the settings interface through the AV system to activate wiper maintenance mode.

## 6. In-service maintenance



1. Lift the wiper arm and press the lock button -arrow- on the wiper arm to disassemble the wiper blade.
2. Install the new wiper blade into the wiper arm in reverse steps. It is installed in place when a "click" is heard.
3. Gently put the wiper arm back onto the windshield glass.
4. Switch the START/STOP button to the "ON" gear, and the wiper arm will automatically return to its original position.

### Replacing of rear windshield wiper blades



1. Within 10 seconds after switching the START/STOP button to the "OFF" gear, turn the rear wiper knob to ON to activate the wiper, which will quickly return to its original position after wiping. The rear wiper will then move to its maximum position and stop.
2. Lift the wiper arm and press the wiper blade in the direction of the -arrow- to disassemble the wiper blade.
3. Install the new wiper blade into the wiper arm in reverse steps. It is installed in place when a "click" is heard.
4. Gently put the wiper arm back onto the windshield glass.

5. Switch the START/STOP button to the "ON" gear, and the wiper arm will automatically return to its original position.

To replace the wiper blade, it is recommended to go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for replacement.

#### CAUTION

- New wiper blades with the same length and specifications as the previous ones must be used.
- Be careful while lowering the wiper arm to prevent it from falling and hitting the windshield glass instantly.
- The status of wiper blades must be checked regularly and replaced as required. Damaged wiper blades must be replaced in time.
- Excessive worn or dirty wiper blades are easy to scratch the windshield glass, and will affect the field of vision and reduce driving safety during use.

6.4.5 Brake fluid

Function of brake fluid

Brake fluid is used to transmit power in the hydraulic brake system of the vehicle.

The brake fluid is water-absorbent, so it can continuously absorb moisture in the surrounding air during use. If the brake fluid remains in the system for a long time and the water absorption is too high, air resistance will be generated in the system pipeline during braking, which will reduce the braking effect, affect driving safety, and even lead to complete failure of the brake system, causing accidents. Therefore, be sure to go to the GAC Motor authorized shop to check the brake fluid level or change the brake fluid according to the period specified in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.

NOTE

Specifications of brake fluid: DOT4.

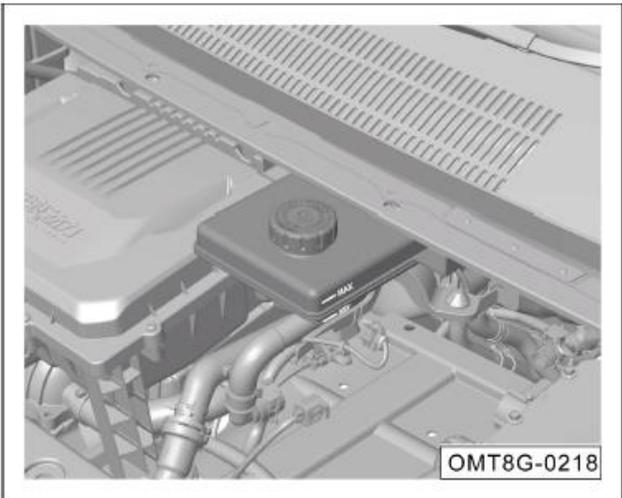
WARNING

- The use of waste brake fluid or improper brake fluid will greatly reduce the braking effect and even cause brake system failure! The company does not assume any responsibility (including quality guarantee) for vehicle failures and damage caused thereby.
- Brake fluid in use must meet the criteria and be fresh.

Brake system indicator lamp

When the vehicle is running, if the indicator lamp  comes on in red, the level of brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir may be too low. In this case, be sure to immediately stop the vehicle at a safe place and check whether the brake fluid level is normal.

Inspection of the brake fluid level



When the engine cools down, check whether the brake fluid level is between the upper limit mark "MAX" and the lower limit mark "MIN".

During vehicle operation, the brake fluid level may decrease slightly due to the wear of the brake lining and automatic adjustments.

If the brake fluid level drops significantly in a short period of time or drops below "MIN", it indicates that the brake system may leak.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### NOTE

- Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant instructions before opening the engine hood.
- If the brake fluid level is checked to be below the lower limit mark "MIN", the brake fluid must be added.
- If the brake system lamp does not go out or comes on again during driving after adding the brake fluid, there may be a leakage in the brake system that causes the brake level decreasing too fast or the brake system may be faulty. In this case, do not continue driving. Please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair in time.

### Adding brake fluid

In order to ensure the normal operation of the brake system, the added brake fluid shall meet the specifications:

- Open the brake fluid reservoir cap counterclockwise.
- Add fresh brake fluid to the upper limit mark "MAX" and stop adding.
- Tighten the brake fluid reservoir cap clockwise.

### CAUTION

- The brake fluid will corrode the paintwork of the vehicle body. Brake fluid splashed on the paintwork shall be wiped off in time.
- The use of waste brake fluid or improper brake fluid will greatly reduce the braking effect due to incompatibility, and even lead to brake system failure.

### WARNING

- **Brake fluid is a poisonous substance and must be packed in the original sealed container and placed in a safe place. Beware of children's contact, so as to avoid poisoning by accidental ingestion.**
- **Brake fluid must be stored in accordance with environmental protection laws.**

6.4.6 Battery

Battery symbols and instructions for battery operation

	Goggles must be worn during operation!
	The battery electrolyte is highly corrosive. Protective gloves and goggles must be worn during operation!
	Open flames, sparks, uncovered lamps and smoking are prohibited in the workplace!
	An extremely explosive gas mixture is generated during battery charging!
	Children must keep away from electrolytes and vehicle batteries!

In case of unfamiliarity with the operation process or no special tools, never carry out any operations on the electrical system of the vehicle. The relevant operation shall be conducted by the GAC Motor authorized shop.

Charging system warning lamp

The warning lamp is used to indicate alternator failure.

Switch the vehicle power to the "ON" gear. When the vehicle is not started, the warning lamp  will come on; after the vehicle starts, the warning lamp should go out.

While driving, if the warning lamp comes on, it indicates a fault in the charging system. You should promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.

Battery position

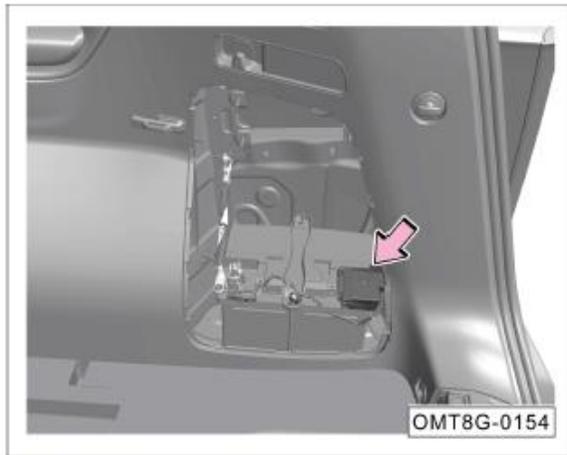


The battery is located on the right side of the trunk. You can see the battery by prying open the trim cover at the -arrow- position.

## 6. In-service maintenance

### Check Battery

The battery must be checked according to the period specified in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*.



1. Lift the positive terminal cover of the battery.
2. Check the connection of the battery connector and the cable for corrosion or looseness; check the appearance of the battery for cracks and swelling. If the above conditions occur, please promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.
3. If the vehicle is not used for a long period of time, check the battery condition frequently.

### NOTE

- If the battery level is insufficient or the battery is damaged, which makes it difficult to start the vehicle, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop in time to charge or replace the battery.
- If it is required to replace the battery, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for replacement; if a wrong type of battery is used, the vehicle may not run due to incompatibility or the electrical system may fail.

### Instructions for using the battery

If the vehicle power is in the "ON" position and the vehicle is not started, using electrical devices will cause the battery to discharge quickly.

1. Do not use electrical devices for an extended period when the vehicle power is in the "ON" position and the vehicle is not started.
2. When leaving the vehicle, make sure that the doors are closed and all electrical devices (e.g., lamps) are turned off.

 CAUTION

- When the vehicle cannot be started due to a low battery, you can try emergency starting; if the vehicle still cannot be started, please contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.
- To avoid damage to the electrical system of the vehicle, never connect power generation equipment such as solar panels or vehicle battery chargers to a power outlet.
- The battery contains toxic substances such as sulfuric acid and lead, so it must be properly disposed of and must not be treated as ordinary household waste.

**6.5 A/C filter**

**Inspecting and cleaning of the A/C filter**

Check or clean the A/C filter regularly according to the provisions in the *Warranty and Maintenance Manual*. If the vehicle is running in harsh conditions and the A/C filter gets too dirty, it is recommended to replace the A/C filter at an interval shorter than that specified.

The A/C filter is located inside the glove box on the passenger side. Disassembling the A/C filter involves complex components; to avoid unnecessary damage, it is recommended to have the A/C filter inspected, cleaned, or replaced at a GAC Motor authorized shop.

**6.6 Replacing of bulbs**

**Instructions for replacing bulbs**

All vehicle lamp is LED and cannot be disassembled or replaced individually. If there are issues such as bulb damage or malfunction, please promptly visit a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.

 WARNING

**Modifications to external lighting and signaling devices are prohibited.**

## 6. In-service maintenance

### 6.7 Wheels

#### ⚠WARNING

- Within the first 500 km, the road adhesion of new tires is unlikely to reach the best condition. Therefore, the vehicle shall be driven carefully at a moderate speed to prevent accidents.
- The road adhesion of non-running-in or excessively worn tires is insufficient, which directly affects the braking effect.
- If abnormal vibration or deviation of the vehicle is found during vehicle driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check whether the tire is damaged.
- If you find uneven and excessive tire wear, go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection as soon as possible.

#### ⚠WARNING

- If tires burst or leak when the vehicle is running, it is very easy to cause serious traffic accidents.
- Never use damaged tires and wheels or use tires whose treads have been worn to the wear indicator. Otherwise, it is very easy to cause accidents, because such tires may burst during driving, causing traffic accidents and injuries. Such tires and wheels shall be replaced in time.
- The tire pressure must meet the regulations. Otherwise, it may cause an accident. If the tire pressure is insufficient, the vehicle driving at high speed will cause the tire to deflect, and the tire will easily overheat, which may cause tire shelling or tire bursts.
- Be careful not to expose the tires to chemicals, oil, grease, fuel and brake fluid.

#### ⚠WARNING

- Used wheels and tires of unknown origin should not be used under any circumstances, as such wheels and tires may be damaged without visible damage and may cause loss of control and a traffic accident while the vehicle is in motion.
- It is recommended not to use a retread tire. As the service life of such tires passes, the carcass may change, and the durability may also be limited and driving safety may be affected.

### Precautions for wheel failure

- When driving over curbs or similar obstacles, keep a slow speed in the vertical direction of the obstacles as much as possible.
- Do not contact the tire with grease, oil and fuel.
- Regularly check the tire damage (such as cutting, wear, falling off, deformation or bulge).
- Regularly remove debris embedded in the grooves of the tire pattern.

### Instructions for storing tires

- Before removing the tire, mark the tire to indicate the rotation direction of the tire, and reset it according to the mark when installing the tire to keep the rotation direction and dynamic balance state of the wheel unchanged.
- Store the removed wheels or tires in a cool, dry place, and preferably in a dark place.
- – The tire mounted on the rim must not be stored upright.

### New tires and wheels

- Select the new tire and wheel carefully, and make sure that the dimensions, load range, rated speed and structure type of the new tire are the same as those of the original one.
- Do not replace only one tire separately, but at least replace two tires on the same axle at the same time.
- Do not mix tires of different sizes or types, and do not mix summer, all-season and winter tires.
- After each wheel installation, check whether the wheel bolts are tightened to specified torque ( $125 \pm 10 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ).

### Summer tires

Summer is a rainy season. The tire tread depth directly affects driving safety in rainy days. When the tread depth of a summer tire is lower than 3mm, it is highly likely for the vehicle to slip on water.

### Winter tires

Winter tires still have good grip performance when roads are covered with snow and ice. The specially designed rubber tread makes the tires less affected by a low-temperature environment and excellent braking ability, ensuring driving safety.

- Use winter tires on all the four wheels.
- Winter tires are recommended when it snows or the temperature is lower than 7°C.
- Use only radial winter tires of same dimensions, load range and rated speed as original ones on this vehicle.

## 6. In-service maintenance

- Please note that the tread of winter tires shall have patterns deep enough (tread depth not less than 4 mm, otherwise, the applicability in winter will be limited).
- After installation of tires, check the tire inflation pressure.

### ⚠WARNING

- Winter and summer tires are designed according to their respective typical lane driving conditions under the corresponding seasonal conditions. It is recommended to use winter tires in winter. At low temperatures, the adaptability of summer tires is significantly poorer, thereby losing road adhesion and braking ability.
- In severe cold conditions, if the summer tires are used, cracks may appear on the tires, which can completely damage them and cause excessive tire noise and loss of balance.

### ⚠WARNING

- After using the winter tire, there may be reduced driving traction on dry roads, increased road noise and shorten Please pay attention to the performance change of the vehicle in terms of maneuvering and braking after the winter tires are used.
- Please note that the maximum speed for winter tires is relatively low. Do not exceed the allowable maximum speed for the tires.
- Please note that please replace the winter tires with summer tires in time in order to ensure driving safety and performance when driving in the environment at the atmospheric temperature rising above 7°C.

### Check tire pressure

225/60 R18 104V	●●●	250	250
225/60 R18 104H	●●●●●	270	270

OMT8G-0141

The label of standard pressure data of original tires of the vehicle is pasted on the B pillar at the driver's side.

- Check the tire pressure value suitable for the vehicle from the label (the listed pressure values applicable to both summer and winter tires).
- Unscrew the valve cap (if the valve cap is missing, a new one shall be provided in time).
- A high-quality tire pressure gauge is required to check the tire pressure. It is impossible to determine whether the tire pressure is appropriate only by visual inspection.
- Attach the tire pressure gauge to the valve.

## 6. In-service maintenance

- For inspection of tire pressure, the tire must be in a cold state. When the temperature increases, the tire pressure can be slightly higher than the specified value, and it is not necessary to reduce the tire pressure.
- Balance the weight of passengers and luggage, avoid slopes, and adjust tire pressure according to vehicle load.
- Install and tighten the valve cap.

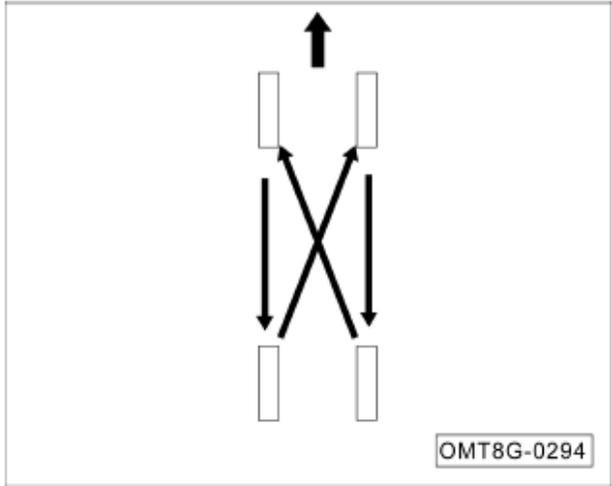
### NOTE

- The current wheel tire pressure can be viewed through the instrument cluster display information.
- Be sure to refit the valve cap to the valve core. The valve cap prevents the ingress of dust and moisture.

### WARNING

- **Abnormal tire pressure may cause tire bursts, resulting in a traffic accident, injury or even death.**
- **Check the tire pressure at least once a month or before long-distance driving. The tire pressure must meet the specified requirements to prevent accidents.**
- **Insufficient tire pressure will exacerbate tire deflection, and tires are extremely prone to overheating, which may lead to tread separation and tire bursts.**
- **Too low or too high tire pressure will cause early wear of the tire and reduce the steering stability of the vehicle.**

### Service life of tires



Service life of tires depends on tire pressure, driving style and tire assembly conditions.

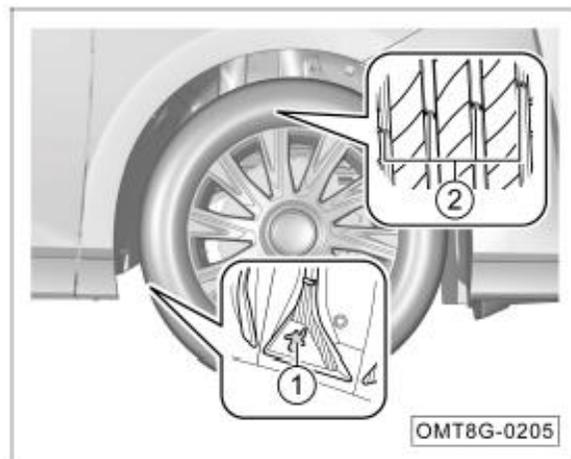
If the front tires are worn more seriously than the rear tires, it is recommended to perform tire rotation for the front and rear wheels as shown, so as to make the service life of all tires about the same.

### WARNING

**For vehicles equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), tire swaps or replacements must be performed at a GAC Motor authorized shop.**

## 6. In-service maintenance

### Tire wear indicator



The figure ① is used to indicate the wear condition of the tire's outer circle pattern. If the tire's outer circle pattern wears to the condition as shown, the tire can no longer be used safely and must be replaced immediately.

The tread wear indicator mark ② is 1.6 mm high. If the tread pattern wears to the marked surface, the tire can no longer be used safely and must be replaced immediately.

### Wheel balance

The wheels of the new vehicle are balanced, but during operation, the wheels may be unbalanced due to various reasons, which can be manifested by the vibration of the steering mechanism.

Because unbalanced wheels can cause excessive wear on the steering system, wheel suspension mechanism and tires, the wheels shall be rebalanced.

In addition, wheels must be rebalanced after installation of a new tire or tire repair for any wheel.

### Wheel misalignment

Wheel misalignment will cause uneven and excessive wear of the tires, affecting driving safety. If uneven and excessive wear of the tires is found, please go to the GAC Motor authorized shop to check the wheel alignment as soon as possible.

### 6.8 Tire chains

In winter, driving in harsh environments such as snowy or icy roads can increase the degree of tire wear or cause other failures. To reduce failures in winter, the following opinions must be followed:

- When driving in deep snow, it is necessary to install tire chains on the tires. If so, be sure to choose an equivalent product whose size and type meet the specifications of the tires on the vehicle. Failure to do this will adversely affect the performance and safety of the vehicle. Moreover, operations such as full-load driving, speeding, emergency acceleration, emergency braking, and emergency turning are potentially dangerous.
- During deceleration, make full use of the engine braking function. Emergency braking on snowy or icy roads will cause the vehicle to flick and slip. Keep a proper safe distance from the lead vehicle, and step on the brake pedal slightly. Note that the tire chain installed on the tire can provide a certain friction force, but it cannot prevent sideslip.

**i NOTE**

Different countries or regions have different regulations for tire chains, and the regulations of each country or region should be consulted before assembling tire chains. Do not install tire chains without understanding the laws and regulations of the corresponding country and region that may restrict the use of tire chains.

**⚠ CAUTION**

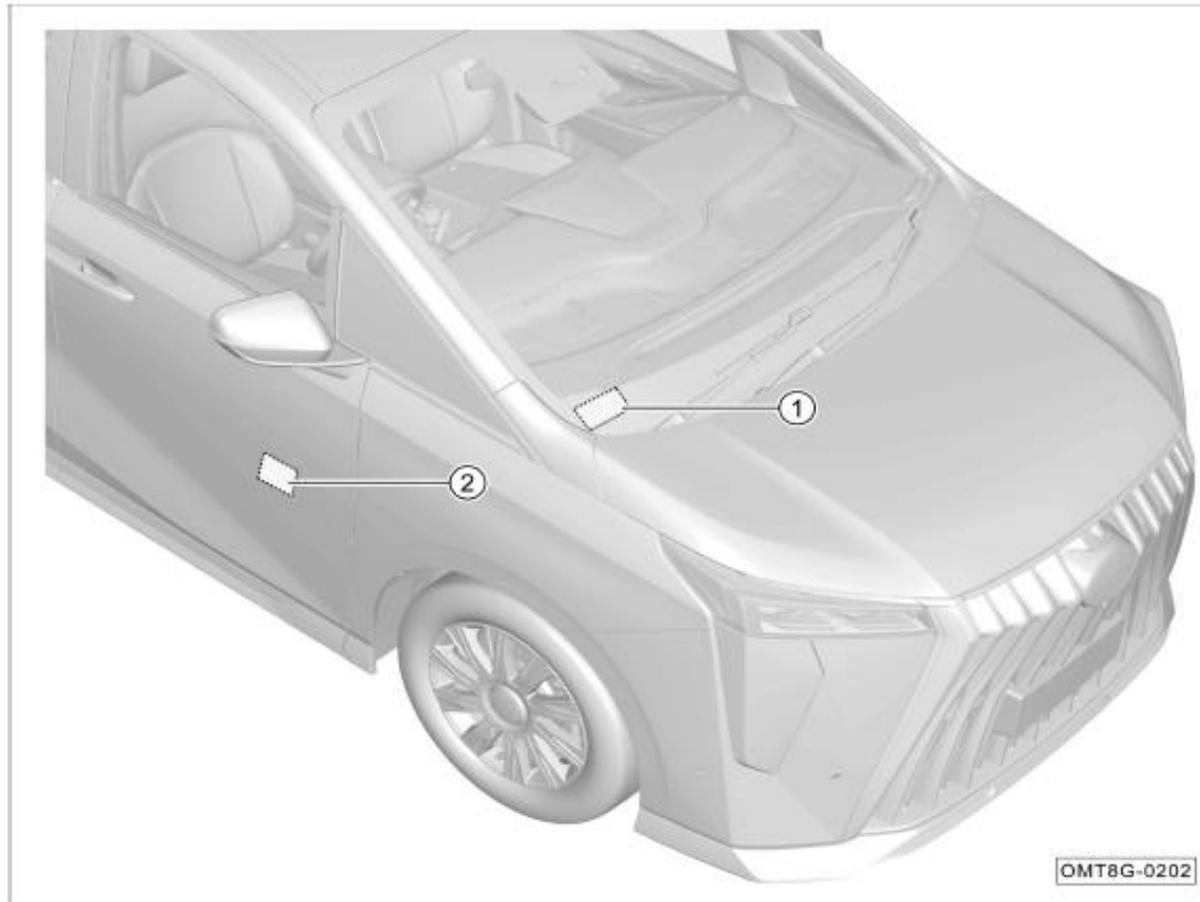
Install tire chains on all tires to ensure balanced driving in all weather. It shall be borne in mind that after installation of tire chains, the vehicle may be underpower. Even if the road surface is in good condition, drive carefully. While driving, neither exceed the specified speed limit of tire chains nor exceed 50 km/h, whichever is lower.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- If tire chains are installed on the tires, the size and type of tire chains shall be consistent with those of the standard tires of the vehicle. Otherwise, the driving safety and maneuvering of the vehicle will be adversely affected.
- Tire chains must be installed in pairs on the front wheels rather than on the rear wheels.
- Do not use tire chains on dry ground. After driving to snow-free roads, remove tire chains.
- After installing the tire chains as closely as possible to the front tires, drive 0.5 to 1.0 km, and then tighten the tire chains again.

## 7. Technical data

### 7.1 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



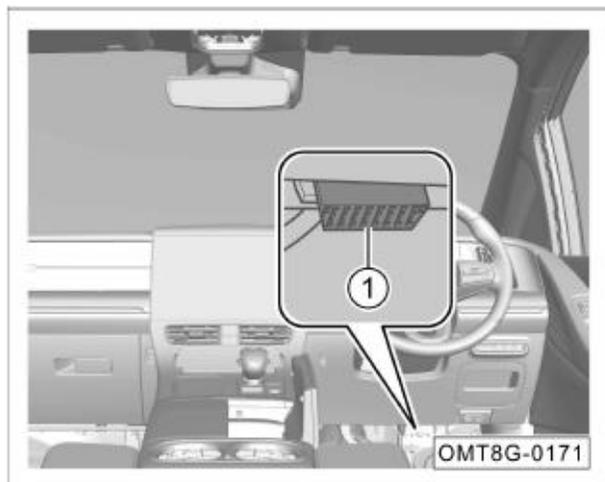
The location of the VIN is as shown in the figure:

- ① VIN: on the left side of the instrument panel.
- ② VIN: on the floor in front of the driver's side (stamped).

#### **i**NOTE

The location indication and quantity of VIN are not complete. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

### OBD DLC



The OBD interface for reading the electronic VIN is located on the lower right side of the instrument panel, and can be used with a diagnostic scan tool to read the electronic VIN and vehicle information.

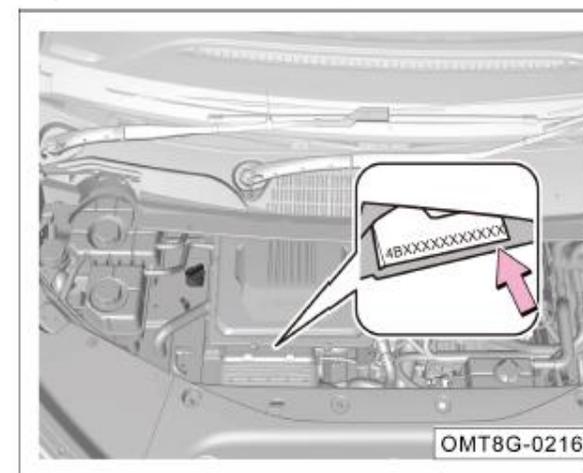
#### ⚠WARNING

**It is strictly prohibited to connect non-manufacturer authorized diagnostic equipment to the vehicle's OBD interface.**

### Vehicle nameplate

The vehicle identification plate is located below the B pillar on the front passenger's side. The vehicle identification plate information includes the manufacturer, vehicle identification number, gross vehicle weight rating, country of manufacture, and other details. Please refer to the actual vehicle for confirmation.

### Engine model and factory number

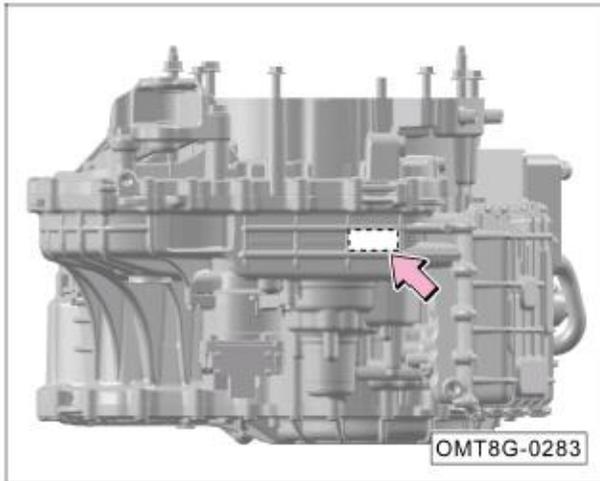


The engine model and production number are located on the engine block.

## 7. Technical data

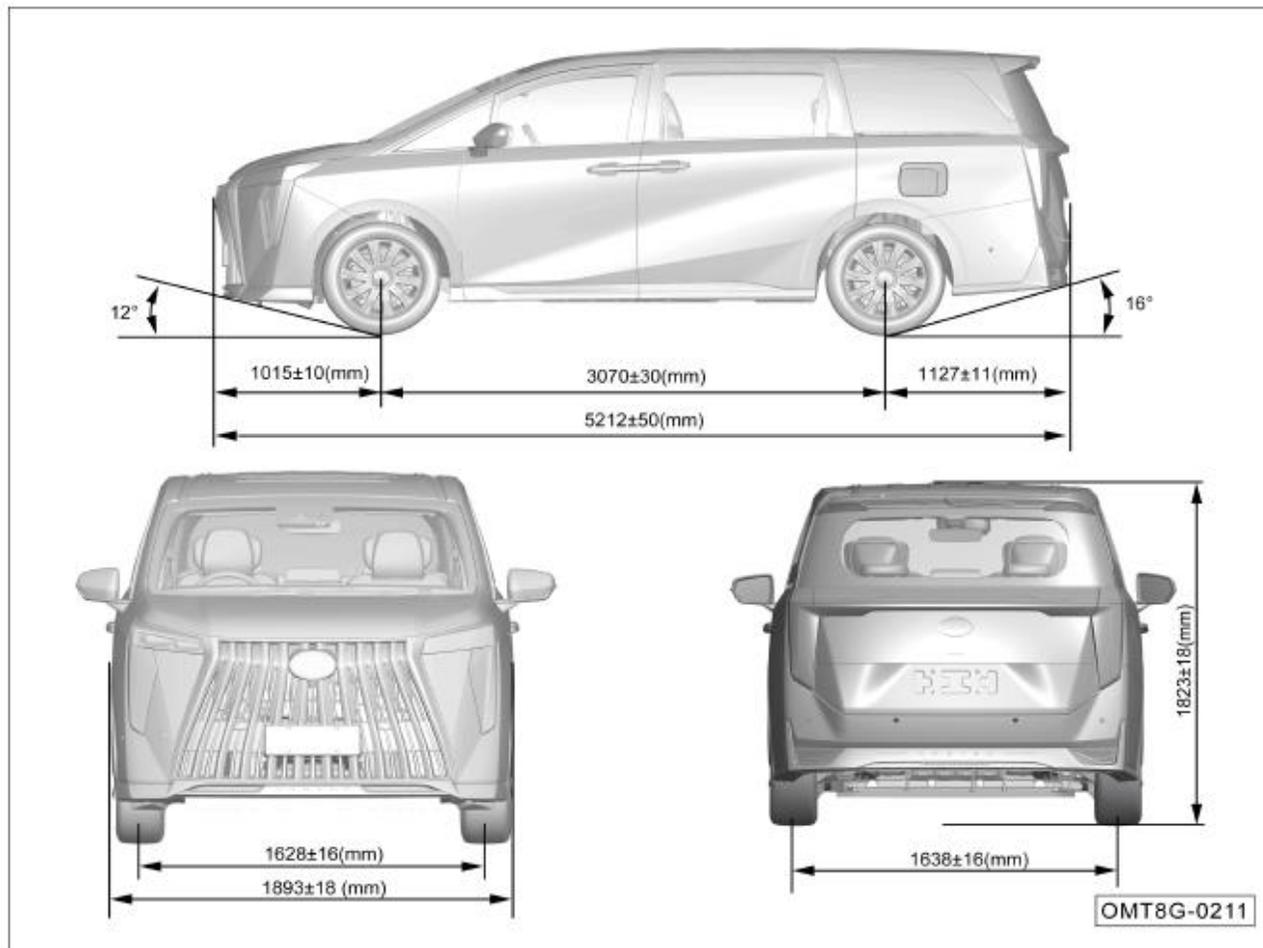
---

The transmission model and production number of the electromechanical coupling



The transmission model and production number of the electromechanical coupling are located at the bottom of the transmission.

## 7.2 Dimensions & parameters of vehicle



### Dimensions

Item	Parameters		
	Value	Unit	
Overall length	5212 ± 50	mm	
Overall width	1893 ± 18	mm	
Overall height	1823 ± 18	mm	
Wheelbase	3070 ± 30	mm	
Wheel track	Wheel track	1628 ± 16	mm
	Rear track	1638 ± 16	mm
Front overhang	1015 ± 10	mm	
Rear suspension	1127 ± 11	mm	
Approach angle (no load)	12	°	
Departure angle (no load)	16	°	

Note: The exterior rearview mirrors (one on each side), located near the junction of the lower end of the A pillar and the front doors, are not included in the exterior width dimensions.

## 7. Technical data

### 7.3 Vehicle mass & parameters of engine and fluids

#### Mass

Model	Kerb mass of vehicle (kg)			Gross vehicle mass (kg)		
	Kerb mass (kg)	Front axle load	Rear axle load	Maximum total mass	Front axle load	Rear axle load
GAC6520CHEVMDA6C GAC6520CHEVMDA6E	2420 ± 72	1307 ± 39	1113 ± 33	3000	1470	1530

#### Comprehensive parameters

Item	Performance parameters		Unit
	GAC6520CHEVMDA6C	GAC6520CHEVMDA6E	
Passenger capacity	7		Person
Minimum turning diameter	13.2		m
Maximum gradeability	30		%
Maximum speed	175		km/h
Fuel consumption	7.04 (WLTC) *	6.1 (NEDC) *	L/100 km
Power consumption	23.1 (WLTC) *	16.0 (WLTC) *	kWh/100 km

## Parameters of engine

Model	4B20J2
Layout type	Horizontal front
Type	Gasoline engine, spark-ignition, in-line four-cylinder, four-stroke, GDI, exhaust turbocharging
Number of cylinders (pcs)	4
Ignition order	1-3-4-2
Bore (mm)	83
Travel (mm)	92
Displacement (mL)	1991
Compression ratio	(11.3 ± 0.3):1
Rated power/rotation speed (kW/(r/min))	140/4500~5000 (Middle East and Macau), 140/5000 (VTA)
Maximum net power/rotation speed (kW/(r/min))	140/4500~5000 (Middle East and Macau), 140/5000 (VTA)
Maximum torque/rotation speed (N • m/(r/min))	330/1500~ 4000
Maximum net torque/rotation speed (N • m/(r/min))	320/1500~ 4000
Emission level	Euro V/Euro VI

## 7. Technical data

### Specifications and capacity of fuel/oil/fluid

Item	Specification	Capacity	
Fuel <sup>1)</sup>	Fuel grade: Please refer to the fuel label on the fuel filler cap.	Capacity: (L)	56
Engine coolant <sup>2)</sup>	DF-6, -35°C coolant	Capacity: (L)	12.4 ± 0.3
The intercooler system coolant	DF-6, -35°C coolant	Capacity: (L)	5.1 ± 0.2
Power battery coolant.	DF-6, -35°C coolant	Capacity: (L)	4.1 ± 0.2
Engine oil	Grade: SN/GF-5 Viscosity: 0W-20	Capacity <sup>3)</sup> : (L)	5.4
		Replacement of <sup>4)</sup> : (L)	4.8
Tlectromechanically coupled transmission fluid	GHFTF	Capacity: (L)	6.3 ± 0.2
		Replacement (L)	4.4 ± 0.2
Brake fluid	DOT4	Capacity: (L)	1.02 ± 0.05
Windshield glass washer fluid	Methanol, meets freezing point - 30°C	Capacity: (L)	3
A/C refrigerant	HFC-134a	Capacity: (g)	925 ± 15

Note: 1) Long-term use of fuels with sulfur content higher than the standard value may result in excessive emissions. Please pay attention and use fuels that comply with local standards for vehicles.

2) Including the coolant in the reservoir and the residual coolant in the engine.

3) The oil capacity for overhaul of engine assembly.

4) Including the oil capacity for replacement of oil filter.

## 7.4 Transmission and chassis parameters

## Transmission parameters

Model	H7EF40A
Type	AT
drive	Front-wheel drive
Final drive ratio	3.348
1st gear	1.364
2nd gear	0.870
Reverse gear	3.350

## Wheels

Specifications of rim	6.5 Jx18		
Tire specifications	225/60 R18		
Tire pressure	--	Wheel track	Rear track
	no load	250 kPa	250 kPa
	full load	270 kPa	270 kPa

Note: The label of standard pressure data of original tires of the vehicle is pasted on the B pillar at the driver's side.

## Suspension

Type	Front suspension	Rear suspension
	McPherson, independent suspension	Multi-link independent suspension

## Steering gear

Type	Rack and pinion electric power steering gear
Power steering type	Electric power steering

## Brake

Type	X-arrangement, hydraulic dual-circuit, electric power assistance
Wheel track	Disc brake
Rear track	Disc brake
Parking brake	Electronic parking brake (EPB)

## Dynamic balance of wheels

	Designation	Residue dynamic unbalance
Wheel track	Inner side	≤ 8 g
	Outer side	≤ 8 g
Rear track	Inner side	≤ 8 g
	Outer side	≤ 8 g

## 7. Technical data

### Free travel of brake pedal

Designation	Parameters
Travel	≤ 148 mm
Free travel	≤ 7.4 mm

### Technical parameters of brake linings

Designation	Parameters
Wear limit of front wheel brake lining (excluding the backplate of brake lining)	2 mm
Wear limit of rear wheel brake lining (excluding the backplate of brake lining)	2 mm

### Wheel alignment parameters

Designation		Parameters
Wheel track	Individual toe-in	2' ± 3'
	Wheel camber	-25' ± 30'
	Kingpin caster angle	6°47' ± 45'
	Kingpin inclination angle	13°48' ± 45'

### Brake force power

Traction battery	Battery type	Ni-Co-Mn ternary lithium battery
	Nominal voltage (V)	355.2
	Nominal power (kWh)	25.57
	Nominal capacity (Ah)	72

### Drive motor

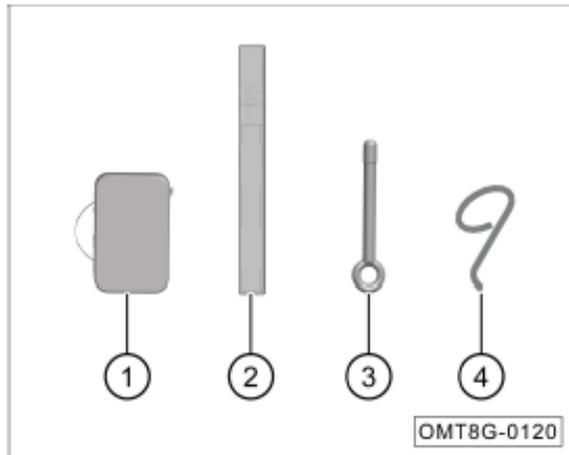
Drive motor	
Model	TZ240XY104
Peak power (kW)	134
Peak torque (N-m)	300
Maximum working rotation speed (r/min)	14,900
Operating voltage range (V)	220~480

### Lamps

All vehicle lamps are LED. If replacement is needed, please visit a GAC Motor authorized shop.

### 8.1 Driver's tools

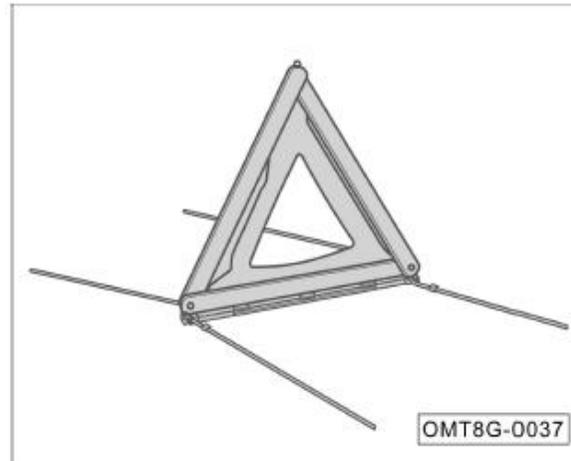
#### Driver's tools



This vehicle provides the following driver's tools. After use, please clean them promptly and return them to their original position.

- ① Tire repair tools
- ② Warning triangle sign
- ③ Towing hook
- ④ Hub trim cover disassemble tool

### 8.2 Use of warning triangle



1. Open the liftgate.
2. Fold and lift the rear seats.
3. Take out the warning triangle from under the rear seat and unfold it for use.

#### Placement distance

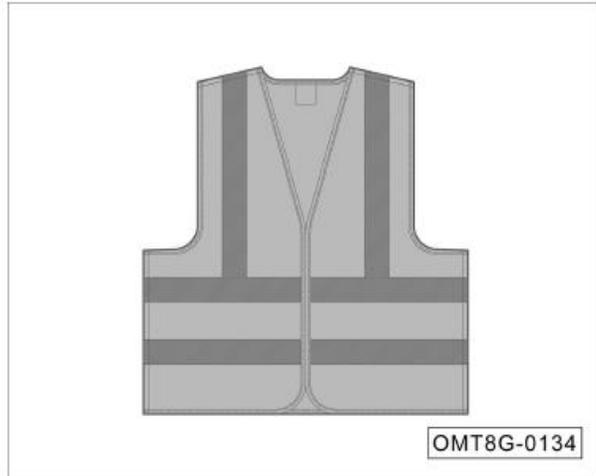
Ordinary highway		Expressway
Daytime	Night	
≥ 50 m	≥ 80 m	≥ 150 m

#### CAUTION

The data above is for reference only. Please place the warning triangle at the distance specified by traffic regulations.

## 8. Accident handling

### 8.3 Use of reflective vest



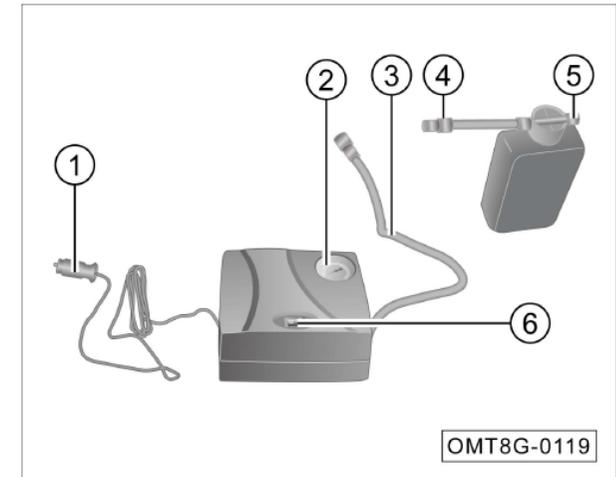
- If the vehicle needs to stop due to an accident or other faults, take out the reflective vest from the glove box and wear it neatly before getting off to check and deal with the vehicle faults.

### NOTE

- While handling vehicle accidents, be sure to wear a reflective vest as required to attract the attention of passersby or other drivers regardless of the lighting conditions.
- After using the reflective vest, please store it in the glove box properly. If necessary, clean it according to the indication on the collar mark to maintain the reflective performance.

### 8.4 Inflator pump and tire sealer

The inflator and tire sealant are used to address issues such as tire punctures from nails or low tire pressure.



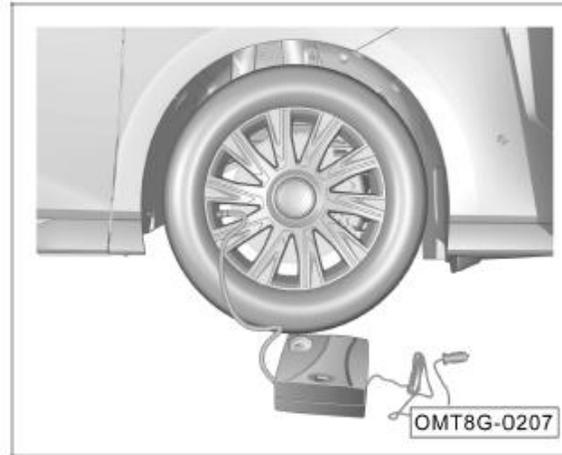
- ① Power plug
- ② Air pressure gauge
- ③ Inflatable tube
- ④ Glue hose
- ⑤ Inflation hose connector
- ⑥ Power switch

### Air pump

Please follow these steps to inflate the tire:



1. Remove the automatic tire inflation pump from the trunk.
2. Remove the tire valve cap.

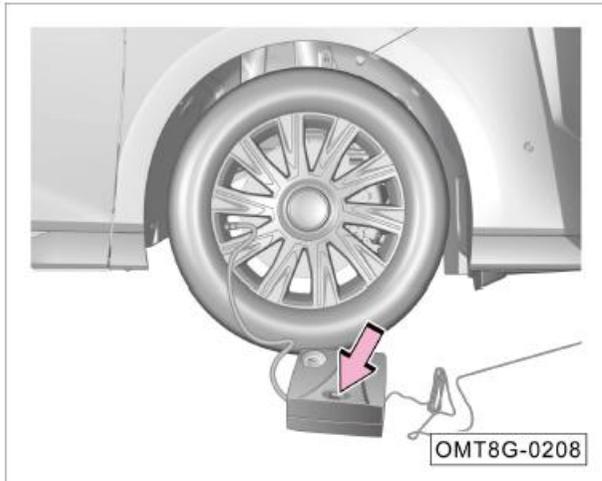


3. Screw the inflator pump connector into the tire valve. You may hear a slight hissing sound, indicating that air is connected. Continue to screw it in until there is no more hissing.



4. Open the trim cover of 12V power supply, insert the power connector into the on-board 12V power supply, and start the vehicle.

## 8. Accident handling



5. Turn on the power switch button, the tire starts to inflate, observe the air pressure meter changes, when it reaches the standard value, turn off the power to stop inflating.

### **i**NOTE

The standard tire pressure is located on the tire pressure label on the driver's side B pillar.

### Tire sealer

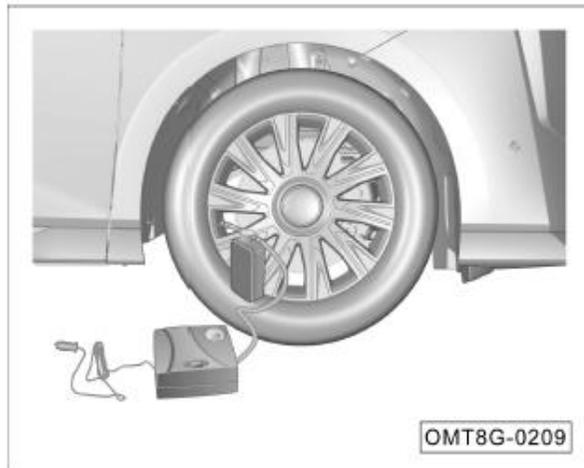
The usage method for the tire repair fluid is as follows:



1. Take out the inflator pump and tire repair fluid from the trunk.
2. Shake the bottle and connect the connector of inflator pump with the inflator tube fitting.

### **CAUTION**

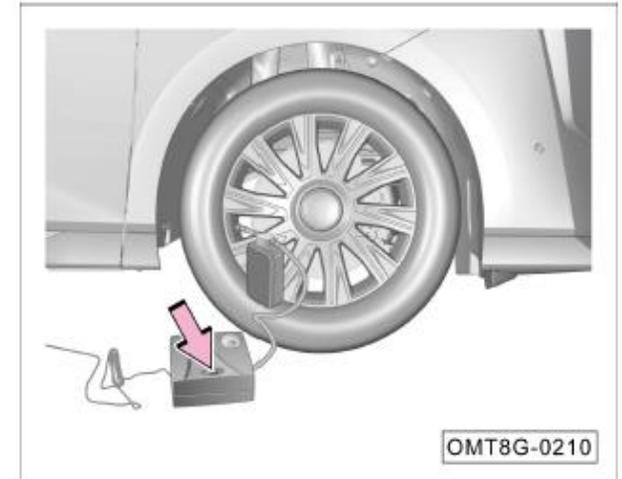
- The tire sealer bottle shall not be placed upside down.
- The tire sealer is not edible, so inhalation or swallowing shall be avoided. If it is ingested into the body by accident, please don't induce vomiting and go to hospital immediately.
- Protect your skin or eyes against the tire sealer; otherwise, it may cause irritation to your skin or eyes. If the tire sealer touches the skin accidentally, it can be thoroughly cleaned with water and soap; If the tire sealer accidentally enters the eyes, immediately rinse with clean water. If you feel unwell, seek medical attention immediately.



3. Remove the tire valve cap.
4. Screw the water hose connector onto the tire valve.



5. Open the trim cover of 12V power supply, insert the power connector into the on-board 12V power supply, and start the vehicle.

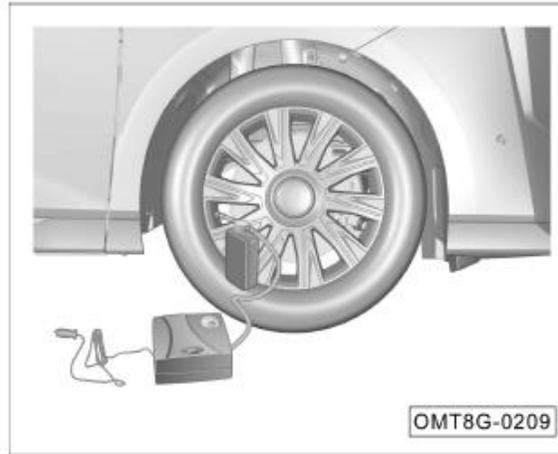


6. Press the power switch button so that the sealer is injected into the tire. The air pressure is relatively high and between 2.8 bar and 4 bar during sealer application. After sealer application, the air pressure will drop to about 0.7-1.4 bar. When the air pressure reaches the standard value, switch off the power supply and screw on the valve cap.
7. Pull out the glue hose, inflation hose and power connector in turn and place them in their original positions.
8. Start the vehicle and drive 3~5 km at a speed of 20~60 km/h.

## 8. Accident handling

### CAUTION

If the tire pressure cannot reach the specified pressure within 10 min, it cannot be repaired.



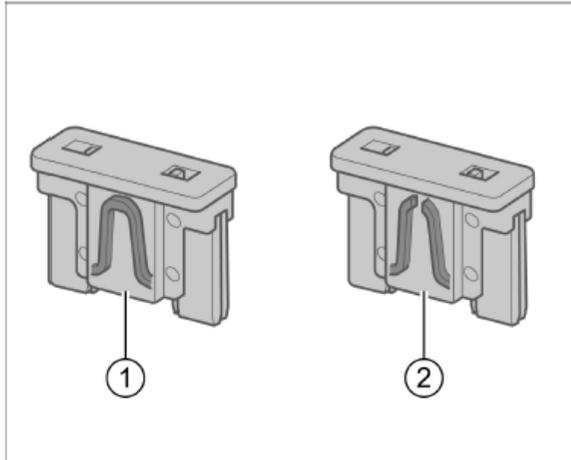
9. Park the vehicle in a safe area, and reconnect the inflation hose to the tire.
10. Observe the air pressure value and do inflation if there is a significant drop. If the tire pressure is lower than 1.3 bar, the tire cannot be repaired. You should go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### WARNING

- After the tire repair with the tire sealer, go to the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair or go to a professional tire repair shop for repair as soon as possible.
- The driving speed should not exceed 80 km/h after the completion of the tire repair with tire sealer.

### 8.5 Check the fuse

If any electrical device is not working, it may be due to a blown fuse. If this occurs, please promptly contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.



- ① Normal fuse
- ② Blown fuses

#### CAUTION

If you need to replace a fuse, please go to a GAC Motor authorized shop.

#### WARNING

- **Please do not modify or add equipment to the vehicle without authorization to avoid damage to electrical devices or serious incidents such as fire.**
- **Do not use fuses rated above the specified current value, otherwise it will damage other components of the electrical system.**
- **Using unsuitable or patched fuse can cause short circuit or even fire.**
- **The color and logo of the replaced fuse must be exactly the same as the original one.**
- **Do not replace fuse with metal sheets, paper clips, etc.**
- **The electrical box must be kept clean inside. Pay attention to protection against moisture.**

### 8.6 Hybrid powertrain fault

**When there is a fault in the hybrid power system, the following situations may occur:**

1. Text reminder: "System malfunction, please contact for inspection".
2. Vehicle cannot start.
3. Instrument cluster module warns that the hybrid powertrain fault indicator lamp  has come on.
4. Text reminder: "Safe parking, please contact for inspection".
5. The vehicle enters "dropout power" driving mode,  the dropout power driving indicator lamp comes on, or the vehicle experiences a loss of power, limiting the speed.

## 8. Accident handling

### NOTE

When the instrument cluster module displays the NOTE "Safe parking, emergency exit the vehicle! " alert message, do not attempt to start the vehicle again and immediately move away from the vehicle. Contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### CAUTION

The above phenomena are just some of the more common fault symptoms. When the vehicle experiences other faults, such as the instrument cluster module displaying the NOTE "Please check the TGW system" fault message, contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.

### WARNING

- **If the vehicle is found to have water ingress and cannot start, do not attempt to start the vehicle again, and contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.**
- **If smoke is observed from the vehicle or an unusual odor is detected, do not attempt any actions. Immediately turn off the vehicle, move away, and contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.**

### Hybrid system overheating

The following situations may indicate that the hybrid powertrain system has overheated or encountered a system overheating fault:

- The vehicle's output power has significantly decreased.
- The instrument cluster module displays a message: "Please inspect the TGW system" or the  indicator lamp comes on.
- If coolant or steam sprays from the radiator or expansion tank, immediately shut down the vehicle. If no coolant or steam is spraying out, keep the vehicle running and ensure the cooling fan is operational.

If the hybrid system overheats, follow the steps below:

- Pull over immediately and turn on the hazard warning lamps.
- Put into "P" gear and apply the parking brake.
- If the message "Please check the TGW system" on the instrument cluster module persists, please contact the GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection.

### WARNING

**Steam or coolant spraying indicates very high temperature and pressure. If you see coolant or steam spraying from the engine compartment, to avoid injury or fatality, do not open the engine hood immediately; wait until there is no steam before opening the engine hood.**

### **Low battery alert**

This message may appear when driving under severe working conditions (such as driving up a long steep slope). If the message "low power battery charge" is displayed and the indicator lamp  comes on, please drive the vehicle gently or park it in the 'P' gear and apply the parking brake, waiting a few minutes for the engine to charge the battery through the motor.

### **Fuel is low, please refuel before starting**

When the fuel in the tank is low, the instrument cluster module will display the message "Engine fuel is low, only electric driving is available," and the indicator lamp  will come on. Please refuel as soon as you see this message. To prevent the power battery from being drained, which would render the vehicle inoperable.

### **Please check the 12V low-voltage system**

When the instrument cluster module displays the message "Please check the 12V low-voltage system" and the indicator lamp  comes on, please pull over to park and shift to P gear, then contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### **Vehicle collision**

When the impact sensor detects a certain level of collision, it may urgently shut down the high-voltage system and cut off the high-voltage current to minimize the risk of electric leakage. If this system is activated, the vehicle will be unable to restart. To restart the vehicle, please contact GAC Motor authorized shop.

### WARNING

- **Check for any exposed high-voltage components and cables. Do not touch these components and cables or their installation locations.**
- **Inspect the ground underneath the vehicle. If you find any liquid leaking onto the ground, it may indicate a fuel system failure, and you should exit the vehicle as soon as possible.**

## 8. Accident handling

---

### Abnormal charging and discharging

The instrument cluster module displays notes such as "Charging system abnormal", "Discharging system abnormal", "Charging and discharging system abnormal", "Function activation failed, please retry, " and "Please confirm if the plug is properly connected" along with the indicator lamp  coming on. Please unplug and replug the charging/discharging plug, or turn off the vehicle, wait about 2 minutes, and then restart the vehicle. If the message disappears, the charging and discharging functions can be used normally. If the message persists, please contact GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair.

### Vehicle wading

If the vehicle is submerged in deep water, the following faults may occur:

- The motor junction box is submerged, which may cause leakage or three-phase short circuit.
- If the high-voltage harness is damaged while driving through water, there may be a risk of leakage and short circuit.

#### WARNING

**During daily driving, please try to avoid water wading. If the above faults occur due to water wading, please promptly contact a GAC Motor authorized shop for inspection and repair and do not attempt to repair it yourself.**

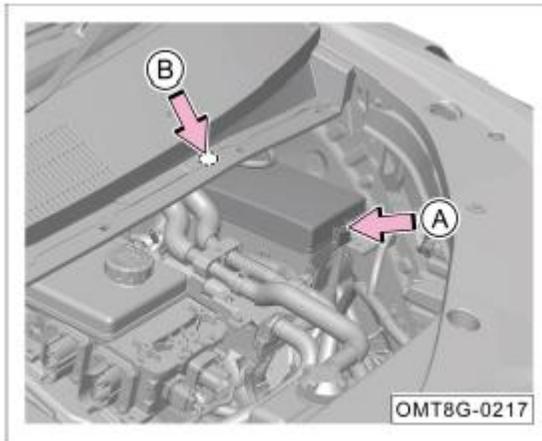
### 8.7 Emergency start

#### Jumper cable

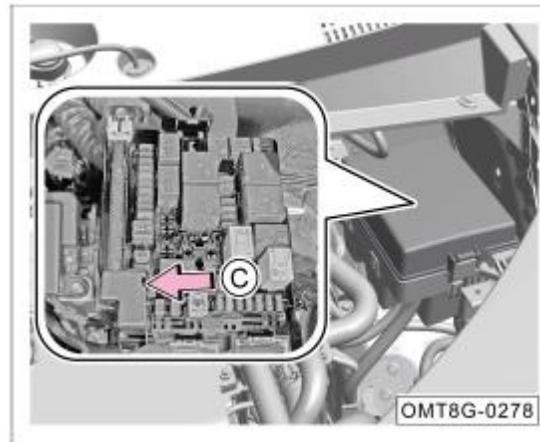
If the vehicle's battery is drained, you can start the vehicle by following the steps below, or you can contact a GAC Motor authorized shop.

#### WARNING

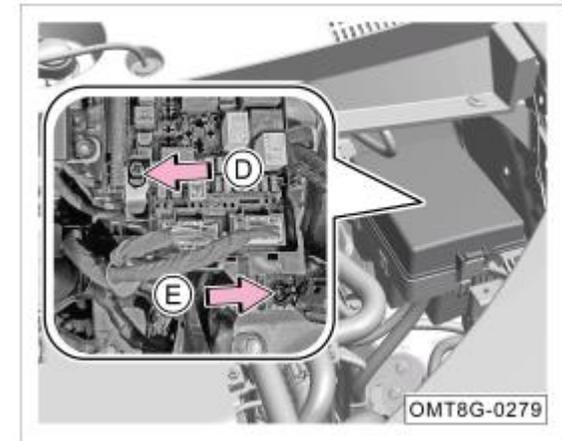
- **The engine compartment is a high-risk area, and improper operation can easily lead to casualties.**
- **Be sure to carefully read and follow the safety warning instructions before starting the battery operation.**



1. Open the engine hood and locate the harness fuse box at the front left near the wheel. Press the clips completely to unlock in the direction of -Arrow A- and -Arrow B-, then lift the cover.



2. Press the -Arrow C- clip to open the cover.



3. Connect the clip of the positive jumper cable to the vehicle-specific jumper starter terminal -arrow D- and the other end to the positive battery terminal of the other vehicle. Connect the clip of the negative jumper cable to the -arrow E- of this vehicle and the other end to the negative battery terminal of the other vehicle.
4. Start the engine of the vehicle with power battery and let it idle. Then, start the engine of the vehicle with the depleted battery till the instrument cluster module displays "READY".

## 8. Accident handling

### NOTE

- Due to natural discharge and the consumption effects of certain electrical devices, the stored power in the battery will gradually deplete even if the vehicle is not in use. If the vehicle is left idle for an extended period, the battery power may be depleted, and the vehicle may be unable to start. (The hybrid system automatically charges the battery while in operation.)
- After charging the battery, the first attempt to start the vehicle may not be successful, but the vehicle will start normally on the second attempt; this is not a fault.
- If the instrument panel indicates faults in the motor drive system or generator system after jump-starting the vehicle, it may be due to the motor control unit reporting a fault from the low battery condition. After jump-starting the vehicle, when the instrument panel displays "READY" for 5 minutes, power off the vehicle for 1 minute (do not open the door) or disconnect the battery negative terminal (this operation is quicker but requires small tools) to clear the alarm on the instrument cluster module.

### CAUTION

- When emergency charging the 12V battery from another vehicle, use the dedicated jump start terminal -Arrow D-.
- When connecting the battery, always connect the positive terminal first, followed by the negative terminal.
- Properly place the jumper cable to avoid contact between the cable and the moving components of the engine.

### WARNING

- **Do not use the vehicle's 12V battery to jump-start other vehicles.**
- **Due to multiple terminals in the fuse box, handle with care to avoid connecting to the wrong terminal, which could damage electrical components.**

### WARNING

- **Ensure that the headlamps are off before removing the jumper cable.**
- **Turn on the blower and rear windshield heater of the vehicle with the depleted battery to reduce the voltage peak generated when the cable is being removed.**
- **Remove the jumper cables with the engine running in the reverse order.**

### **⚠WARNING**

Improper use of jumper cable may cause battery explosion and serious injury to personnel.

- The voltage of the power supply battery must be the same as that of the depleted battery, and the capacity of the two batteries must be the same as much as possible. Otherwise, it may cause an explosion.
- Do not expose the battery to open fire, and beware of explosion.
- Do not connect the negative cable directly to the negative terminal of the battery without power. There shall be no static electricity near the battery. Otherwise, the combustible gas produced by the battery may be ignited by sparks, causing an explosion accident.
- Do not connect the negative cable to the fuel system component or brake pipeline, and do not bend over to the battery during operation to avoid being burned by acid.

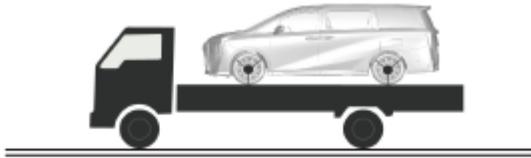
### **⚠WARNING**

The jumper cable should be correctly connected to the battery's positive and negative terminals according to the above instructions. It should not be connected to other parts of the battery. Otherwise, it may cause fuse ablation or partial function failure of the vehicle, which will not be covered by the warranty.

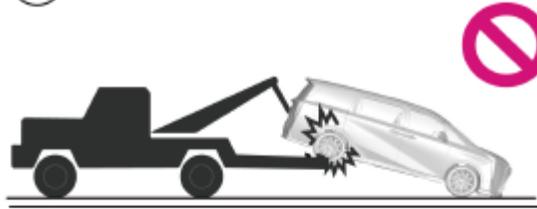
## 8. Accident handling

### 8.8 Vehicle towing

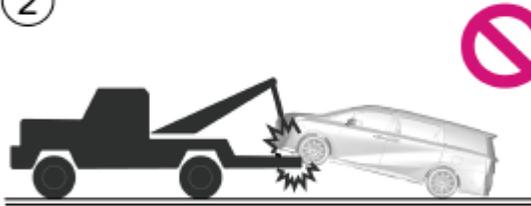
①



④



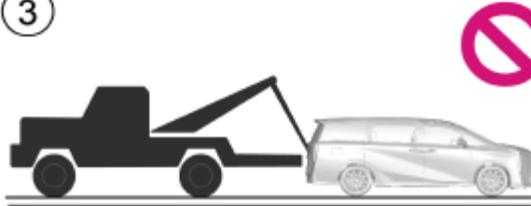
②



⑤



③



When the vehicle malfunctions or an accident prevents normal starting, use the towing method shown in Figure 1 for platform trucks to remove the vehicle from the scene.

#### CAUTION

- If the vehicle needs to be towed, it shall be towed by the GAC Motor authorized shop or a professional towing company.
- If a platform cargo vehicle cannot be used normally for towing the vehicle, a rigid connection can be used to urgently tow the vehicle to a safe area and wait for rescue.
- When rigid towing is used, long towing distances should be avoided and the speed of the tow truck should not exceed 5 km/h.
- Tow away from the scene only after ensuring that the vehicle is not a safety risk.
- It is strictly forbidden to lift the vehicle with the battery pack box assembly as a support point, e.g. by lifting the vehicle from the lower body with a forklift.

### Installing a towing hook

Towing from front



Towing from rear



Towing from front



- Pry off the towing hook cover in the arrowed position using a slotted screwdriver wrapped with a cloth.

## 8. Accident handling

### Towing from rear



- Remove the towing hook from under the rear seats①.
- Screw the towing hook clockwise into the threaded hole and tighten the towing hook.

### Precautions for towing

Before emergency towing, be sure to follow the instructions below:

- Hazard warning lamps of both towing and towed vehicles must be turned on, and local traffic regulations must be complied with.
- The towing hook must be firmly tightened in the thread hole. Otherwise, the towing hook may slip out of the thread hole during towing.
- The towed vehicle must be shifted into "N" gear.
- The towed vehicle needs to start the vehicle and turn the steering wheel back and forth to confirm that it can rotate.

During the emergency towing, be sure to follow the instructions below:

- Start the engine and drive at a slow speed till the towing rope is tight and then perform acceleration slowly.
- Be sure to drive steadily, and do not accelerate, decelerate, or turn the vehicle sharply.
- For towing, the towed vehicle shall be braked earlier than normal conditions, with the brake pedal lightly depressed.
- During towing, the towing rope must always be in a tight state.

### 8.9 Getting out of a trap

If the vehicle is stuck on a soft road such as sandy, muddy or snowy road, follow the steps below to get out of a trap:

1. Observe the areas in front of and behind the vehicle to ensure that there are no obstacles.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the left and to the right to grind areas around the front wheels to remove mud, snow or sand trapped around the tires.
3. Place wooden blocks, stones or other materials to help increase tire friction.
4. Start the engine and accelerate the vehicle slowly to get the vehicle out of the pit.
5. If the vehicle still can not get out of the trap after attempts for several times, it is required to have a tow truck for rescue.

#### **i**NOTE

In the acceleration process, human assistance can be provided to push the vehicle from the front and rear for driving the vehicle out of the trap.

### 8.10 Troubleshooting in emergency situations

If a fault occurs, please inspect the following conditions before contacting the GAC Motor authorized shop.

#### **Vehicle cannot start**

- Did you press down on the power switch while firmly pressing down on the brake pedal?
- Is the gearshift lever in the P gear?
- Is the intelligent remote control key within the detection area inside the vehicle?
- Is the steering wheel unlocked?
- Is the battery of the intelligent remote control key low or depleted?
- Is the battery charge depleted?

#### **Even if the brake pedal is pressed, the gearshift lever cannot be shifted out of the P gear**

- Is the power switch in the 'ON' gear?

#### **The vehicle power switch automatically shuts off**

- If the vehicle START/STOP button remains in the "ACC" or "ON" gear for an extended period (with the powertrain not operating), the automatic power-off function will activate.

This manual describes the configurations, features, performance parameters, and product figures for the entire range of this vehicle model. The actual configurations and features of the vehicle are subject to the specific delivered vehicle. The exterior/interior trim figures in this manual are for reference only, and in case of any discrepancies between the product figures and the actual delivered vehicle, the actual vehicle delivery shall prevail.

The company reserves the right to release updated versions that adjust and optimize certain functions, with specific details subject to the version announcement.

The company reserves the right to change, supplement, or discontinue the content and technical specifications in this manual.

The company holds the copyright for this manual. Without written permission from the company, reproduction or extraction of content from this manual is not allowed.

GAC Motor Co., Ltd.